

Univerzita Karlova v Praze

Filozofická fakulta

Ústav anglického jazyka a didaktiky

Filologie – anglický jazyk

Renata Šimůnková

**A Contrastive Study of Means Expressing Necessity
in English and Czech**

Srovnávací studie způsobů vyjadřování nutnosti v angličtině a češtině

Disertační práce

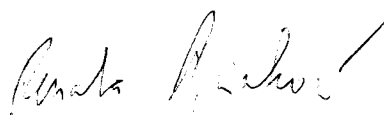
vedoucí práce: prof. PhDr. Eva Hajičová, DrSc.

2009

PROHLÁŠENÍ

Prohlašuji, že jsem disertační práci vypracovala samostatně a že jsem uvedla všechny použité prameny a literaturu.

V Liberci 17.2. 2009



Renata Šimůnková

PODĚKOVÁNÍ

Děkuji vedoucí práce prof. PhDr. Evě Hajičové, DrSc. za podnětné rady a připomínky a za vstřícný a vlídný přístup v průběhu celého období stráveného psaním této disertační práce.

Renata Šimůnková

ABSTRACT

The dissertation investigates the structures of the semantic field of necessity in English and in Czech on the basis of means of expression found in eight works of contemporary fiction (four English books, four Czech books and their published translations). The aim of the thesis is first to describe the structure of the semantic field in each individual language and then compare the acquired data, determine the similarities and differences and discuss the potential causes of the differences and their consequences in connection with the accurate expression of necessity in both languages.

The dissertation consists of three main parts: theoretical, empirical and the conclusion. The theoretical part is outlined as a broad general introduction into the problems of modality and then specifically of necessity. Apart from the delimitation and interpretation of the general concept of modality it focuses on the means of expression of necessity used in English and Czech and their comparison. In the empirical part the individual means of expression found in the fiction are first discussed and compared within each individual language (e.g. the distinctions between *must* and *have to*, or *mustn't* and *can't* are discussed in detail) and then between the two languages. The conclusion offers brief summaries of the outcomes of the theoretical and empirical parts and on their basis generalizes and systematizes the similarities and differences in the structures of the semantic field of necessity in English and Czech.

The outcomes of the dissertation suggest that generally the semantic field of necessity is structured in a similar way in both languages and uses similar formal means of expression mainly in the area of deontic necessity where, in both languages, the main means of expression are modal verbs. There are, however, also some differences. To express deontic necessity, English uses expressions with the verb *be* three times more frequently. Czech on the other hand often does not express modality explicitly at all. This latter tendency of Czech is even more noticeable in the area of epistemic necessity and, along with the often discussed and by this dissertation supported tendency of Czech to use adverbs to express epistemic necessity, it represents the most striking difference between Czech and English in terms of expressing necessity. The dissertation also offers possible explanations of the differences.

RESUMÉ

Doktorská disertační práce zkoumá rozčlenění sémantického pole nutnosti v angličtině a češtině na základě jazykových prostředků použitých v současné krásné literatuře (čtyři díla anglická a čtyři díla česká a jejich publikované překlady). Cílem práce je nejprve popsat rozčlenění tohoto pole v obou jazycích, určit a porovnat významy a použití jednotlivých prostředků vyjádření nutnosti uvnitř jednoho jazyka a následně data, získaná pro každý jazyk jednotlivě, porovnat. Na základě porovnání jsou potom stanoveny základní podobnosti a rozdíly, diskutovány možné příčiny popsaných rozdílů a jejich důsledky z hlediska správného vyjadřování jednotlivých sémantických hodnot nutnosti v obou jazycích.

Práce sestává ze tří hlavních částí: části teoretické, empirické a závěru. Teoretická část je pojata jako poměrně široký obecný úvod do problematiky modality a dále pak konkrétně nutnosti. Kromě vytyčení a vymezení pojetí obecného konceptu modality se kapitola věnuje způsobům vyjádření nutnosti v angličtině a v češtině a jejich porovnání. V empirické části jsou diskutovány a porovnávány jednotlivé prostředky vyjádření nutnosti, jak uvnitř jednoho jazyka (podrobně je například diskutován rozdíl mezi *must* a *have to*, *mustn't* a *can't*) tak mezi jazyky a prezentovány dílčí výsledky těchto porovnání. Závěrečná část nabízí shrnutí výstupů teoretické a empirické části a na jejich základě zobecňuje a systematizuje shodnosti a rozdíly ve struktuře sémantického pole nutnosti v angličtině a češtině.

Z výsledků práce vyplývá, že obecně je sémantické pole nutnosti v obou jazycích rozčleněno podobně a využívá podobných formálních prostředků, především v oblasti deontické nutnosti, kde jsou v obou jazycích hlavním prostředkem modální slovesa. Mezi jazyky však existují i rozdíly. Deontickou nutnost angličtina vyjadřuje třikrát častěji než čeština pomocí výrazů se slovesem *byť* a čeština naopak často nutnost explicitně nevyjadřuje vůbec. Tento naposled zmíněný rys češtiny je ještě markantnější v oblasti epistemické nutnosti a představuje, vedle v literatuře často diskutované a touto prací potvrzené tendence češtiny vyjadřovat epistemickou nutnost pomocí příslovcí, významný rozdíl ve vyjadřování nutnosti mezi češtinou a angličtinou. Práce nabízí i možná vysvětlení zmíněných rozdílů.

CONTENTS

INTRODUCTION	1
THEORETICAL PART	3
1 MODALITY IN GENERAL	3
1.1 The definition of modality	3
1.2 Kinds of modality	7
1.3 Approaches to the general description of modality	11
2 MODALITY IN ENGLISH	15
2.1 Some important structural features influencing the function of modal expressions .	15
2.2 The use of modal expressions (predominantly modal verbs) in the basic sentence types.....	15
2.3 Modal verbs and negation	16
2.4 Modality and time reference.....	18
2.5 Necessity.....	19
3 THE CZECH MODAL SYSTEM.....	21
3.1 General characteristics.....	21
3.2 Formal characteristics of Czech modal verbs.....	24
3.3 Expressing necessity in Czech.....	25
3.4 The relation between necessity and possibility	27
3.5 The grammar of necessity in Czech	28
4 BASIC DIFFERENCES BETWEEN MODAL SYSTEMS IN ENGLISH AND CZECH	29
4.1 Differences in expressing necessity in English and in Czech	30
EMPIRICAL PART	35
5 BASIC FRAMEWORK	35
5.1 Aims and objectives	35
5.2 The Material	37
5.3 Data processing	39
5.4 Grammar	40
5.5 Notation	40
6 MUST (EN – CZ).....	41
6.1 Form MUST	43
6.2 Form MUST HAVE (EN – CZ)	58
7 MUST (CZ – EN).....	61
7.1 Form MUST	61
7.2 Negative form of MUST (CZ – EN)	64
7.3 Form MUST HAVE (CZ – EN)	65
8 HAVE TO (EN-CZ)	69
8.1 Form HAVE TO	71
8.2 Forms HAD TO, HAVE HAD TO, HAD HAD TO	75
8.3 The future forms of HAVE TO	78
9 HAVE TO (CZ-EN)	86
9.1 Form HAVE TO	86
9.2 Form HAD TO	91
9.3 Form HAVING TO	95

9.4 Form WILL HAVE TO	95
9.5 Form WOULD HAVE TO	96
9.6 Interrogative form.....	98
9.7 Comparison of HAVE TO and HAVE GOT TO	99
10 BASIC DIFFERENCES BETWEEN MUST AND HAVE TO.....	102
10.1 Summary of the theoretical findings	102
10.2 Summary of the examples from the Material	104
11 MUST AND HAVE TO AND THEIR COUNTERPARTS IN Czech – DEONTIC MODALITY.....	108
11.1 Summary.....	112
12 MUST AND HAVE TO AND THEIR COUNTERPARTS IN CZECH – EPISTEMIC MODALITY	113
13 NECESSITY NOT TO – PROHIBITION	113
13.1 CANNOT, COULD NOT	113
13.2 NOT ALLOWED	116
13.3 Special expressions.....	117
13.4 The comparison of the means used to express <i>necessity not to</i>	117
14 SHOULD (EN – CZ).....	121
14.1 Form SHOULD	125
14.2 Interrogative form of SHOULD	128
14.3 Form SHOULD NOT	130
14.4 Form SHOULD HAVE	132
15 SHOULD (CZ – EN).....	133
15.1 Form SHOULD	133
15.2 Form SHOULD NOT	136
15.3 Interrogative form of SHOULD	137
15.4 Form SHOULD HAVE	139
15.5 Form SHOULD NOT HAVE.....	141
16 OUGHT TO (EN – CZ).....	141
16.1 Form OUGHT TO	142
16.2 Form OUGHT NOT TO.....	143
17 OUGHT TO (CZ – EN).....	144
17.1 Form OUGHT TO	144
17.2 Form OUGHT NOT TO.....	145
17.3 Form OUGHT HAVE	145
18 THE DIFFERENCE BETWEEN OUGHT TO AND SHOULD.....	146
19 SHOULD AND OUGHT TO AND THE CORRESPONDING EXPRESSIONS IN CZECH	147
20 MODAL EXPRESSIONS WITH “BE“	147
20.1 BE TO.....	148
20.2 BE + past participle expressing strong necessity	149
20.3 BE + past participle expressing medium necessity	155
21 OTHER MEANS OF EXPRESSING NECESSITY.....	159
21.1 NEED	159
21.2 HAD BETTER	162
21.3 WOULD RATHER	163
21.4 Modal adverbs, adverbials.....	163
21.5 Special cases	164
21.6. Summary of other means of expressing necessity (in tables).....	165

22 NO EXPLICIT EXPRESSIONS OF NECESSITY IN ENGLISH CORRESPONDING TO EXPLICIT MODAL MEANS IN CZECH	168
22.1 HAVE in other forms than HAVE (GOT) TO	168
22.2 Main verb in the indicative mood.....	169
22.3 Other means.....	170
CONCLUSION.....	172
23 THE SUMMARY OF THE THEORETICAL PART	172
24 THE SUMMARY OF THE PARTIAL RESULTS BASED ON THE STUDY OF THE MATERIAL	173
25 GENERAL SUMMARY AND CONCLUSIONS	180
25.1 Deontic modality	180
25.2 Epistemic modality	187
26 SHRNUŤÍ.....	197
REFERENCES	206
LIST OF APPENDICES	210
APPENDICES	211

INTRODUCTION

Take these sentences:

I must write a dissertation. But must I really write it or do I have to? Do I have to do it as a part of my position requirements or must I do it to feel successful. Am I forced to do it or is it a duty to myself? I must be mad. I need a clear explanation and I am obliged to find it so that I would be able to pass it to my students. It will certainly take a lot of time.

Although much has been written about modality in the Czech language and even much more about modality in English, when translating from English to Czech and vice versa, one often hesitates when it comes to deciding what the most appropriate expression to be used is. As the example sentences in the introductory paragraph show, the concept of modality is rather complex. This introductory paragraph contains mainly expressions connected with **necessity** – only one of the sets of interpretations which could be called modal - since this is the core topic of this dissertation. The first part of the theory section however deals with modality in general, so as to introduce the topic itself in a broader context, since a number of aspects connected with expressing necessity can be explained and understood only on the basis of its interplay with other elements of a modal system.

The concept of modality is universal; it is not found only in English or Czech, but in the majority of, if not in all, languages. According to Palmer (1986: 7) “it is probable that there are very few languages that do not have some kind of grammatical system of modality.” But the individual modal systems differ to a greater or lesser extent. The fact that modal systems in individual languages are so varied provides a considerable challenge for those linguists who attempt to introduce a universal description of modality. Differences in modal systems of individual languages also cause problems to learners of foreign languages, at least at the beginning of their studies, because at this stage of learning they often apply the knowledge of the grammar system of their own language to a foreign language.

In my experience as a teacher of English I have learnt that even students with a relatively advanced level of English make mistakes in certain areas of the English modal system. I thus decided to make a study of English and Czech modal systems. In order to keep the project manageable and yet detailed enough at the same time, I have limited the vast area of modality to the study of **necessity**. The study will not, however, as it is often the case in

works dealing with modality, be restricted simply to modal verbs. It will attempt to include a wide range of common ways of expressing **necessity** in English and all their found translations into Czech, in order to present a complex picture of this semantic field.

The main aims of the thesis are as follows:

- to describe the semantic field of **necessity** in English and Czech mainly from the viewpoint of the differences in the general structure and the distribution of the individual means
- to find similarities and differences between the ways in which **necessity** is expressed in English and in Czech and thus to contribute to the realization and understanding of the likely causes of the learning problems and mistakes
- to establish a list of lexical means used to express necessity in English and Czech with the specification of the use and function of each of them and thus provide the potential readers with reference material which could enable them to express necessity in a varied, accurate and appropriate way.

The research is based on two-way comparisons: English originals and their Czech translations, and Czech originals and their English translations.

NOTE: Whenever a direct citation in Czech is used, my own English translation is provided in the footnotes

THEORETICAL PART

1 MODALITY IN GENERAL

1.1 The definition of modality

As already mentioned, some language means to express modality can be found in the majority of languages therefore a great number of works deal with this subject. Moreover since modality is considered a general feature of a language, numerous attempts to describe it and define it on the level of general linguistics have been made. The summary of the findings and conclusions arrived at in this area will be the subject of this chapter.

Modality, as opposed to mood (with which it is often put in relation and which is a structural unit), is a feature of meaning. In relation to modality mood can be seen as one of the means of its expression. The importance of the grammatical category of mood in expressing modality is dependent on the type of language. In synthetic languages the importance of mood will be higher than in analytic ones, where modality will be mainly marked on a lexical level by the presence or absence of certain words – modal auxiliaries, adjectives, adverbs¹etc. Nevertheless, even in synthetic languages (e.g. in Czech) the category of modality will be broader than that of mood and will make use of mainly lexical items. Dokulil comments on this in the following way: “Je třeba poznamenat, že v rámci této modálnosti v širokém smyslu slovesný způsob vyjadřuje jen významy základní, jež jsou pak teprve odstiňovány ostatními prostředky modálnosti, modálními slovy a částicemi a – v neposlední řadě – intonací²” (Dokulil 1967: 27).³

The area of modality represents an extensive and complex problem and since the fundamental means of its expression differ from language to language, the starting points of its description can vary between languages. Nevertheless, as is the case with any general feature of a language, a general basis of modality can be searched for and should be

¹ The term ‘adverb’ will refer also to adverb particles. The reasons are as follows: 1) in English in many works the term ‘adverb particle’ is not used at all (e.g. Huddleston and Pullum 2002, Kai von Fintel, 2005, or it used alongside the term ‘adverb’ (Quirk 1985); 2) even in Czech where the distinction seems to be more strictly applied (e.g. Petr 1987) the similarity and relation between the two is referred to “Modální částice se někdy nazývají větná příslovce“ (Petr 1987: 357) – transl. by the author: Modal particles are sometimes called sentence adverbs.

² Since all the data processed in the practical part of this dissertation are extracted from the written language, the role of intonation in expressing modality is not relevant to this work and is thus not dealt with.

possible to be found. A look at the linguistic literature in this field will help to establish such a general basis. What follows are several definitions of modality gleaned from well-known works. An effort has been made to obtain a representative sample in terms of inclusion of the linguists who have specialised in the field of modality and who have considerably influenced its concept. At the same time the sources have been included which are widely used by the general public and which, since they are usually not specialised in one particular area but deal with grammar of English/Czech as such, tend to give prominence to the core concept of modality. Space alone prevents the inclusion of every single author on this subject; if any linguist has been excluded, this is not a comment on his contribution to this field of study.

The major definitions are as follows:

- “Modality is centrally concerned with the speaker’s attitude towards the factuality or actualisation of the situation expressed by the rest of the clause. The core concepts in modality are necessity and possibility” (Huddleston and Pullum 2002: 173)
- “Modality is a facet of illocutionary force, signalled by grammatical devices that expresses the illocutionary point or general intent of a speaker, or a speaker’s degree of commitment to the expressed proposition’s believability, obligatoriness, desirability, or reality”.
(<http://www.sil.org/linguistics/GlossaryOfLinguisticTerms>)
- “Modality has to do with necessity and possibility ... modality is always relative modality”. (Kratzer 1991: 639, 640)
- “Modality can be considered to be the set of linguistically relevant accessibility relations. Each accessibility relation defines a set of possible worlds in which the satisfaction conditions are assessed. In general, satisfaction (fulfilment) conditions have to be formulated for the characterization of sentence meanings. However, if the sentence meaning is propositional, the satisfaction (fulfilment) conditions will turn out to be the familiar truth-conditions. In sum, then, the essence of modality consists in relativization of the validity of sentence meanings to a set of possible worlds. (Kiefer 1987: 71, 72, 77; 1994: 2515)

³Transl: It is important to note that within the frame of this modality in the broader sense mood expresses only basic meanings which are then shaded by other modality means, by modal words and particles and – last but not least – intonation.

- O modalitě se obvykle hovoří jako o sféře lexikálně gramatické a v širokém smyslu do ní bývá zahrnováno vše, co nějakým způsobem souvisí s jistým sémantickým okruhem – totiž s významy postihujícími “vztah děje ke skutečnosti” nebo “vztah mluvčího k ději” (Benešová, Panevová, Sgall 1971: 97).⁴
- V různorodé oblasti modalit je třeba odlišit dvě základní modální sféry: modalitu objektivní (jde v podstatě o vztah obsahu výpovědi ke skutečnosti) a subjektivní (vztah mluvčího k obsahu výpovědi) (Petr 1986: 183)⁵
- Modality in language is concerned with subjective characteristics of an utterance, and it could even be further argued that subjectivity is an essential criterion for modality. Modality could, that is to say, be defined as the grammaticalization of speakers’ (subjective) attitudes and opinions. (Palmer 1986: 16)
- At its most general, modality may be defined as the manner in which the meaning of a clause is qualified so as to reflect the speaker’s judgment of the likelihood of the proposition it expresses being true. (Quirk 1985: 219)
- Modal expressions are those which signal a particular attitude on the part of the speaker to the proposition expressed or a situation described (typically in a statement). Other modals indicate the degree of desirability (or otherwise) of a proposition becoming true. (Cruse 2004: 298)

When trying to define what is common to all the above mentioned definitions, the keyword number one is *relation*: the relation of the speaker to the utterance, to the factuality and actualisation, the relation of the utterance to reality, the relation of the real world to possible worlds. Modality can be best seen as opposed to factuality – it states the content of the utterance not as a fact but as a potential fact dependent on certain conditions e.g. the authority and approach of the speaker (*You must take the exam now; you can take the exam no*), the reliability of their judgement (*He must have forgotten about the meeting*).

⁴ Transl: Modality is usually spoken of as a lexical-grammatical sphere and in a broad sense it is seen as including everything that is connected with a particular area – with meanings expressing “the relation of an action to reality” and the relation of the speaker to the action.

⁵ Transl: In the varied area of modality it is important to distinguish between two basic modal spheres: objective modality (dealing with the relation of the content of the utterance to reality), and subjective modality (the relation of the speaker to the content of the utterance).

Another consistency in approaches to modality is classification into two basic concepts or notions – those of possibility and necessity. Since the semantic field of necessity is the concern of this thesis, it will be dealt with in detail further in the paper together with “possibility” since its meaning in connection with negation is complementary to that of necessity. *He can stay up late on Saturday* can be interpreted either as *it is possible for him to stay up late* or as *it is not necessary for him to go to bed early*. Each of these two concepts, necessity and possibility, is then further classified into kinds of modality – deontic, epistemic and often also dynamic.⁶

One additional feature of modality, which also appears in many works dealing with modality, will be used as one of the criteria of the classification and description of individual modal expressions in the practical part of this paper – the strength of modality. The strengths are referred to by different names by different linguists e.g. Huddleston and Pullum (2002: 175) talk about “weak”, “medium” and “strong”, while Halliday (1991: 182) refers to the same concepts as “high”, “median” and “low” yet they describe the same matter. On the basis of strength, the fundamental concepts of *obligation* and *high probability* on the “high” end of the scale and of *possibility* and *permission* on the “low” one are distinguished. Medium modality is somewhere in between, “though intuitively closer to the strong end than to the weak” (Huddleston and Pullum 2002: 177). Examples of modal expressions of medium strength are *should* and *likely*. Regardless of the terms used, the existence of degrees of modality, strength is a generally known, non-contradictory fact. What is, however, not stated and discussed so frequently is the fact that the strength of individual modal expressions is not absolute, but depends on the context. The predominantly weak modal expressions can become strong and vice versa. R. Huddleston and G. K. Pullum distinguish “semantic strength” and “pragmatic strength” and illustrate that for example the “semantically strong modal verb *must*” can be “pragmatically weakened” in the sentence “*You must have one of the cakes*”, which does not express obligation but rather an offer (Huddleston and Pullum 2002: 176, 177).

The classification of modality into the kinds mentioned above, namely the distinction between deontic or epistemic, is dealt with below.

⁶ Some linguists (F. Kiefer, 1994) distinguish a greater number of different kinds of modality, but, for our purposes, such a detailed classification is not necessary. (With the pre-set aim in mind it would even be counterproductive.)

1.2 Kinds of modality

The basic distinction between deontic and epistemic modality is that between actualisation and factuality. Deontic modality has its illocutionary force and an utterance including deontic modality has the potential (another important key term connected with modality) to result in a particular physical act of doing or not doing something. An utterance including epistemic modality, on the other hand, has the potential of being/not being true. Halliday (1991: 183) describes deontic modality as calibrating the area of meaning between *Do it!* and *Don't do it!*, whereas epistemic modality as calibrating the area of meaning which lies between *Yes* and *No*. Žaža compares sentences containing language means expressing epistemic modality with those who do not contain such means and concludes that: “Společným jmenovatelem všech je však to, že objektivně vyjadřují, že realizace děje není mluvčím ověřena, mluvčí často přesvědčuje sama sebe; proto i když vyjadřuje své naprosté přesvědčení o realizaci, adresát přijímá jeho sdělení jako méně jisté, než kdyby takový výraz neobsahovalo⁷” (Žaža 1972: 56). This basic distinction, in whatever particular words it is actually described, is something on which all linguists seem to agree.

What is, however, approached and treated from different angles and with different results is the place of the two kinds of modality in its general conception. Different approach to deontic modality on the one hand and epistemic on the other can be seen in Petr (1987). Deontic modality is dealt with in the chapter *Modifikace propozice*⁸ under the heading *Věty s modálními charakteristikami nutnosti, možnosti a záměru*⁹ while epistemic modality is discussed 80 pages later in the chapter *Komunikativní složky výpovědi*¹⁰ under the chapter *Jistotní modalita*¹¹, where epistemically modal attitudes are described as “komponenty struktury oznamovací funkce výpovědi”¹². From the distinction it follows that deontic modality is considered to be more a semantic feature while epistemic modality is presented as belonging to pragmatics. This only underlines the difficulty of determining the place of modality in language description discussed at the beginning of the theory part.

⁷ Transl.: The common denominator of all these means is the fact that they objectively express, that the realization of the action is not proved by the speaker, the speaker often tries to convince him/herself; therefore, although he/she expresses their absolute conviction about the realization, the addressee receives the message as less certain than if it did not contain the modal means

⁸ Transl.: Modification of a Proposition

⁹ Transl.: Sentences with Modal Characteristics of Necessity, Possibility and Intention

¹⁰ Transl.: Communicative Components of an Utterance

There are theoreticians who consider only one of the mentioned kinds of modality as truly modal: the epistemic one. This approach seems to have its firm roots in history. A. Plantiga, in his book *The Nature of Necessity* (1974), which reflects the main historical approaches to this topic, considers *necessity* only in its epistemic sense. Also some Czech linguists consider epistemic modality “more modal” than deontic. Petr (1986: 284) speaks about a primary and secondary function of modal verbs: Užití vlastních modálních sloves v první funkci představuje jejich funkci primární. Funkce modálních sloves jako nepřímých spoluukazatelů komunikativních záměrů nebo subjektivních postojů a hodnocení mluvčího představuje sekundární (zprostředkovanou) oblast modálních sloves, podmíněnou komunikativním kontextem, třebaže sekundární funkce bývá někdy víc spjata s některými morfologickými formami. Často se však právě jen tyto druhotné funkce modálních sloves považují za skutečně “modální”.¹³ For practical users of a language and also for learners, the situation is the opposite. If a native speaker of, for example, Czech is asked about the meaning of a modal verb, the first interpretation they mention is usually deontic (This was tested on 98 second year students of English at the Faculty of Education, Technical University of Liberec, who were asked to provide a meaning of *MAY* and *MUST*. All the respondents provided a deontic interpretation for both modal verbs and 17 then added also an epistemic interpretation, mainly for *MUST*). This finding is rather surprising mainly in the case of *MAY*, since its epistemic interpretation seems much stronger than the deontic one. This is also reflected in the dictionary entries. For the word *MUST* the Cambridge Advanced Dictionary and the Velký anglicko-český slovník) list its deontic interpretation first. On the other hand for *MAY* it is the epistemic interpretation, which is listed first. Moreover learners, at least in the case of Czech learners of English, learn the deontic interpretation of modal verbs sooner than the epistemic. They make more mistakes in the epistemic use of modals. The deontic interpretation is also the first one found in a dictionary. Alexander (1988: 207) refers to the deontic interpretation of modal verbs as to their “primary function”. Even in the diachronic perspective, there are linguists who consider deontic interpretations as developmentally older. Winter and Gardenfors (1995: 91) cite Traugott (1989) whose opinion they themselves support: “In this perspective, the

¹¹ Transl.: Epistemic Modality

¹² Transl.: components of a structure of a declarative function of an utterance

¹³ Transl: The use of central modal verbs in the first function represents a primary function. The function of modal verbs as an indirect co-indicator of communicative intentions or subjective attitudes and assessments of the speaker represents secondary (mediated) area of modal verbs function, conditioned by communicative context, although the secondary function is sometimes connected with certain morphological forms. Often, however, only this secondary function of modal verbs is considered genuinely “modal.”

evolution of the modals from manipulative to deontic (syntactically marked as auxiliaries), and further on to epistemic is not trivial". And they themselves add: "In our analysis we will in particular focus on this change, from deontic to epistemic, and what is needed for a language community to *accept* the epistemic uses".

Whether one kind is more modal or historically older than the other is not important for the correct use of expressions of modality both in deontic and epistemic sense. What is important for this distinction is that mainly central modal verbs follow different grammar rules when used with one interpretation or the other. These structural differences are discussed later for each modal expression individually, in the appropriate section separately for each language. General conclusions from the findings connected with this distinction are drawn.

An additional kind of modality can be distinguished – dynamic modality. For dynamic modality the key words are properties (of a situation) or disposition (of a person). Dynamic modality can be, therefore, seen as more objective than the two previous kinds. Since, however, a common practice is to distinguish only two basic kinds of modality such an approach is also adopted in this paper. Similar approach can be found e.g. in Dušková (1994), Quirk (1985) and Tárníková (1985a) whose classification summary is illustrated in the table below:

Modalita vlastní intra-propoziční ¹⁴	Modalita vlastní extrapropoziční ¹⁵
deontic	epistemic
deontic + dynamic	epistemic
non-epistemic	epistemic
root	epistemic
intra-propositional	extra-propositional
non-complex	complex

(Tárníková 1985a: 11)

The distinction of the area of modality into the three afore-mentioned kinds is not absolute. In many cases it is a question of gradience rather than of clearly cut boundaries. The kind of interpretation is usually dependent on context because many modal expressions can be

¹⁴ Transl. Modality proper intra-propositional

¹⁵ Transl. Modality proper extra-propositional

used with at least both deontic and epistemic interpretations. But even if a modal expression is used and studied in a broader context, it may not always be possible to clearly define its kind of modality. According to (Huddleston and Pullum 2002: 178) “There are numerous expressions that are used both deontically and epistemically, and the same phenomenon is found in many other languages too. In general it is plausible to regard the deontic uses as more basic, with the epistemic ones arising by extension to the domain of reasoning of concepts primarily applicable in the domain of human interaction, such as compelling and permitting”. And Cruse (2004: 299) summarises the whole problem in the following way: “It is a notable fact that grammatical modal expressions regularly have both epistemic and deontic uses, and this seems to be a universal phenomenon, not confined to English. Various explanations for this have been put forward, either claiming that both are merely special cases of some more general meaning, or claiming that the derivation of one from the other (by metaphor, or whatever), is so ‘natural’ as to be inevitable. However, none of the proposed solutions so far is wholly convincing”.

The approach in which deontic (+dynamic) modality and epistemic modality is dealt with together as differently justified features of one general concept is common in Anglo-American linguistics. The common Czech approach to treat the kinds of modality as structurally different also is thoroughly justified. While deontic (+ dynamic) modality always functions as a verb modifier and influences the meaning of the whole proposition, epistemic modality can have only a partial function. If epistemic modality is expressed by a modal particle (adverb) and “je-li predikát kontextově zapojen, pak jistotně modalitní postoj jen nezapojené, nominální části výpovědi a mluvíme o JM parciální” (Petr 1987: 364).¹⁶ The fact that the same modal expression can be used both deontically and epistemically in connection with partial modality seem to apply only partially. It holds good for modal verbs since they constitute part of a verb phrase and do not, from their substance, allow partial modality. Nevertheless, as far as modal particles (adverbs) both in English and Czech are concerned, their function seems to be quite specific. These types of modal expressions are used either only deontically or epistemically and only rarely, if ever, are they capable of both interpretations.

¹⁶ Transl.: if the predicate is contextually bound, then epistemically modal attitude influences only non-bound, nominal parts of the sentence and we speak about partial epistemic modality.

1.3 Approaches to the general description of modality

Clearly, the area of modality is not only broad, but (as demonstrated later in the paper) also complex. Within this broad area it is difficult both to delimit what language means should or should not be included in the category of modality, and also define, describe, and distinguish the individual means of modality. It is made even more complicated by the fact that many of the modal means are used with more than one function.

The main concern of the paper so far has been to introduce the notion of modality, to define it and then, since it is a semantic notion, to delimit the area of meaning it concerns. Modality has been viewed and treated as a general feature of language and this approach is retained also in this chapter, which attempts to map various approaches to general description of modality.

At present there seem to exist two basic starting points of the general description of modality. Since it is always easier both for the producer and receiver to start a linguistic description from the form (at least at the beginning when the area of study is being delimited), the first attempts to describe modality in English¹⁷ started with the form. And since it soon became clear that it is hardly manageable to deal with the notion of modality in its whole complexity, many studies of modality are restricted to the study of modal auxiliaries. These can be quite easily delimited as far as their form is concerned - at least the central modals. Such an approach, however, neglects many language means which express modality, too, and therefore the picture of modality is not complete. Whenever the safe area of central modals is abandoned, difficulties then appear. Other problems start to emerge when meaning is assigned to individual modal auxiliaries. Linguists are often forced to use rather vague explanations. "It is not necessary to define precisely what kinds of meanings are involved. We take the formal category as our starting-point, and it is sufficient for our purpose that the meanings involved are such as to justify characterizing them as 'modality'" (Palmer 1979: 4-5).

Linguists who, regardless of the difficulties, aim at a precise and exhausting description of modality usually end up by choosing as their starting point one of the two common approaches which in their own way attempt to deal with the fact that the majority of

¹⁷ Since the chapter claims to deal with modality in general and now refers to description of modality in English it may seem as a contradiction. I believe it is not, since the most frequent language of science is English and the works referred to in this chapter, although written in English and sometimes based on examples from English, aim at a description of modality with general validity.

sentences which include modal verbs are ambiguous. Modality is seen either as functioning on the level of semantics or of pragmatics and the ambiguity is either “a part” of a modal verb itself, in other words modal verbs are polysemous – the semantic approach, or, for each modal verb, there is a common basic meaning, but it can acquire different interpretations (and consequently meanings) in different contexts – the pragmatic approach. According to Marjolein Groefsema (1995: 54, 55) “in literature on modality there are two main views on the meaning of the modal verbs. On the one hand, we find the view that the modals are polysemous, depending on the kind (and degree) of modality they express (for example Palmer 1979, 1986; Coates 1983; Quirk et al. 1985). On the other hand, there is the view that the modals have a single unitary meaning each, and that the apparent ambiguities are a result of the interpretation of an utterance containing the modal in a particular context (for example, Ehrman 1966; Kratzer 1977; Perkins 1983; Walton 1988; Klinge 1993)”

Linguists who believe in the description on the level of semantics follow the above mentioned procedure when looking for all necessary categories of meaning to meet their Herculean task. This often results in such a complicated description which includes so many categories and exceptions that it becomes impractical. “Proponents of the polysemy view have tried to equate the meanings of the English modals with the philosophical categories of modality. However, in trying to account for the modals, these categories turn out not to be sufficient and further categories have to be proposed. A problem with this is that, even when more and more fine-grained categories of modality are distinguished, there seems to be no one-to-one correspondence between the kinds and degrees of modality that one can distinguish, and the different meanings of the modal verbs.” (Groefsema 1995: 55)

Others look for an alternative solution and often search for either a basic meaning for each modal verb individually (e.g. Erhart 1966), or for a unitary meaning which would serve for the interpretation of any modal expression. The latter solution is the one which can be called pragmatic, since the different interpretations of the one unitary meaning are determined by the use of a modal expression. Context plays an important role in both these views.

If it was really possible to determine one unitary meaning common to all modals, it would be the best and the most transparent solution. Therefore what follows is a search for a framework among the attempts aiming at the description of modality based on a meaning common to all expressions of modality. Two suggestions which will be presented here are

based on Relevance theory. Marjolein Groefsema (1994:61) proposes that “the basic meanings of *can*, *may*, *must* and *should* express **relations** between the proposition expressed by the rest of an utterance containing them and a set of ‘background’ assumptions, while putting constraints on what set of assumptions are recovered during the interpretation process.” She basically works with two kinds of relations “p (proposition) is compatible with all/some propositions or p is entailed by the set of all /at least some propositions”. Alex Klinge (1993) adopted the term “potentiality” to stand for the semantic field shared by the five modals. “Each of the modals finds its exclusive place in the system by giving different procedural information about the POTENTIAL correspondence between a SITUATION REPRESENTATION and a WORLD SITUATION. It is central to my argument that the correspondence/non-correspondence between a SITUATION REPRESENTATION and a WORLD SITUATION always relies on a change of cognitive environment, which I paraphrased as ‘turn out’, but that the temporal index assigned to SITUATION REPRESENTATIONS of future WORLD SITUATIONS leads to a fundamental distinction between WORLD-EVENTS and AGENT-EVENTS. It is vital to note that, irrespective of whether a sentence containing a modal is uttered as non-epistemic or epistemic modality, the SITUATION REPRESENTATION it gives rise to is conveyed as cognitively unverified, and not asserted to be the case.” (1993: 323, 354).

Both these approaches describe modality as a relation between the proposition expressed and either a set of assumptions (the former) or an actual state of affairs (the latter). Another approach which will be presented here claims that there is a close connection between deontic and epistemic modality, that the latter one can be derived from the former one and that modality can be described as “expressing social power”. S. Winter and P. Gardenfors (1995) claim that “by accepting *evidence* as a separate power, the so called epistemic usages of modals can be seen as a systematic transition from the deontic expressions.” They summarize their conclusions in the following way: “In contrast to human agents, evidence, whether common or personal, has no attitudes in itself. The only thing that varies is the strength or weight of the evidence, i.e., the amount of information that “speaks” in favour of a certain conclusion. The weight of evidence is what determines its power. Another difference between deontic and epistemic uses of modals is that the objects of deontic modal verbs are actions, where utterances are *speech acts*, while the epistemic modal verbs concern *states of affairs*, where utterances are reports. Being a report, an expression containing an epistemic modal is primarily about the *third* person (or

the non-person), while deontic modals used in speech acts typically concern the first or second person” (Winter and Gardenfors 1995: 120, 121).

Another approach is based on setting criteria on which the interpretation of a meaning of a modal expression is based. Kratzer (1991) assumes that for interpretation of a sentence with a modal operator, two parameters “modal base and ordering source” need to be respected. “The modal base determines the set of accessible world (for a given world). The ordering source imposes an ordering on this set. In English we need to distinguish two kinds of modal bases: circumstantial and epistemic, which both are realistic bases” (Kratzer 1991: 645, 646). For capturing the differences between languages she suggests three dimensions:

- a. Modal force: necessity, weak necessity, good possibility, possibility, slight possibility, at least as good as a possibility, better possibility, maybe others
- b. Modal base: circumstantial versus epistemic (possibly further differentiations within these groups, like knowledge coming from certain sources, facts of a special kind)
- c. Ordering source: deontic, bouletic, stereotypical etc.

(Kratzer 1991: 649)

Although the three afore mentioned approaches use different terminology and the last one also builds on a different theory so it may seem at first sight that it offers a completely different solution, they have a lot in common. What differs are the starting points of the descriptions, the heart of the matter is, however, similar in all the three cases. What is always included is first a kind of relationship between opportunity (potential reality) and reality, and second a kind of force which is capable of realizing this relation, in other words, to change the potential into real. Since the aim of this thesis is not a detailed description of modality on the level of general linguistics, but a comparison of means used to express necessity in two languages, the general framework for modality arrived at here will suffice for this purpose.

With the main aim of this paper in mind, namely a contrastive study of modal expressions in English and Czech, the fact that one modal can mean more things is of prime importance. Whether the source of this is on the level of semantics or pragmatics is irrelevant. Since modality is a general feature of language, once a concrete approach is

adopted, it can be applied in the same way to both English and Czech. Whether a semantic or pragmatic approach is chosen or regarded as the correct one will not influence the results of the comparative study.

In this paper, therefore, we will deal with various 'meanings or interpretations' of individual modal means without further search for the place of their origin. The suggestions of general description of modality discussed above will later be used as a framework for such comparison or at least their validity for the area of necessity in English and Czech will be tested.

2 MODALITY IN ENGLISH

2.1 Some important structural features influencing the function of modal expressions

The 'grammar' of modal expressions, predominantly of modal verbs can be rather complicated and what is even more important is often reflected in their distinction into kinds of modality. In addition to context, the 'grammar' of a modal expression is another factor which helps the receivers of propositions decide whether they should interpret the modal expression deontically or epistemically. The use of modal expressions in general is restricted by their grammar, so certain modal expressions are unusual or not even used at all in certain structures, while others (even those with similar meaning) occur frequently there. Or, on the other hand, their use is restricted by their semantics so, for example, some modal expressions are not used with future reference.

2.2 The use of modal expressions (predominantly modal verbs) in the basic sentence types

An affirmative sentence is usually considered the basic, unmarked sentence type and therefore modal expressions in affirmative sentences should be studied first. However, such a chapter would not only be but the results would convey a rather confusing picture. For these reasons rather than a general approach, the treatment of each modal expression separately will be adopted in this thesis. The basic meanings and use in an affirmative sentence will be discussed in the empirical part before the discussion of the excerpts

themselves. Below there are a few remarks concerning the use of modal expressions in other types of sentences.

Modal verbs cannot be used in imperative sentences due to their semantics.

The use of the same modal verb often involves the shift of the authority from the speaker to the hearer when a statement is turned into an interrogative.

e.g. *Your son may come with us.* – the speaker is the authority granting the permission

May my son go with you? – the hearer is the authority granting the permission

Some modal verbs (usually only in certain interpretations) are infrequent or not used in interrogative sentences, or their use in questions is somehow restricted:

- *may* in its epistemic interpretation does not occur in questions – it is replaced by *can* or *could*,
- *must* is rare in questions and if it is used then usually only with a special meaning such as a complaint *Must you keep telling me what is good for me?*
- *should* in a question usually has a deontic interpretation
- when used in questions, *need* can also appear in the positive

(based on Huddleston and Pullum 2002, and Palmer 1979)

Some modal verbs also embody a special behaviour when influenced by the interplay of interrogation with negation. This will be discussed at the end of the following section.

2.3 Modal verbs and negation

What is the most important aspect of the use of modal verbs in negative constructions is the fact that, theoretically, each such construction can have two different interpretations depending on what is being negated: either the modality (often referred to as ‘external negation’) or the event (internal negation).¹⁸ In practice, however, individual modals take either external or internal negation. “There is a general tendency for strong or medium

¹⁸ The term ‘event’ will be used here in the same way as Palmer (1979: 25) uses it. Palmer took this term from Joos (1964: 149, 151) who defines it as “key technical term, signifying the sort of thing that is specified by verb-bases, thus perhaps relations [RESEMBLE, etc.], and states [WORRY, BE COLD], as well as deeds [SHOW]”. The term ‘proposition’ is often used synonymously. Since, however, the latter term is used frequently in linguistic literature but with more than one clearly defined content and in its extreme it can include even modality, the term ‘event’ seems safer.

modals to take internal negation, and for weak modals to take external negation: He mustn't/shouldn't go with them [strong/medium: internal negation], He can't go with them [weak: external negation]" (Huddleston and Pullum 2002: 204). *May* represents an exception to this tendency, because it is commonly used with both kinds of negation and the distinction in the kind of negation used marks the distinction in the kind of modality: *Books may not be carried out of the study room.* [external negation – deontic interpretation], *He may not be at home yet.* [internal negation – epistemic]. Palmer strives to find certain logic in the interplay between modal verbs and negation. He suggests that “It is possible to paraphrase modal of possibility and necessity in terms of such expressions as *It is possible/necessary that ...*, and thereby indicate where the negation is semantically located (its scope) – *It is not possible/necessary that ...* and *It is possible/necessary that ... not ...*. This is important because it is assumed that in the ideal or regular situation the grammatical placement of the negative indicates the scope of negation. If the modal is negated, the expected paraphrase will be *It is not possible/necessary that ...*, while if the full verb is negated, the paraphrase will be *It is possible/necessary that ... not ...*” (Palmer in Bybee and Fleischman 1995: 455, 456). Modal systems are, however, often not fully regular in this respect. Examples of irregularities in English might be e.g. “the use *can* in place of epistemic *may* for *not-possible*, *not-possible can't* as the form for epistemic *necessary-not* corresponding to *must*” (Palmer in Bybee and Fleischman 1995: 461).

If the intention of a writer requires negation of modality with a modal taking internal negation and vice versa, a different negative or sometimes even a positive modal expression is required. Thus, for example, the negation of modality for *must* is *needn't* or *don't have to*.

In the previous section, the existence of certain interesting aspects of the interplay between negation and interrogation was suggested. The first important fact is that although one could assume that if either modality or an event can be negated, also either the former or the latter can also be questioned in an interrogative sentence. It is, however, due to the nature of modality not possible. An utterance marked for modality presents its content not as a fact, but as a potential with various degrees of potentiality to become reality. It is, therefore not possible to question something that can be unreal, but it is possible to question the conditions of its realization. Another connection between negation and interrogation applies to modal expressions with external negation: “if the negative form of the modal negates modality, this form is used for interrogation; if, however, the negative

form negates the event and a different verb is used for negation, this second verb is usually used for interrogation” (Palmer 1979: 27).

2.4 Modality and time reference

Modal expressions other than central modal verbs can be used in various tenses. In this respect their form does not differ from the use of any other expressions. It has not been possible to find extensive enough theoretical literature concerning the use of other modal expressions from the viewpoint of different grammar features. Therefore this matter will have to be discussed on the basis of the practical results found in the fiction – on condition that some relevant conclusions are formed. As for modal verbs their variability in connection with tenses is rather limited. They cannot be used in the future tense. It is, however, often stated, that they themselves can refer to future time. We agree that a sentence with a modal verb in the present can refer to the future. What, however, refers to the future is not the modality, but the event. Whenever a clear reference of modality to the future is needed, it is not a modal verb but another synonymous expression which is used with the future tense. Take for example conditional clauses *If the car does not get repaired we will have to go by bus.*

As far as past reference is concerned, there are two ways in which it is expressed: by the preterite form of a modal, or by a modal verb + perfect infinitive. There are only three modal verbs which have a preterite form, the last of which is rarely used – *could*, *would* and *might*. Apart from past reference these often express (and except for *could* do so even more frequently) “modal remoteness – in remote conditionals and the complement of *wish*, to indicate tentativeness, and a special use applying just to *could* and *might*” (Huddleston and Pullum 2002: 198). Another possibility of a past reference of a modal verb is the perfect infinitive, which can function as internal or external (having its scope over a modal verb) perfect – a situation similar to the one of negation. This grammatical feature is often used to distinguish deontic and epistemic modality; external perfect is often deontic while internal, epistemic. A sentence including a modal verb + perfect infinitive capable of forming both external and internal perfect then results in ambiguity as Huddleston and Pullum 2002: 204) “*He needn’t have told her*”. For an epistemic reading it means: *Maybe he did not tell her* [internal perfect], for a deontic reading it means: *It was not necessary for him to tell her* [external perfect]. What is also typical for external perfects is that they

“convey propositions of opposite polarity: positive *You should have told her* implicates that you didn’t, while negative *You shouldn’t have told her* implicates that you did”. When it is needed to express deontic modality with past reference of a modal verb which normally takes internal perfect – and therefore expresses epistemic modality – a different synonymous expression has to be used: *He must have gone out* [epistemic] = It is probable that he went out; *He had to go out* [deontic] = It was necessary for him to go out.

Below is the delimitation and definition of ‘necessity’, which is the subject of this paper including possibilities of expressing necessity in English and then the discussion of Czech modal system will follow.

2.5 Necessity

As is clear from the general discussion on modality, *necessity* is one of its core concepts. In the Glossary of Linguistic Terms produced by SIL International *necessity* is defined as follows: “necessity is a degree of contingency in modality that in

- alethic modality connotes logical requirement
- deontic modality connotes obligation, and
- epistemic modality connotes certainty.

([Http://www.sil.org/linguistics/GlossaryofTerms/what is necessity](http://www.sil.org/linguistics/GlossaryofTerms/what%20is%20necessity))

Huddleston and Pullum (2002: 175) describe *necessity* as one of the two “core concepts of modality which involves a strong commitment”.

In the Cambridge Advanced Dictionary, *necessity* is defined as the *need for something*.

In the majority of works on modality, the meaning or area of meaning of necessity and also probability is not discussed or defined and it is usually treated as an object of general knowledge which readers automatically understand. In this paper, necessity will be approached both as necessity to do something (often called obligation – both escapable and non-escapable) and also as necessity of something to be/not to be true (often called logical necessity). This corresponds to the distinction of necessity into deontic and epistemic.

2.5.1 Relation between possibility and necessity

There is a logical relation between necessity and possibility through negation: what is possible is not necessary, and what is necessary is not possible not to be. The mentioned relation is important for this paper to delimit modal expressions of necessity since ***necessity not to do something*** does not have to be expressed exclusively by a modal verb of necessity + internal negation. It can also be conveyed by a modal verb of possibility + external negation. It is therefore crucial to include into the expressions of necessity also *cannot* and *may not, not to be allowed to...* as well.

2.5.2 Necessity in English

It would be ideal to have an exhaustive inventory of language item used to express necessity in English. No such source is, however, available. However several observations can be made. Generally modality can be expressed either on a lexical or a structural level. For the latter the most important means is the imperative, which is, therefore, included in the excerpted material. As for modality expressed on lexical level it would be a nigh impossible task to list all the possible expressions and neither would it be of great value. The procedure is, therefore, as follows. First the general areas potentially important for expressing modality are defined and the actual means included in the research are naturally determined by the excerpts from the chosen fiction. The areas are as follows:

- necessity expressed by means of a verb. The prominent position is occupied here by modal (+ semi modal and quasi modal) verbs. These are distinguished from other verbs not only by their clear modal meaning, but also by their grammar. Therefore, although other verbs can also contain shades of modal meaning, mainly modal and semi-modal verbs are included in the Material.¹⁹ Potentially interesting cases which may occur in the text-sample are also included, which important for the discussion of the general situation in the area of necessity. The basic verbal means of expressing necessity in English therefore are: *MUST, SHOULD, HAVE TO, NEED, BE TO* (both modal and lexical), *CANNOT*, or as the case may be also *FORCE, ORDER*

¹⁹ The term the *Material* refers to the set of all excerpts used for empirical research.

- necessity expressed by means of adjectives and past participles: examples frequently found are *necessary, bound, sure, certain, supposed, meant*
- necessity expressed by means of adverbs such as *surely, certainly*
- necessity expressed by means of nouns such as *necessity, certainty, duty*. This category is in brackets since it is assumed to be a less frequent category.

In the afore-mentioned list of means used to express necessity in English, no distinction is made between deontic and epistemic modality since in grammars of the English language, the kinds of modality are usually dealt with together. It should suffice now to state that all the categories above can be used both with a deontic and an epistemic interpretation. A more detailed discussion can be found below (in the discussion of differences in expressing necessity in English and Czech based on theoretical findings and in the relevant parts of the empirical part). For the last three categories, it is impossible to delimit them by defining or listing all the potential expressions they can include. The only theoretical possibility to compile all their members would be to go through a dictionary and test each word for the potentiality of including some modal interpretation, and then either include it on the list or not. In practice, however, modal expressions are determined on the basis of context. Therefore the decision what means to include in the Material is based on the evaluation of each individual sentence in the chosen fiction. The above illustrated list of categories serves as guidelines.

3 THE CZECH MODAL SYSTEM

3.1 General characteristics

The theoretical discussion of the Czech modal system is based predominantly on the work of Eva Benešová and on the findings summarised in *Mluvnice češtiny 1-3*.

In its broad, general sense, modality concerns two semantic areas: the relationship of the action to the reality and the relationship of the speaker to the action. For some linguists, such as Kopečný (1962: 113) or Dokulil (1954: 256) modality is a necessary feature of all sentences.

Taking as her starting point the works of Šmilauer and Dokulil, Benešová (1971: 99) classifies modality in Czech into two main types based on the criteria of subjectivity/objectivity:

- I. “Modalita tzv. subjektivní (=větná); vztah výpovědního děje ke skutečnosti (realizovatelnost), daný v příslušném sdělení záměrem mluvčího.
- II. Modalita tzv. objektivní (=slovesná); vztah výpovědního děje ke skutečnosti (realizovatelnost), tak jak se promítá ve sdělení mluvčího:
 - 1) daný dispozicí původce děje (konatele):
 - pouhé přisouzení děje (nepříz.)
 - nutnost, možnost, vůle
 - 2) daný stupněm reality
 - a)
 - reálnost (nepřízn.)
 - potenciálnost, ireálnost
 - b)
 - různá pravděpodobnostní míra (modální částice) – vyjadřovaná většinou parenteticky
 - 3) daný platností děje (klad, zápor)”

(Benešová 1971: 98, 99)

Note: The English translation is provided immediately below for clarity's sake

- I. Subjective modality (= sentential); the relation of utterance action to the reality (viability), conveyed in the utterance by the speaker's intention.
- II. Objective modality (= verb); the relation of utterance action to the reality (viability) as it is reflected in what the speaker says:
 - 1) based on the disposition of an actor
 - mere ascription of the action (unmarked)
 - necessity, possibility, volition
 - 2) based on the degree of reality
 - a) - factuality (unmarked)
 - potentiality
 - b) various probability rate (modal particles)
 - 3) based on the validity of the action (affirmative / negation)

Subjective modality is mainly attitude modality whose function is to express the communication intention of the speaker. It is predominantly expressed by the mood of the verb and the imperative functions as a marked, distinctive feature. This kind of modality is characterised by the fact that the '*původce modality*' (source of modality) is always represented by the speaker. Since the subjective modality is not the focus of the thesis, it is not studied and described any further. Nevertheless, since the imperative as such is an important means used to express deontic modality. This is discussed in the Empirical part and compared with other means.

In Petr (1986b: 186) the distinction between objective and subjective modality is explained as follows: "V různorodé oblasti modality je třeba odlišit dvě základní modální sféry: modalitu objektivní (jde v podstatě o vztah obsahu výpovědi ke skutečnosti) a subjektivní (vztah mluvčího k obsahu výpovědi."²⁰ According to Petr (1986 b: 187), the basic, obligatory kind of objective modality is reality modality (*skutečnostní*) and it mainly concerns the opposition between unconditionality (*nepodmíněnost*) and conditionality (*podmíněnost*.) The profound language means to distinguish between the two poles of objective modality is the opposition between the indicative and the conditional. "Skutečnostní modalita může být fakultativně modifikována modalitou dispoziční (volitivní), jež vyjadřuje dispozici původce děje k realizaci tohoto děje, tedy stupeň realizovatelnosti (nutnost, možnost dovolení a její primární vyjadřovací prostředky jsou povahy lexikální – jsou to zejména vlastní modální slovesa" (Petr 1986b: 187)²¹.

Since this paper focuses on ways of expressing necessity, its focus is thus on objective modality and mainly categories II 1 and 2 according to Benešova's classification. Subjective modality is not studied and described any further. It may be given more detailed treatment in the empirical part if found relevant. The two mentioned categories basically include two types of modality: II 1 - 'dispositional or voluntative' (*dispoziční nebo voluntativní*) and II 2 - 'certainty' (*jistotní*) modality – this type of modality is referred to as epistemic, since this type of modality closely corresponds to what is referred to as epistemic modality in Anglo-American linguistics). The dispositional modality is further

²⁰ Transl: In the varied area of modality it is important to distinguish two basic modal spheres: objective modality (dealing with the relation of the content of the utterance to reality), and subjective modality (the relation of the speaker to the content of the utterance)

²¹ Transl: The 'reality' modality can be facultatively modified by 'dispositional' modality which expresses the disposition of the source of the action to the realization of this action (necessity, possibility, permission) and whose primary means of expression are of a lexical character – mainly the central modal verbs".

divided into modality of necessity, possibility and intention. In modern Czech, it is predominantly expressed by lexical means, but grammar can also play a distinctive role here. All the markers of this type of modality are called ‘modal specifiers’ (*modální specifikátory*). The dispositional modality mainly when expressed by modal verbs is described rather thoroughly for Czech. The main findings in this field will be described latter. As far as epistemic modality is concerned, the research into this type of modality seems less extensive and less systematic and complex. The description of epistemic modality in Czech is often limited to adverbial particles and does not allow for, or at least does not mention, the possibility of using modal verbs as well.

3.2 Formal characteristics of Czech modal verbs

Since modal verbs are considered the prime means of expressing modality, they usually receive the greatest attention and therefore they are usually the most thoroughly described modal specifiers. One of the areas attracting the attention of linguists is the formal criteria which distinguish modal verbs from the word class of verbs in general. The situation in Czech is no different and although this paper deals with modality from the semantic point of view and is not focused exclusively on modal verbs, it is important to at least briefly list the formal criteria for defining modal verbs in Czech and then deal, in detail only, with the ones which are reflected in meaning. We present here a list of formal criteria as established by Benešová (1971: 101 – 111):

- “M se pojí pouze s infinitivem, nikoli s vedlejší větou
- M nelze rozvíjet jménem
- M netvoří imperative
- M se při pasívní transformaci nemění
- M nemá vidový protějšek
- M netvoří substantivum verbale”²²

²² Transl: modal verbs combine only with the infinitive not with a subordinate clause
modal verbs cannot be modified by a noun phrase
modal verbs do not form the imperative
modal verbs do not change under the passive
modal verbs are not marked for aspect
modal verbs do not form the gerund”

We take the criteria for granted without commenting on them and questioning them, because as explained above, they are not the prime concern of this paper. We need them and will use for the purpose of comparison of the systems of modal verbs in Czech and English, for potential explanations of the differences in meaning and the use of individual English and Czech modal verbs and also for delimiting of the subject of our concern from the formal point of view. Thus a group of nine modal verbs (*muset, být nucen, mít, moci, smět, umět, dovést, chtít, hodlat*) is established for Czech. In order to find out which of the modal verbs are used to express necessity, further delimitation, this time from a semantic point of view, is needed. This is the subject of the following chapter.

3.3 Expressing necessity in Czech

In *Mluvnice češtiny* (1987) the modal category of necessity is further segmented, based on semantic criteria, into modal values of ‘*nezbytnost*’ (inevitability), ‘*očekávanost*’ (expectation) and ‘*záhodnost*’ (desirability). Benešová (1971: 128) distinguishes necessity from possibility and intention, stating that “zatímco význam možnosti a vůle na ose modálních typů nelze co do modální naléhavosti přesně umístit, význam nutnosti může být vyhraněný, může vyjadřovat pevnou mez”.²³ This finding then forces Benešová to divide the category of necessity into strong inevitability (*nutnost*) and weaker desirability (*záhodnost*). It is Benešová’s categorization that is used in this thesis since it corresponds to the categorisation into inescapable and escapable necessity used in descriptions of necessity in English. Since the set of modal specifiers is rather extensive and varied the conception of modality is often narrowed to central modal verbs and it is where the discussion of necessity for the purpose of this paper starts.

The strong necessity –inevitability (N I) is expressed by *MUSET* and *BÝT NUCEN*, and the weaker necessity – desirability (N II) by *MÍT*.

Benešová (1971: 129-133) then further classifies the modal meanings based on the criteria of *původce modality* (the source of modality). She distinguishes three options what concerns the initiator of modality: objective circumstances, the source of modality corresponds to the source of action, and the source of modality does not correspond to the

²³ Transl.: while the meaning of possibility and intention cannot be exactly placed on the axis of modal types as far as the modal urgency is concerned, the meaning of necessity can be clear-cut and can express a strict limit.

source of action. As a result she arrives at three interpretations (*debitiv 1, debitiv 2, debitiv 3*) for inevitability (N 1) and three interpretations (*hortative 1, hortative 2, hortative 3*) for desirability (N 2)

Apart from modal verbs, a means predominantly used to express necessity is the imperative which is restricted to cases where the source of modality is the speaker. Similarly to what has been described for English Czech also uses adjectives, adverbs and potentially nouns with modal meanings mainly in predicates with a copula verb. Another means which can be used with the interpretation of necessity is the infinitive. According to J. Petr “Infinitiv dovoluje vyjadřovat (bez explicitní přítomnosti modálních sloves a dalších modálních výrazů) i modalitu nutnostní ... *Když uklízet, tak uklízet dobře*²⁴ (Petr 1986: 152). Formally necessity can be also expressed by the verb *be* + infinitive. What concerns its function Petr (1987: 291) comments on it in the following way: “Výraz v dativní pozici má dvojí funkci: specifikuje zároveň nositele modální dispozice i konatele děje: *Matce bylo pečovati o pět dětí*”²⁵.

Other constructions with the verb *be* can also express necessity, e. g. *být* + participle or *být* + adjective. Examples of these structures can be found in J. Petr (1987, 293 – 296): *být někomu uloženo, stanoveno, být povinen, být žádoucí, záhodné*

The discussion of expressing necessity in Czech concerned only deontic necessity. This distinction and division corresponds to the previously discussed treatment in the grammar books studied, where either epistemic necessity is not dealt with at all, or, if it is included, then on a different place in the book than under deontic necessity. For a basic delimitation of the means used to express epistemic necessity in Czech inspiration can be found in Petr (1987: 362). In this grammar book epistemic modality is seen as a “connected scale” ranging from “full certainty” to “a low degree of conviction”. Since full certainty is usually not explicitly marked the category which should be of interest to us is category “B – a high degree of conviction”. According to Petr (1987: 364) concrete expression used to express this modality are: “a) postojové predikátory *jsem přesvědčen, nepochybuji, věřím, jsem si jist, je jisté, je zřejmé, sázím se, dám za to krk, nic bych za to nedal* ... b) modální částice

²⁴ Transl.: The infinitive allows you to express (without the explicit presence of modal verbs and other modal expressions) also obligation ... [If to tidy up, then to tidy up well].

²⁵ Transl.: The expression in the dative position has a double function: it specifies the bearer of the modal disposition and the agent at the same time [To the mother it was to take care of five children].

*nesporně, rozhodně, zaručeně, bezpochyby, určitě, jistě, zřejmě, podle mne ...c) modálním slovesem muset; d) výpovědními formami typu Že se Petr urazil! aj.*²⁶

3.4 The relation between necessity and possibility

According to Petr (1987: 287), “v modální kategorii N se vyjadřuje nepřipustnost řešení alternativního, tj. vylučuje se možnost dělat opak toho, cose ve větě říká; tím se zároveň implikuje nezbytnost daného řešení jako jediného. Modální kategorie M naopak alternativní řešení připouští: je to informace o tom, že konatel má (měl) možnost volby mrzi realizací a nerealizací nějaké činnosti.”²⁷ Modality of necessity and possibility are, therefore, in close reciprocal, complementary relation. The negation of possibility means impossibility of choice and the necessity of just one concrete solution. The negation of necessity states that the choice of one concrete solution is not inevitable and therefore allows for other alternative solutions, in other words it implies the possibility of choice from more alternative solutions. This complementary semantic relation between possibility and necessity enables two ways to express these modal categories and is mainly used in negative sentences. Necessity not to act can be, therefore, expressed by the use of modal specifier of necessity + negated predication or by negated modal specifier of possibility + positive predication. Petr (1987: 289) comments on the distribution of the two alternative ways as follows: “čeština vyjadřuje dané významy raději a častěji konstrukcemi s negovanými Mod, kdežto v konstrukcích s kladným Mod a negovaným infinitivem se modální sloveso pocítuje spíše jako indikátor různého stupně subjektivního přesvědčení mlivčího o platnosti (pravdivosti) obsahu výpovědi, tedy jako indikátor jistotní modality.

²⁶ Transl.: a) attitude predicators ..., b) modal particles ..., c) modal verb *must*, d) utterance forms of the type, etc.

²⁷ Transl.: the modal category of necessity expresses unacceptability of an alternative solution, it means the possibility of doing the opposite of what is said in the sentence; thus, at the same time, the necessity of the given solution as the only solution is implied. Modal category of possibility, on the other hand, allows an alternative solution: it is information about the fact that the agent has (had) the possibility of choice between realization and non-realization of an action.

²⁸ Benešová (1971: 115) calls attention to the fact that “výskyt negovaného infinitivu je velmi nepatrný a je omezen na jisté hraněné případy.”²⁹

3.5 The grammar of necessity in Czech

3.5.1 Negation

According to traditional Czech grammar, the negation of a modal specifier is understood as the denial of the particular disposition. This applies to all Czech modals, which means that in Czech in contrast to English, a situation does not occur where different modal specifiers have different basic scope of negation³⁰. Either the modality (e.g. CAN, SHOULD), or the action expressed by the lexical verb (e.g. MUST) is denied. So in Czech *NEMUSET* what is negated is the necessity part and thus the verb says that doing something is not the only solution and in fact expresses possibility. But since, as suggested above, there are always two alternative expressions for one modal interpretation (one positive and one negative) the negative alternative to express inevitability in Czech is *NEMOCI and NESMĚT*. In case of *NESMĚT* “bývá často presupponováno, že modální dispozice je důsledkem „zákazu“, tj že pro konatele byla někým suspendována možnost alternativního jednání“(Petr 1987: 290)³¹.

²⁸ Transl.: “Czech expresses the given meaning preferably and more frequently by constructions with negated modal specifier, whereas in constructions with positive modal specifier and negated infinitive the modal verb is rather to be perceived as the indicator of a different degree of subjective conviction of the speaker about the validity (plausibility) of the content of the proposition, thus as an indicator of epistemic modality.”

²⁹ Transl.: the occurrence of the negated infinitive is very rare and its use is restricted to certain special cases.

³⁰ By *basic scope of negation* I mean the most likely interpretation, because in Czech, due to the nature of negation both the scopes mentioned are possible: *nemohl to dělat X mohl to nedělat*. In English the same is also possible in certain cases, but can be expressed only by means of stress *he could not [do it] X he could [not do] it* Quirk (1985: 797,798) speak about so called “predication negation which occurs in the context of denials and permission. In predication negation, a modal auxiliary is used with a different scope of negation than is normal for that auxiliary, with a specific emphatic pause before *not*”. Moreover, the different scope of negation for the same modal sometimes serves as a distinguisher of deontic and epistemic modality in English: *students may not [cheat] (nesmějí podvádět) X students may [not cheat] (možná nepodvádějí)*.

³¹ Transl: what is often presupposed is that the modal disposition is the result of a ban, it means that had the possibility of alternative action suspended

3.5.2 Interrogation and time reference

These grammar points are not discussed here since they do not significantly influence the interpretation of the meaning of the modal expressions in Czech. They will be dealt with in the empirical part on the basis of the comparison with the situation in English where such a discussion is considered relevant.

4 BASIC DIFFERENCES BETWEEN MODAL SYSTEMS IN ENGLISH AND CZECH

The structure of the modal system (or at least the system of modal verbs) is more complex in English than in Czech. The distinction of modal verbs from other verbs is sharper and involves more grammatical differences. All criteria described for determination of modal verbs in Czech apply also to English, but there are additional criteria in English. Modal verb have these features in common:

- They form questions and negatives in a different way than full verbs (since they are auxiliary verbs. This criterion applies to auxiliary verbs in general)
- When a verb phrase containing a modal verb is negated either the modality or an event can be negated.
- One form of a modal verb can express both past reference and conditionality.
- They are followed by the bare infinitive while the majority of other verbs take the full infinitive.
- They have “an abnormal time reference” (Quirk 1985: 137).
- The grammar that a particular modal verb abides by can differ depending on the kind of modality a modal verb expresses in a particular situation.

Apart from the greater formal distinction of English modal verbs in comparison with Czech modal verbs, other areas of differences are assumed. Poldauf summarizes this issue: “In English, modality is more frequently expressed by the verb, in the verbal nucleus, while in Czech particles (=adverbs) are used more often (Poldauf in Hladký 1983: 87).

4.1 Differences in expressing necessity in English and in Czech

As the main aim of this thesis is to compare the ways in which necessity is expressed in English and Czech, it is necessary to try to prepare a set of theoretical assumptions about where the potential differences are and what their sources might be, in order to be able to approach the excerpts from fiction efficiently.

4.1.1 Deontic necessity

Inescapable Necessity

According to Benešová's model, there are two modal verbs in Czech which express deontic inescapable necessity – *muset* and *být nucen*. In English there are also two main modal expressions which are predominantly connected with expressing the modality mentioned. These are the modal verb *must* and the semi-modal *have to*. Nevertheless, the closest English counterpart of Czech *být nucen* is probably the English *be forced to* or *be obliged to*. Another and probably more common approach works with only one modal verb in Czech expressing inescapable necessity: *muset* in comparison with two in English: *must* and *have to*. According to L. Dušková (1994: 198) “pro vyjadřování nutnosti má angličtina proti jednomu českému slovesu slovesa dvě”.³² It is therefore clear that there is no simple one to one correlation between modal expressions referring to inescapable necessity in English and Czech. Furthermore, when translating, especially from Czech to English one has to consider carefully what translation to use to accurately express what is required and yet sound natural at the same time. This thesis, in particular its practical part, attempts to contribute to making this choice easier by clearly delimiting possible meanings and interpretations of individual modal expressions. The basic criterion which determines what modal expression to use is in Czech linguistics thoroughly described and already mentioned “původce modality”³³ (Benešová 1971: 129 – 133). As far as is known, English linguistics does not work with such a term, nevertheless the basic distinction in use between *must* and *have to* is usually explained on the same basis. G. Leech (2004: 83) comments on the difference in the following way “*Must* is generally subjective, in that it refers to what the *speaker* thinks it important or essential to do. *Have to*, on the other hand, is more ‘objective’, i.e. the obligation or compulsion tends to come from a source outside

³²Transl.: English has two verbs as opposed to one verb in Czech for expressing inescapable necessity

the speaker". R. Quirk's (1985: 226) explanation is similar: "Where *must* implies 'self-obligation', *have (got) to* implies 'obligation by external forces'". The source of modality, often put in relation with the source of action, is definitely used as one of the clear criteria in the classification and comparison of translations. From this point of view, however, modal verbs used to express inescapable necessity in Czech cannot be distinguished. As the table presented in Benešová (1971: 130) shows, there are two modal verbs used to express inescapable necessity. Both can be used either in cases where the source of modality is identical with the source of action, or in the situation where the sources mentioned are different. Moreover, in Czech there are no further restrictions (except for those connected with the status of modal verbs in general) on the use of *muset* and *být nucen*. In English the situation is more complicated. *Must* is rare in questions, it cannot be used in a future or past tense form and it takes internal negation, while *have to* like the Czech *muset* take external negation, which means that what is negated is modality.

Escapable Necessity

For this type of necessity, English and Czech are said to have one main modal expression each – the modal verbs *should* and *mít* respectively. Czech *mít* similarly as was the case with inescapable modality is not burdened with any further restrictions on its use except for those generally valid for all Czech modal verbs. English *should* represents a different case. The form of the word *should* suggests that this is the past form of *shall*. Studies of the historical development of the English language have shown that it is in fact the case. Nowadays, however, it is not (on its own) used with past reference and apart from other functions it is mainly used to convey the conditional. *Should* can only be used with past reference when followed by the perfect infinitive.

The above, then, is a summary of the main facts which can be found in any literature dealing with necessity in English and Czech. Since, however, grammar books normally deal either only with Czech or with English, such a theoretical comparison is crucial as a starting point for the empirical analysis of the excerpts. Little study has so far been carried out into comparing the roles of *have to* and *mít* in expressing necessity. Below is a summary of my research into this area.

³³ Transl.: source of modality

Have to and mít when used to express necessity

In both English and Czech, *have to* and *mít* respectively are predominantly used to express possession. In this interpretation they can be considered mutual translations of each other. *Have to* is often treated separately as a fixed expression used to express inescapable necessity. What concerns escapable necessity, when it is studied from the viewpoint of a relation between English and Czech, a link (mutual relation of translation) is often suggested between *měl by a should*. This direct link between *měl by* (which represents all persons and numbers of **mít** in the conditional) and *should* can prevent learners of English from seeing that *měl by* belongs into the paradigm of *mít*. The similarity between the way in which English and Czech both use a verb predominantly used to express possession to refer to necessity may not be so obvious at first sight. There are, however, differences in the way each verb is used in this function:

- Dušková (1972: 54) describes the following formal differences: “In Czech, mít does not acquire the meaning of musit when followed by an infinitive, cf. má bratra, má přijít zítra. The use with an infinitive, though also modal, falls in with the sollen type of modality, which English expresses by a variety of means (shall, should, ought to, be + infinitive)”.
- While *have to* expresses inescapable necessity, *mít* seems less strong. They are, however, almost synonymous in expressing objective modality. This means the speaker is not the source of modality and that the obligation comes from outside. The question is whether in certain cases *mít* is not a more suitable translation of *have to* than *muset*, which is usually presented as the first, and often the only, choice.
- *have* can also be used in special cases followed by object and bare infinitive to express necessity whose source is a subject of a sentence. In the *Oxford Advanced Learner's Dictionary* (1989) it is defined as follows “causing of allowing something to happen, order or arrange (that sb does sth)”. It is close to Czech *být nucen* with an explicitly stated source of modality: *I had him promise to come back – Přiměl jsem ho (byl mnou přinucen) aby slíbil, že se vrátí*. A similar expression used to exist in Czech which can still be used in formal context. The main difference is that whereas in English *have* with this interpretation is followed by bare

infinitive in Czech *mít* is followed by a noun or a pronoun + subordinate clause.

4.1.2 Epistemic necessity

While what concerns deontic necessity, although the semantic field is fragmented differently in English and in Czech, the means used and their modal structures are basically the same, the situation for epistemic should be different. L. Dušková (1994: 185, 186) in her *Mluvnice současné angličtiny na pozadí češtiny*, which by its nature, as is clear from its title, applies a comparative approach to the languages concerned, states that “Sémantický systém anglických modálních sloves se od českého značně liší, zejména pokud jde o vyjadřování modalit jistotní kde pozorujeme rozdíly v modální výstavbě věty. Modální slovesa jako prostředek vyjadřování jistotní modalit jsou v angličtině častější než v češtině (často odpovídají českým modálním adverbiím nebo částicím) a nadto v této funkci disponují zvláštními prostředky odkazování na minulost, které v češtině nemají strukturní obdobu”.³⁴

Petr (1987: 355 – 367) arrives at a different conclusion about the ways in which is epistemic modality expressed in Czech. He orders the means used to express epistemic necessity in the following way: Jádrem jistotně modalitních predikátů jsou tzv. verba putandi. Relativně úplný soubor nejužívanějších postojových predikátů představují tyto výrazy: *jsem přesvědčen, m věřím, jsem si jist, je nesporné, je jisté, není pochyb, je mi jasné, je zřejmé, mám za to, předpokládám, je pravděpodobné, mám dojem, soudím, myslím, počítám, tuším, hádám, připadá mi, zdá se mi, je možné, popochybuji, je vyloučeno*. Jedním z typických prostředků vyjadřování různých hodnot JMP jsou modální částice. Relativně úplný repertoár modálních částic představují v dnešní češtině tyto výrazy: *nesporně, rozhodně, bezpochyby, určitě, jistě, nepochybně, zajisté, dozajista, zjevně, zřejmě, nejspíš, pravděpodobně, asi patrně, snad, třeba, možná, stěží, sotva*. Některé

³⁴ Transl.: The semantic system of the English modal verbs differs from the Czech one to a large extent mainly in expressing epistemic modality.... where it is possible to see differences in the modal construction of a sentence. Modal verbs as a means of expressing epistemic modality are far more frequent in English than in Czech (this often corresponds to modal particles and adverbs) and moreover, in this function, they have, at their disposal, special means of referring to the past, which do not have their structural counterparts in Czech.

hodnoty (predikáty) JM se vyjadřují modálními slovesy. V češtině k tomu slouží zejména slovesa *mušet a moci*".³⁵

The differences described above suggest that epistemic modality represents an area where the range of excerpted translations will be wide, and also an area where the influence of the original on its translation can play its role.

So even Petr makes a sharp distinction between modal verbs used to express epistemic necessity, and means other than modal verbs. From the way in which he orders the means in the book and his comments he, too, considers modal verbs less frequent. Unlike Dušková he introduces a set of other means – namely verbs or more complex verb phrases which he considers core means in expressing epistemic modality. He does not single out means used to express epistemic necessity, therefore, means to express epistemic modality in general were listed here whether sentence containing one of the mentioned means will be excerpted for the analysis in the empirical part or not will depend on the context.

³⁵ Transl.: The core of the modal epistemic predicates are so called *verba putandi*. A relatively complete set of the epistemic predicates used is represented by the following expressions: *jsem přesvědčen, m věřím, jsem si jist, je nesporné, je jisté, není pochyb, je mi jasné, je zřejmé, mám za to, předpokládám, je pravděpodobné, mám dojem, soudím, myslím, počítám, tuším, hádám, připadá mi, zdá se mi, je možné, popchybuji, je vyloučeno*. One of the typical means of expressing various degrees of epistemic modality is modal particles. Relatively complete set of the used epistemic predicates is represented by the following expressions: *nesporně, rozhodně, bezpochyby, určitě, jistě, nepochybně, zajisté, dozajista, zjevně, zřejmě, nejspíš, pravděpodobně, asi patrně, snad, třeba, možná, stěží, sotva*. Some values of epistemic modality are expressed by means of modal verbs. In Czech for this purpose mainly *mušet* and *moci* are used.

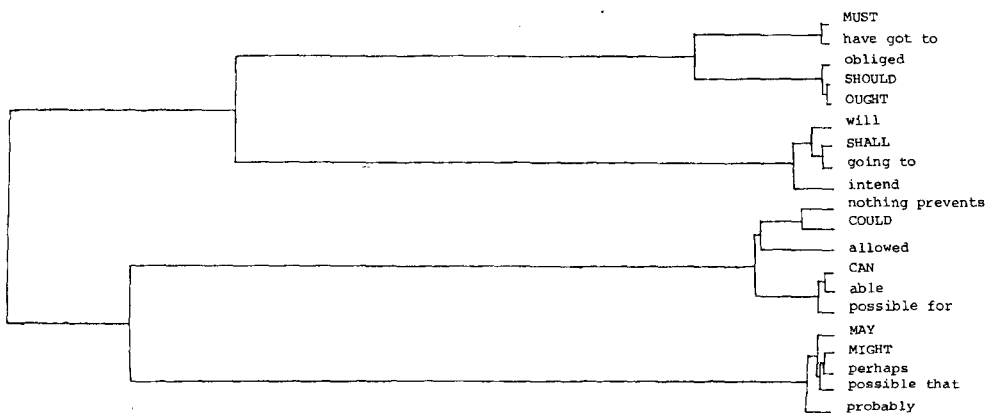
EMPIRICAL PART

The empirical part aims to investigate, describe and analyse the semantic field of necessity in English and Czech. Its data is drawn from contemporary British fiction and its published translations into Czech and in contemporary Czech fiction and its published translations into English.

5 BASIC FRAMEWORK

5.1 Aims and objectives

Although modality has been studied thoroughly, the approach to this topic is usually restricted or limited in some way. This is understandable when considering the already discussed complexity of this theme. This thesis is not, in this respect, an exception. What is, however, different from the common approach to the description of modality, is the point of view. While the usual restriction on description regards the structure of modal expressions included in the way that the description itself is usually confined to the discussion of modal (semi-modal, quasi modal) verbs mentioning other ways of expressing modality only marginally, this thesis is delimited in terms of meaning. It attempts to describe how necessity is expressed on the level of lexis (the level of the sentence form as such is, with the exception of the imperative, not dealt with) in English and Czech in the broad conception. Therefore the choice of the means has not been decided in advance, it has just been delimited in general features based on the theoretical findings, but the last decision about what means should be excerpted, has been left to the author and her judgment whether the means is still within the scope of this paper. Although being to some extent subjective it should help to provide a more complete picture of the issue than the studies commonly available. Basically the area of this study is delimited by Coates's (1983) dendogram showing modal clusters where it represents the *Obligation/Necessity* cluster.



(Coates 1983: 28)

There are three reasons for approaching the theme contrastively. The results show: firstly, to what extent expression of necessity is a universal feature; secondly, to what extent it is bound to the structure of, on the one hand, a predominantly analytical language and a predominantly synthetic one on the other hand. Thirdly, since studies of grammar should have some practical output often serving learners of foreign languages or translators, this thesis will be of use to those who need to translate expressions of necessity between the two languages. This thesis aims to map lexical expressions available to express necessity in the two languages concerned, determine differences in the use and meaning between the individual means, and thus present in what way the semantic field of necessity is structured and how much the structure is language dependent. These findings reveal the common roots of these differences, possibly originating from the basic structural difference. Understanding the differences in the division of the semantic field of necessity between individual lexical means will help non-native speakers of the languages to express themselves or translate ideas from their native language aptly.

The outputs of the study are as follows:

- 1) **lists of the means used to express necessity** in English and in Czech, including the number of times they occur in the material
- 2) **an overview of used translations** for each individual means (or a group of similar means) for each language separately (or for the direction from Czech to English originals which corresponded to the studied means)

- 3) **the determination and description of the difference in the meaning or the scope of the means** sometimes interchangeable or close in meaning within the framework of each language
- 4) **the determination of the difference in expressing different semantic values within the semantic field of necessity** and of the potential causes of these differences based on the comparison of the two languages
- 5) a **summary of the most prominent difference which may cause problems** for Czech users of English or while translating from one language to the other

5.2 The Material

The excerpts from which the lexical means of expressing necessity are studied are taken from contemporary British fiction and their corresponding published translations into Czech, and from contemporary Czech fiction and their published counterparts in English. Although an attempt is made to choose recent pieces of fiction, the choice is to a large extent dependent on the availability of the books. Therefore the term 'contemporary' is, for our purpose, synonymous with 'post-war'. The Material, as the set of excerpts will hereafter be referred to, contains two thousand and one hundred excerpts. From each piece of fiction all unquestionable (defined and listed in the theoretical part) examples of necessity expressed on the level of lexis and those expressed by means of the imperative are excerpted. An attempt is made to excerpt all included lexical "necessity" means. This is done realising the fact that in some cases the choice is inevitably subjective. The complete exclusion of these cases from the Material, however, would distort the picture of the studied matter and some interesting findings which can be seen only in this kind of research could be just missed. In addition, even in the case of central modal verbs, whose modal base cannot be questioned, the decision whether to include them in a particular case may not always be easy. Since, as it has already been discussed in the theoretical part, modal verbs generally have more than one meaning or interpretation which can often be seen as expressing different degrees of one general concept, it is often difficult to clearly determine their meaning in a particular clause or sentence. The negative form of CAN is one example. In the sentence *I can't climb trees* can express either obligation not to, or inability to. Although the two interpretations will usually be distinguished by the context, sometimes the context might allow both interpretations.

The final number of extracts from each book is determined by the actual number of means expressing necessity found in a particular book. The only exceptions are Rowling's and Kundera's books, which are not all used, but only such a number of excerpts to complete the pre-set number of examples which is 600 excerpts from English fiction and 500 excerpts from. Since the whole study is mainly qualitative and the final results are processed in the form of proportional parts in percents, the numerical disproportion does not have any distorting effects on the final conclusions. The same number of books is used for both directions of study. The following pieces of fiction are used:

English fiction

Amis, M. (1997) *Other People: Mysterious Story*, London: Vingeage.

Amis, M. (1996) *Jiní lidé: Tajemný příběh*, Plzeň: Mustang. Translated by Jana and Andrew Tolletovi.

Dahl, R. (1984) *The Best of Roald Dahl*, Penguin Books.

Dahl, R. (1992) *Devětadvacet políbení*, Praha: Melantrich. Translated by Jaroslav Kořán.

Ishiguro, K. (1989) *The Remains of the Day*, Faber and Faber.

Ishiguro, K. (1997) *Soumrak dne*, Volvox Globator. Translated by Zdena Pošvicová.

Rowling, J. (2007) *Harry Potter and the Deathly Hollows*, Bloomsbury Publishing Plc.

Rowling, J. (2008) *Harry Potter a relikvie smrti*, Praha: Albatros. Translated by Pavel Medek.

Czech fiction

Hrabal, B. (1989) *Tři novely – Obsluhoval jsem anglického krále*, Praha: Československý spisovatel.

Hrabal, B. (1990) *I Served The King of England*, Picador. Translated by Paul Wilson.

Klíma I. (1990) *Má veselá jitra*. Praha: Rozmluvy.

Klíma, I. (1993) *My Merry Mornings*, Readers International. Translated by George Theiner.

Kundera M. (2006) *Nesnesitelná lehkost bytí*, Brno: Atlantis.

Kundera M. (1984) *The Unbearable Lightness of Being*, Harper and Row. Translated by Michael Henry Heim.

Viewegh, M. (1997) *Výchova dívek v Čechách*, Brno: Petrov.

Viewegh, M. (1997) *Bringing up Girls in Bohemia*, Readers International. Translated by A. G. Brian.

5.3 Data processing

Once the desired number of items were excerpted, the Material was divided into smaller chunks in order to make it possible and manageable to be analysed. Although the whole viewpoint of the dissertation and the delimitation of its topic is semantic, the first division of the Material, at least what concerns densely represented means, was done on the formal basis, each lexical means representing one group. It is an approach often found in grammar books. Since studying the various means used in the two languages, determining their functions and then comparing their scopes of meaning represent some of the aims of this thesis, starting with the form seems logical. Less densely represented means were grouped together according to their common most frequent interpretation. Each modal means (or a group of means) is discussed for deontic modality first and then its role in expressing epistemic modality will be dealt with. For each delimited form its basic interpretations (meanings) are introduced on the basis of the theory. One approach or a fusion of approaches is chosen from the classifications found in grammar books on the basis of which the excerpts are assorted. Although the study of the various interpretations of individual means of expression is not the main focus of the research, since the main aim of the dissertation is to compare the structures of this semantic field in English and Czech and the distribution of the means used within them, the individual meanings of the means are important for the better understanding of the inner structure of the semantic field studied. The discussion of each modal means (group of modal means) starts with a theoretical delimitation of its supposed potential meanings. Although this theoretical introduction by its nature rather belongs to the theoretical part, for the purpose of lucidity and better orientation, the theoretical findings connected with the meanings of individual studied means are presented in this part so that they can then easily be discussed together and compared with the extracts from the Material. For each, on the basis of the theory determined, distinctive meaning of a particular means the number of the cases found in the Material is presented, including a number of examples proportional to the number of all the cases found. The discussion of each semantic value is always supported by a number of concrete sentences from the Material. The common ratio will be three examples (if possible from different sources) per ten excerpts. If there are more than ten excerpts for a semantic value, for every further ten excerpts one additional example is added. If a particular means with a particular meaning or translation appears in the Material only once then it is always provided.

Once the basic meanings and their translations for each means have been discussed and listed, the closely related means (first within one language) are compared and commented on. Then the broader comparison in the area of inescapable necessity, escapable necessity and logical necessity is performed, followed by the comparison within the same areas, but this time between the two languages. All findings, results and partial conclusions are then summarised, systematized and generalized in the conclusion part of this paper.

Although the whole issue is studied from the perspective of both languages (English originals – Czech translations and vice versa), the whole Material is processed from the “English side”. In order to set clear semantic categories which can then be easily compared, the semantic delimitation is always done from the viewpoint of English, based on theoretical studies of English. Nevertheless, since for each English sentence its Czech counterpart is discussed, English and Czech originals are discussed separately, and the semantic scope of each means carefully studied, the overall picture should be undistorted and complete.

5.4 Grammar

Each modal means is first studied from the viewpoint of its use in an affirmative sentence. Although in fiction all types of sentences can be expected to be met, affirmative sentences are supposed to be by far the most numerous. Then depending on the number of excerpts found for a particular means in other sentence types and with regard to the potential differences from its use in an affirmative structure, the different structures are either discussed separately, or just listed separately (if they are not numerous enough to base any conclusions on them), or included in the affirmative group (if no potential difference is expected).

As far as time reference is concerned, if a special form of a modal means is used to refer to the past or future, it will be dealt with separately from the ‘basic’ form, e.g. forms as *had to*, *will have to*, *would have to*, *must* + perfect infinitive are dealt with separately.

5.5 Notation

When providing examples of language means so far, italics have always been used. The main reason was, that since what preceded was the theoretical section containing numerous

citations in the majority of which this way of notation is used, it was also followed in the original authorial parts. In the empirical part, however, a distinction is made between lexemes and individual forms. Lexemes are referred to by means of a lemma written in capital letters, e.g. when discussing basic interpretations of HAVE TO – it includes all its possible forms such as *had to*, *had had to*, *would have to*, etc. Italics are used when referring to one particular form, e.g. *certainly*, *bezpochyby*, etc.

Excerpts in the Material are always presented in the following way:

*If you don't feel a little mad sometimes, then I think you **must** be out of your mind. - Jestli sami někdy nemáte pocit, že jste se zbláznili, pak si myslím že to **skutečně** nemáte v hlavě v pořádku. (AM: 173, 171 - 177).*

First, the sentence from the original text is provided separated by a hyphen from its translation. After the two sentences, in brackets, the abbreviation of the source including the numbers of the pages (first the number of the page in the original and then the number of the page in the translation), and after the hyphen the number under which the example has been excerpted in the Material is provided.

The abbreviations of the sources used are as follows:

Amis:	AM	Hrabal:	HR
Dahl:	DA	Klíma:	KL
Ishiguro:	IS	Kundera:	KU
Rowling:	RO	Viewegh:	VI

6 MUST (EN – CZ)

MUST as most other *central modal verbs* (Quirk 1985) can be used for expressing both kinds of modality: epistemic, deontic. Leech divides interpretations of MUST into three main groups: "*Obligation* (speaker's authority), *Requirement* and *Logical necessity* (Leech 2004: 78, 79), Chalker divides them into two groups: "*Necessity to Act* which further includes *opinion*, *complaint*, *advice*, and *invitation* and *deduction*" (Chalker: 1990 - 181), and Palmer lists several meanings he found in the Survey of English Usage located in the Department of English at University College of London without attempting to classify

them in a system: “epistemic, counterpart of permission, the necessity of an event, external necessity, what the speaker feels is the most rational course of action, the meaning of inevitably” (Palmer 1974: 22, 23). In general, however, Palmer (1974: 93) draws a distinction between three kinds of necessity: “deontic (subject oriented), neutral and external” and Dušková (1994: 193, 194) similarly draws a distinction between “nutnost vyplývající z přirozeného stavu věcí či přesvědčení mluvčího a nutnost vyplývající z vnějších okolností”³⁶. These distinctions are also referred to when determining individual interpretations of both MUST and HAVE TO.

Based on the above mentioned works the following categories are used to classify interpretations of MUST:

- A. Necessity to Act - speaker's authority
+ opinion
- B. Requirement- natural, impersonal
- C. Logical Necessity

The basic distinction between A and B is the role of the speaker. In interpretation A the source of modality and source of activity is the same while in B it is not.

Negation

In the form MUST NOT it is the proposition which is negated not the modality. It, therefore, belongs in the semantic field which is of interest to us. It expresses **necessity not to act**. In other words it can be used only for necessity in deontic sense. For **logical necessity that something is not true** other lexical means are usually used. Apart from an adverb, adjective or noun expressing high probability or certainty + a main verb in negative, another common means is the modal verb CANNOT, which will be discussed later in the paper. MUST with the interpretation of *logical necessity*, however, "occasionally does occur with negations" (Quirk 1985: 225). Unfortunately, no example of this use was found in the Material.

³⁶ Transl: the necessity resulting from the natural state of matters or from the inner state or conviction and the

Time reference

MUST can be used with both present and future reference. According to Chalker (1190: 129) "the basic meaning of *must* is necessity now or in the future". Palmer (1979: 44), however, notes that MUST expressing epistemic modality "seldom occurs with future time reference, because it would usually be open to dynamic interpretation and thus might be misunderstood as in: *He must come tomorrow*, which would almost certainly be interpreted in terms of obligation. An epistemic sense is possible where the context makes it likely."

MUST does not have a past tense counterpart. In constructions where the sequence of tenses is required it can be used with past reference in itself. Otherwise, for **necessity to act** the form *had to* needs to be used. For **logical necessity** MUST + the perfect infinitive is used, because as Leech (2004: 99) has it: "the Perfect Infinitive following a modal auxiliary assigns past time to the meaning of the main verb and what follows it (the included main verb statement), as distinct from the meaning of the auxiliary itself (the modal statement)" and in the case of logical necessity it is only the proposition which can be in the past not the modality. A confident assumption can refer only to the present or the future, not to the past. But in the present a past event can be evaluated.

6.1 Form MUST

6.1.1 Interpretation A: Necessity to act - speaker's authority

Forty-three examples of MUST (AM: 3 – 110, 119, 149; IS: 8 – 29, 46, 55, 58, 66, 67, 84, 137; DA: 8, 9, 10, 13, 15, 18, 24, 26, 38, 47, 61, 65, 98, 99, 119, 125, 132, 139, 152, 153, 160, 162, 169; RO: 9 – 3, 4, 6, 8, 22, 60, 81, 146, 222) in the affirmative belonging to this group were translated into Czech as MUSET. Some of the typical examples are:

*Now I **must** return to my work and leave you to your wanderings. - Já teď **musím** jít něco dělat a vy se klidně procházejte dál. (IS: 84, 63- 46)*

*These errors may be trivial in themselves, but you **must** yourself realize their larger significance. - Ten omyl možná nepodstatný je, ale **musíte** si uvědomit, jaký může mít dopad. (IS: 62, 47- 29)*

*You **must** go home. Be a good cat and go on home. - **Musíš** jít domů. Ukaž, že jsi hodná kočka a běž domů. (DA: 88, 340 -47)*

necessity resulting from external circumstances

*I really **must** try to make him change the way he dresses. - Opravdu ho **musím** přimět, aby se oblékal jinak. (DA: 190, 284 - 119)*

*You say you want a job. First you **must** do all this. - Ty tady tvrdíš, že sháníš práci. Nejprve **musíš** všechno tohle vyplnit. (AM: 74, 74 - 110)*

*I'm afraid, there's one more thing you **must** see tonight. - **Musíš** bohužel vidět ještě něco dneska večer. (AM: 114, 113 - 149)*

*We **must decide** how you will be disguised... - **Musíme rozhodnout** za co se přestrojíš ... (RO: 80, 82 -60)*

*...but you **must tell** it clearly what you want. - ...**musíš** jí ale přesně říct, co od ní chceš. (RO: 98, 110 - 81)*

In five cases the Czech translation appeared with the opposite polarity (IS: 2 - 107, 7; DA: 106; RO: 2 - 106, 229)

*A pity, but we **must let** the gentleman **go** to bed. - Škoda, ale **nemůžem** hosta **zdržovat**. (IS: 202, 145 - 107)*

*Furthermore it **must be remembered** that my father was a butler of an earlier generation. - **Nelze ovšem opomenout**, že otec byl majordomem předchozí generace. (IS: 35, 30 - 7)*

*This, she kept telling herself, was the one plane she **must not miss**. - **Musím** to letadlo **stihnout**, opakovala si neustále. (DA: 124, 247 - 79)*

*I **must remember** to set an order at Flourish... - **Nesmím** si ho **zapomenout** v Krucánkách objednat ... (RO: 128, 133 - 106)*

The difference in polarity between English originals and their Czech translations is probably caused by the suitability of the choice of the main verbs. Since the same idea can often be expressed by the use of a different verb with the opposite polarity, each language tends to use the more common or suitable option from the two. It sounds more natural to say *nemůžem hosta zdržovat* than *musíme hosta nechat jít spát/ jít do postele/ pustit spát ...*, or *musím to letadlo stihnout* than *letadlo mi nesmí uletět, nesmím letadlo nestihnout/ minout ...*. In the third case the used translation is more exact, although translation with the same polarity in this case would also be possible: *je nutné si zapamatovat, připomenout, uvědomit ...*

Five times MUST was translated by an imperative construction (DA: 2 – 151, 159; IS: 2 – 136, 139; AM: 1 – 181)

*You **must stop** thinking like that. - **Přestaňte** myslet na takové věci. (DA: 241, 335-151)*

*Now, you **must take good care** of yourself - A teď, **buďte** na sebe opatrná. (IS: 252, 179-139)*

This would need to be studied on a more representative sample of language but the examples from the Material suggest that the imperative in English has (what concerns the time of the action required by it) more immediate function than in Czech. All the examples concerned referred to actions which were supposed to be in progress for a certain longer period of time. *You must stop thinking like that* = from now on you must think differently; it refers to thinking in general and it includes a long period of time. An utterance *Stop thinking like that*, on the other hand, more likely refers to the thinking of a particular matter and the time reference is much more immediate, probably including the following half an hour or so. In Czech, the translation with MUSET would be acceptable too, and therefore it seems that the difference between the interpretations of MUSET and the imperative mood is less sharp in Czech than in English.

The last group of five translations is a mixture of various means.

*I **must go** and fetch a claret, if you will excuse me. - Omluvte mne, prosím, **dojdu** pro klaret. (DA: 54, 6 - 20)*

*I am sorry, but I **must go on**. - Nežlobte se, ale **budu** ještě **pokračovat**. (IS: 62, 47 - 30)*

*Thought we **must be careful** not to attempt to deny responsibility ... - **Je sice třeba dát pozor**, aby se člověk nepokoušel vyhnout zodpovědnosti ... (IS: 35, 30 - 8)*

*No, no, he said. I **mustn't** get your hopes up. - Ne, ne, vykřikl. Jenom žádný falešný naděje. (AM: 80, 80 - 116)*

*...he was nothing, nothing but pain and terror and **he must get** away ... - Nezbylo z něj nic než bolest a děs a **potřeboval** se někde **ukrýt** ... (RO: 282, 295 – 197)*

+ opinion

MUST is often used with verbs of reporting such as *say*, *admit*, *understand*, etc. to express personal opinion. It is mainly used with subjects in the first person or less frequently in the second person. If the subject is in the second person, then it describes necessity for the hearer, as it is common to all meanings of MUST in this group. It is again used in the cases where the speaker has the actual power to impose the obligation. MUST in this interpretation can, however, be considered to represent a gradient between deontic and epistemic modality (meaning A and C). In these cases MUST does not modify just the verb in the sense of saying what the speaker/hearer is obliged to do, but it rather comments on the content of the proposition from the viewpoint of its truthfulness. Its illocutionary force does not aim at the change of behaviour, or at any physical reaction, but it rather aims at the change in the way in which the content of the proposition is perceived. Modality expressed by MUST in these cases is, therefore, more epistemic than deontic. MUST with this meaning appeared in the Material twenty-seven times. In the majority of twenty-five cases (RO: 2 – 78, 102; DA: 6 - 2, 23, 58, 96, 102, 136; IS: 19, 134 + between these two there appeared further 15 cases of *must say* or *must admit* in IS with this interpretation) it was translated into Czech by MUSET.

I must say he did it well. - Musím přiznat, že to dělal znamenitě. (DA: 59, 13 - 23)

I decided to stay a second night and I must say it has been something of a relief. - ... a musím říci ... (IS: 243, 172 - 134)

You must understand that it was only when they touched me that I became alarmed. - Musíte pochopit, že jsem propadal panice jen tehdy, když se mě dotýkaly. (DA: 227, 321 - 136)

But I must say the dress is far too low cut... - Musím ale říci, že ty šaty ... (RO: 121, 126 – 102)

In one case it was translated by the main verb in progressive aspect.

I must say it was quite amusing. - Uznávám, že je to docela zajímavé. (DA: 98, 351 - 58).

In one case (RO) it was translated as *je třeba*:

*In fairness to A. it **must be admitted** that living in his shadow cannot have been comfortable experience. – Je ovšem **třeba přiznat**, že život v Albusově stínu pro něj nebyl ... (RO: 22, 23 – 12)*

+ advice (inevitable)

With the interpretation of advice, MUST appeared in the Material only once. In this case the advice was not based only on personal opinion but more on the inevitable course of the world, so this meaning combines in itself two of the possible interpretations A and B, listed at the beginning of the chapter. It was translated into Czech by the verb MUSET.

*But you **must** have supper. - Ale miláčku, **musíš** přece jíst. (DA: 104, 18 - 62)*

Time reference

MUST with this meaning with future reference will be discussed later in the paper. As expected no example of MUST with this meaning and with past reference appeared.

Negation

As it has already been explained MUST with this meaning does not require any special treatment when negated. It expresses necessity not to act and into Czech it is mainly translated as NESMĚT. It was also the most common way of translation found in the Material. It occurred there eleven times (AM: 2 – 103, 114; IS: 5 – 32, 42, 83, 133, 138; DA: 2 – 51, 148; RO: 2 – 49, 150).

*She thought: "I **mustn't** go out too deep in life. I must stay in the shallows. – **Nesmím** klesnout v životě tak hluboko. Musím se držet v mělčinách. (AM: 70, 70 - 103)*

*... and I **must never** forget it: life is good. - a nikdy to **nesmím** zapomenout: život je dobrý (AM: 77, 77- 114)*

*He **must not** be asked to perform tasks in any area where an error might jeopardize the success. - **Nesmíme** na něm v žádném směru požadovat nic, co by mohlo ohrozit úspěch. (IS: 65, 50 - 32)*

*All right I will let you stay, but you **must** keep still and **not** to jump about. - Tak dobře, nechám tě tady, ale **nesmíš** se vrtět a skákat. (DA: 92, 345 -51)*

*No, we **must not fight**. – Ne, **nesmíme se hádat**. (RO: 177, 185 – 150)*

As it is exemplified by the last example, when MUST with the meaning A is negated, it really expresses necessity not to act and it is synonymous with MUST in affirmative + verb with the opposite meaning (you must keep still - you must not wriggle) - what is, therefore, negated is not the modality but the proposition.

In three cases MUST NOT was translated as NEMOCI into Czech.

*Claud said we **mustn't** run the ringer any more... - Claud řekl, že dvojníka už víckrát postavít **nemůžeme**. (DA: 326, 197 -174)*

*I'm afraid you **mustn't** expect anything else for Christmas. - Obávám se ovšem, že už ode mne nic jiného k vánocům čekat **nemůžeš**. (DA: 196, 290 - 129)*

*"How's Mr Smythe?" "Oh, **mustn't** complain." - "No, **nemůžu** si stěžovat." (AM: 190, 188 - 183)*

Once it was translated as NEMÍT:

*I **must not tell** lies. - **Nemám vykládat** lži. (RO: 80, 82 - 59)*

And once MUST NOT was translated as NEMUSET.

*"I was beginning to get worried." "You **must not** worry about me." - "Už jsem začínala mít starost." "O mě starosti mít **nemusíte**." (DA: 156, 219)*

When comparing the translations of MUST NOT into Czech there seems to be a sharper difference in the interpretations between NESMĚT and NEMOCI in Czech than between MUST NOT and CAN'T in English. When MUST NOT expresses strong, really **inescapable** obligation (the term often used to describe the primary interpretation of MUST), where the person imposing the obligation is really in a position which enables him/her to have the power or control over the person/people involved or over the situation, then it is translated into Czech as NESMĚT. In cases, however, where MUST NOT expresses strong recommendation or inevitable state of events rather than obligation, it is translated into Czech as NEMOCI. In all the cases with the latter interpretation (see above) MUST NOT could be replaced by CAN'T, but if NEMOCI in the Czech translations was replaced by NESMĚT, the resulting sentences would sound awkward. It therefore seems that there is a clear overlap between the interpretations of MUST NOT and CAN'T, in

certain contexts they can replace one another, while there have not been found any sentences in the Material (so far) which would allow replacement of NEMOCI by NESMĚT without the change in meaning or acceptability of the sentence. The matter will be further studied on the sentences with CAN'T and BE NOT ALLOWED TO (see the section *Necessity not to*).

MUST NOT translated as NEMUSET is even more interesting. Although there is often a correlation between the interpretations of MUST NOT and NESMĚT and these two represent the most frequent mutual translations, if we look at the formal relations between the individual forms in each language, we will find important system differences. Seen from the viewpoint of a purely formal approach, the negation of MUST is MUST NOT and the negation of MUSET is NEMUSET. There is, however, a semantic difference between the two negative forms. While MUST NOT expresses **obligation not to...**, NEMUSET negates modality, therefore it means **not obliged to** When going through all the possible means Czech offers to express modality with the use of a modal verb, one will find out that there does not exist a possibility of the explicit expression of **obligation not to ...**. Therefore MUST NOT is usually translated as NESMĚT because if one is obliged not to do something, he at the same time is not allowed to do it. The interpretations are not exactly the same but one at least presupposes the other. There are, however, cases where this closeness of interpretation is not enough. Let's have a look at the sentences in question once more.

*"I was beginning to get worried." "You **must not** worry about me." - "Už jsem začínala mít starost." "O mě starosti mít **nemusíte**." (DA: 156, 219 - 105)*

The English sentence can be paraphrased as: *I insist that you do not worry about me*, because MUST here cannot really express obligation since worrying is not an activity which could be consciously stopped or avoided, but a feeling which one can try to avoid or suppress but without any predictable obligatory results. If something can't be ordered it can't also be banned, so Czech translation by NESMĚT would be inappropriate. If one wants to express the English interpretation in Czech and stick to expressing it by means of a modal verb, he/she has to look for something like *musíte se o mě nebát*, which as it is, is not really Czech. Since the language means we are looking for should not express obligation but rather strong recommendation *not to worry*, the meaning can be paraphrased as *fear is not welcome/desired* and therefore *not necessary/obligatory* in the situation. This

paraphrase then leads us to the basic interpretation of NEMUSET in Czech which is **not obligatory to**

6.1.2 Interpretation B: Requirement – natural, impersonal

In the material eighteen (DA: 7 – 78, 85, 109, 110, 133, 134, 155; IS: 5 – 88, 89, 109, 124, 127; RO: 5 - 37, 128, 149, 147, 223; AM: 1 - 79) cases of MUST with this meaning were found. All but five cases of MUST in the affirmative with this meaning found in the Material were translated into Czech by the verb MUSET.

*A butler of any duality **must** be seen to inhabit his role...- Právý majordom **musí** navenek plně a bezzbytku zaujímat svoji roli ... (IS: 178, 127- 89)*

*An infant nurse at twenty dollars a day **must** expect to be hauled out of bed occasionally. - Dětská sestra za dvacet dolarů denně **musí** přece počítat s tím. (DA: 254, 354 - 155)*

*To support these ladies the men **must** work like slaves ... - Aby pak tyto dámy mohly žít na úrovni, **musí** dřít muži jako otroci... (DA: 183, 277 - 109)*

*And it is another way of ..., because students **must be given** Blood Status. - ...protože každý student **si musí nechat vystavit** potvrzení o krevní čistotě. (RO: 173, 182 – 147)*

Five of these fourteen examples were not clear B interpretations. On the one hand they expressed obligation which was imposed by a person other than the speaker, on the other hand, however, the obligation was not a general requirement but it was rather connected with a certain person, time or occasion. The interpretation of MUST in these sentences is very close to A interpretation of HAVE TO. In two of them MUST was used with negative polarity and translated as NESMĚT (DA – 133, 134)

*And then the dreams came and she **must** suffer them without will. - A pak přicházely sny a ona si je chtě nechtě **musela** prožívat. (AM: 58, 58 - 79)*

*You have got lots of women and you must never smoke or drink. – Máš spoustu žen, ale **nesmíš** vůbec kouřit a pít alkohol. (DA: 221, 315 - 133)*

*She always received the same answer - that she **must** continue to wait. - Pokaždé dostala stejnou odpověď - že **musí** čekat. (DA: 128, 251 - 85)*

Three (RO: 3) of the four remaining examples were translated by the following expressions: *je třeba*, *by měli* and *nezbývá než*:

*Wizards, she says, **must accept** these thieves of their knowledge and magic. – Podle jejího mínění **je třeba, aby** čarodějové takové lupiče svých znalostí a kouzel **přijali** mezi sebe. (RO: 18, 18 – 9)*

*He put off the moment ... until he told himself that **it must be done** ... - až si řekl, že **nezbývá** nic jiného, **než to udělat** (RO: 301, 317 -229)*

The last special case was translated into Czech by *copak* + the future tense. It was used in the function of an exclamation, in English in an interrogative sentence. Here the difference in structures can be explained by the fact that in English there does not exist a lexical alternative to the Czech word *copak* (see for example Poldauf (1997) or Fronek (2000)). *Copak* in Czech marks conductive question which is biased towards the answer with the opposite polarity than the one used in the question. The same thing is in English expressed merely by means of an interrogative structure. As Quirk (1985: 808) illustrates it: "But questions may be conductive, i.e. they may indicate that the speaker is predisposed to the kind of answer he has wanted or expected: Do you really want to leave? ["Surely you don't want to"]". In Czech the most natural equivalent would be *Copak chceš opravdu odejít?* An interesting question might be why in the example sentence below **MUST** was used and not **WILL** when the reference is to the future. The first reason may be found when studying closely the general meanings of these two modals. The two main interpretations of **WILL** are "prediction" and "volition" (Leech 2004: 86 - 88). It either describes a prediction about what will happen in the future, so mainly a certain change in the state of events: "*It will be generally dry tomorrow. I won't get the results until Tuesday.*" or it describes willingness, insistence, intention, in other words the involvement of the agent: "*I'll kill him for this. If he will wait a moment...*" (Chalker 1990: 120). Chalker (1990: 121) further stresses the role of the agent in meaning of **WILL**: "The general meaning of *will* is near the necessity/certainty end of the modal scale. The underlying connection is close - if you are sufficiently determined to do something, that action can be confidently predicted". **WILL** in the discussed sentence might therefore strongly suggest the intention of the agent as might be further illustrated on a similar sentence. *Will he ever pass the exam?* clearly suggests the following meaning: *Will he ever be willing to study hard enough to gain sufficient knowledge for passing the exam?*, or just expresses personal opinion (although presented as very likely opinion) of the speaker. **MUST** on the other hand can involve

external circumstances, not the intention of the agent: *Must he past the exam?* means *Is it required by external rules (study regulation, position requirements...) that he needs to pass the exam?* As Palmer (1979: 47) explains it: "the essential difference between WILL and MUST is that while *will* indicates a confident statement, *must* suggests a confident conclusion from the evidence available". The second reason lies in time reference of WILL and MUST. WILL can refer both to the future and to the present, but not to both at the same time - it is usually clearly resolved by the context. According to Leech (2004: 87) the choice of the adverbial is crucial for distinguishing 'present prediction' from the more common 'future prediction'. So WILL as such cannot describe something in progress now and continuing to the future. MUST on the other hand is much less clearly marked for time, it can refer both to the present and future without any special requirements on the context. So because of the time reference of the sentence below and the relation of its content to the agent, MUST is the right choice.

Must he be a cuckold for the rest of his life? - Copak bude nosit parohy až do smrti? (DA: 183, 277 -110)

Time reference

The future reference with MUST is discussed later.

There appeared in the Material only one example of MUST with this meaning and past reference:

And then the dreams came and she must suffer them without will. - A pak přicházely sny a ona si je chtě nechtě musela prožívat. (AM: 58, 58 - 79)

According to Dušková (1988: 194) " must with past reference is used only in subordinate clauses", but here it appears in the main clause. No explanation has been found apart from the individual style of a native speaker. According to the rules for the use of MUST and HAVE TO generally found in grammars and discussed on various places in this paper, HAD TO would seem more appropriate.

6.1.3 Interpretation C: Logical Necessity

MUST expressing logical necessity is used only in affirmative constructions. As it has already been discussed MUST NOT cannot be used epistemically, therefore other means

must be used instead - they will be discussed later. Epistemic necessity with past reference is expressed by means of MUST + perfect infinitive.

For MUST with this meaning which appeared in the material seventy times, the widest range of Czech translations was found. They can be divided into six groups:

Translated into Czech by MUSET

Thirty nine examples of MUST translated as MUSET were found in the Material (AM: 4 – 63, 141, 159, 164; IS: 7 – 36, 69, 70, 71, 92, 99, 130; DA: 17 – 52, 60, 66, 68, 69, 76, 86, 90, 92, 101, 104, 108, 138, 142, 154, 165; RO: 11 – 43, 84, 85, 88, 96, 111, 118, 189, 193, 232, 238)

*Young Alan **must** have had a lot on nerve up there that afternoon. - Mladý Alan **musel** v sobě sebrat hodně odvahy toho odpoledne. (AM: 155, 154 - 164)*

*A lot of people assume that he **must** be a man of spectacularly low intelligence. - Spousta lidí je přesvědčena, že tento muž **musí** mít úžasně nízkou inteligenci. (Amis: 53, 53 - 63)*

*You **must** be awfully tired. - **Musíte** být už strašně unavený. (DA: 109, 23 - 66)*

*And that **must** be the village of Brill. - A tamhleto **musí** být vesnička Brill. (DA: 134, 257 - 90)*

*It **must** be quite something, sir, to be discussing matters with his like. - To **musí** být úžasně, pane, moci s takovým člověkem diskutovat. (IS: 197, 142 - 99)*

*It occurs to me you **must** be a well-contented man. - Myslím, že **musíte** být velmi spokojený. (IS: 182, 130 - 92)*

*That **must have been** the Tongue Tying Curse. - To **musela** být jazykolamná kletba. (RO: 142, 148 – 111)*

Translated into Czech by adverbs expressing certainty such as *jistě, určitě ...*

From the twenty-four examples (AM: 8 – 138, 143, 144, 167, 175, 177, 179, 191; RO: 11 – 1, 7, 18, 39, 55, 64, 90, 143, 155, 186; DA: 3 – 70, 97, 140, IS: 2 – 100, 117) belonging to this group seventeen were translated into Czech as *určitě*, three as *jistě*, four as *nepochybně*, one as *skutečně*, and two as *zjevně*:

*She **must** have been crying for a long time. - **Určitě** dlouho brečela. (AM: 206, 204 - 191)*

You **must** have had an anxious day. - Měla jsi **jistě** strašný den. (DA: 128, 251 - 86)

...examining objects he **must** have been long ago familiar with. - ... a prohlíží si předměty, které **nepochybně** velmi dobře znal. (IS: 224, 160 - 117)

You **must be** so proud. - **Určitě jste** na ni nesmírně pyšní. (RO: 17, 16 - 7)

There **must be** a secret message from Dumbledore in the icing. - V polevě **je nepochybně** nějaké tajné poselství. (RO: 108, 112 - 90)

If you don't feel a little mad sometimes, then I think you **must** be out of your mind. - Jestli sami někdy nemáte pocit, že jste se zbláznili, pak si myslím že to **skutečně** nemáte v hlavě v pořádku. (AM: 173, 171 - 177)

Translated into Czech by adverbs with meaning similar to perhaps, probably

From nineteen examples (AM: 3 - 140, 161, 185; DA: 2 - 94, 135; IS: 8 - 1, 12, 21, 26, 51, 64, 119, 142; RO: 6 - 89, 115, 192, 206, 202, 225) belonging to this group 10 were translated into Czech as *asi*, three as *zřejmě* and four as *nejspíš*.

She thought it **must** be the Hostel. - **Asi** to bude tím, kde bydlím. (AM: 98, 97 - 140)

I can well imagine how he **must** have looked that day. - Dovedu si představit, jak **asi** tehdy vypadal. (IS: 40, 33 - 12)

Indeed, it **must** have occurred on just one of those summer evenings she mentions ... - Opravdu se to **zřejmě** přihodilo některý z oněch letních večerů ... (IS: 52, 40 - 21)

He guessed that they **must** all still be in church... - Vytušil, že všichni budou **nejspíš** ještě v kostele ... (DA: 139, 262 - 94)

Bathilda **must have been** dead a while. - Batyllda **je už nejspíš** pěkně dlouho mrtvá. (RO: 283, 279 - 202)

Translated into Czech without any special means expressing certainty - only by an affirmative structure

Affirmative sentences state the content as fact, MUST in the epistemic sense is used to state the proposition with very high probability or certainty which nearly approaches fact. Therefore it is not surprising that MUST can be translated into Czech simply by an

affirmative construction without explicitly expressed modality. Palmer (1979: 3) also believes that sentences with epistemic MUST are often synonymous with affirmative sentences: "It is true that MUST may be used to indicate alethic necessity as in: John is a bachelor, so he must be unmarried. Yet it would be no less natural not to use MUST and say *so he is unmarried*, and it seems likely that no clear distinction is recognized by native speakers between this alethic use and the epistemic use of MUST". There appeared sixteen (AM: 7 – 136, 137, 158, 163, 173, 186, 189; IS: 5 – 10, 47, 50, 74, 112; DA: 3 – 27, 94, 112; RO: 1 - 14) examples of this kind.

*The man **must be mad**, she cried. - Ten chlap se **zbláznil**, vybuchla. (DA: 187, 281 - 112)*

*I'm so happy, I think I **must be going to die**. - Jsem tak šťastná, že si myslím, že už mě brzy **čeká smrt**. (AM: 203, 201 - 189)*

*The string put it back with a jerk that **must have almost dislocated** its leg. - Motouz ji prudce strhl zpátky, **jen taktak že jí nevyhodil** nohu z kloubů. (DA: 307, 178 - 166)*

*It **must do one good** to be mistaken for a lord every now and then. - To člověka **potěší**, když ho čas od času považují za lorda. (IS: 218, 155 - 112)*

*Amy's not been back here for, ooh it **must be** eight or nine years. - Amy už zde nebyla, no, to **bude** už osm nebo devět let. (AM: 96, 95 - 137)*

In the last two sentences, the future tense but with present reference is used in the Czech translations. As it has already been discussed, future can never be presented as a fact, it can't be predicted with 100% certainty. MUST in the epistemic sense modifies affirmative sentences usually in such a way as stating something with a certainty close to a fact, but still explicitly saying that it is an assumption. The future tense in Czech, therefore, expresses this particular meaning more explicitly than the present tense.

Translated into Czech by explicitly expressing that the proposition is about an assumption made on the basis of some evidence

Two examples were found in the Material, one in DA and one in IS.

*You have bumps on your beautiful face. You **must be getting old**. - Dělalí se ti na tvé hezounké tvářičce bradavice. **Je vidět, že stárneš**. (DA: 89, 341 - 49)*

... that those entirely untypical incidents took place which **must have provided** what flimsy basis exists for these absurd allegations. - Proto v té době došlo ke zcela netypickým incidentům, které **podle všeho poskytly** chatrnou záminku onoho absurdního obvinění. (IS: 154, 110 - 81)

These translations explicitly express what is the main meaning of the epistemic MUST - an assumption made on the basis of some evidence and therefore an assumption which can be stated with a very high probability.

Translation which cannot be assigned to any of the previous groups

Harry knew that it **must be** full of living creatures ... - Harry **nepochyboval** o tom, že les **je** plný živých tvorů... (RO: 297, 312 - 227)

And one thing he **must have known** was ... - A **určitě musel vědět** ... (DA: 123, 246 - 75)

In the latter case the meaning of MUST was translated into Czech "twice", there were two language means used to express the same thing: the modal verb MUSET and the adverb *určitě*.

The last example belonging to this group of meanings deserves to be discussed separately. It could be ambiguous between the **logical necessity** and **necessity to act - external circumstances** but in both languages the potential ambiguity is resolved by the form used. In English MUST + past participle with past reference is used only to express epistemic modality, in Czech the omission of an explicit expression of modality is much more frequent in the case of epistemic modality the deontic modality. The necessity is, therefore, likely to be interpreted as epistemic.

I have tasted only the cooking of two people - unless one counts Nurse McPottle, who **must have heated** my bottle a few times when I was an infant. - ... - ledaže bych počítal ošetřovatelku, která mi několikrát **ohřála** láhev. (Dahl: 255, 364 - 163)

Time reference

As was expected on the basis of the facts discussed in the introduction to MUST, epistemic MUST with future reference is rare. Two examples were found in the Material.

If ... there must surely come a time when he **must** say to himself - Má-li ... **musí** nutně dospět k momentu, kdy přestane posuzovat, k momentu, kdy si řekne ... (IS: 210, 152 - 111)

I'm so happy, I think I **must be going to die**. - Jsem tak šťastná, že si myslím, že už **mě brzy čeká smrt**. (AM: 203, 201 - 189)

When closely studying these examples, and even including Palmer's (1979: 44) example: *He must come tomorrow*, it is obvious that it is not MUST which is used with future reference but the main verb. It expresses an assumption arrived at the moment of speaking about what will happen in the future. In the first sentence the main verbs *come* and *say* are not grammatically marked for future reference because with MUST in this context it is not formally possible. But the Czech translation *přestane, řekne* clearly shows that it is the proposition which has future reference, not the modal verb. That *přestane, řekne* are really future forms can be supported by Chylova's citation: "Slovesa dokonavá naopak aktuální přítomnost vyjádřit nemohou, soustředí se na jeden moment děje - obvykle na začátek nebo konec. Budoucnost proto dokonavé sloveso vyjadřuje většinou tvarem přítomného času, tedy tvarem jednoduchým - napsat - napíšu, udělat - udělám"³⁷ (Chylova web). In the second sentence the context allows the explicit marking of the future reference of the main verb: *is going to*.

When considering MUST and its usage with future reference further it seems inevitable to come to a conclusion that it is never really used with future reference. We have already discussed the situation with epistemic MUST - it is impossible to form a future assumption, to say what we will be sure about in the future: * *I will be certain that* The only logical possibility is to form an assumption now either about the present, about the past or about the future.

The situation with the other two meanings of MUST is similar. When I as a speaker am forming an obligation for myself or for somebody else, in order to be able to form it, I must be aware of it. Only the action I require to be done can refer to the present or more likely to the future (see the sentence below). In the sentence *He must come tomorrow* the existence of the obligation is known at the time of speaking but the act of coming will occur in the future. The Czech translation shows the situation much more clearly *Musí přijít zítra*.

³⁷ Verbs which express finished actions on the other hand cannot refer to the present time as such, they can focus only on one moment of the action – usually either the beginning or the end. The future reference of such a verb can be, therefore, expressed by means of its present form - a simple form – napsat – napíšu, udělat – udělám.

Although even in Czech a modal verb must always be followed by an infinitive, morphologically marked aspect enables us to make a distinction between *jít, přijít, přicházet* or *řici a říkat*

*I warned Mr Foster that you **must leave** at nine fifteen. - Upozornil jsem pana Fostera, že **musíte odjet** ve čtvrt na deset. (DA: 124, 247 - 78)*

That situation of MUST and its use with future reference is discussed in Leech (2004: 96, 97) „*We must meet next week* expresses a present obligation regarding a future action. With *have to*, this possibility exists too: *We have to meet next week* describes a present obligation about a future action. But there is also the further possibility, expressed by *We will have to meet next week*, where the modality, as well as the obliged event, are temporally located in the future”. In Czech there exists a similar distinction: *Musíme se setkat příští týden* a *Budeme muset setkat příští týden*. Sentences with explicitly expressed future obligation are less frequent and restricted to specific structures, mainly to conditional clauses and to clauses of purposes which can be regarded as specific conditionals (if we want to reach sth we will have to...). Leech (2004: 97) also draws attention to this fact: "Notice that *will have to* is the only option if the obligation is conditional on another event that happens in the future". The situation in Czech is again similar: *Když bude pršet, budeme muset (* musíme) závod odložit*. The explanation seems quite clear. If the obligation is conditional on another event which will or will not happen in the future, it is clear that this obligation is in fact non-existent at the time of speaking. It is only potential. And whether or not this obligation is actually imposed will be decided in the future. So for these structures we really need modality with future reference. The fact, that MUST isn't used in these structures suggests that it can be used only with present and not with future reference.

6.2 Form MUST HAVE (EN – CZ)

The form MUST + past infinitive for epistemic modality was irregularly distributed within the six groups based on the Czech translations. In the Material 58 examples were found (IS: 13, DA: 14, AM: 9, RO: 22). In the group with translation and *jistě, určitě*...(14/13), the ratio of the past reference to the present reference was roughly 50%, in the group *asi* only two examples appeared with present reference others with past, similarly in MUSET (14/33) MUST more often appeared with past reference. A different situation was in the

group were the modality was not explicitly expressed. Only three examples out of sixteen were with past reference. This distribution of Czech translations may be caused by the assumption that it is easier to judge the present on the basis of some evidence than the past. When evaluating something happening at the time of speaking the evidence is visible, right at hand while for judging the past the evidence has to be searched for in memory, which may not be so reliable: *Jeho okna svítí - musí být doma, určitě je doma, je doma., Myslím, že jeho okna svítily - asi byl doma.* In the Material most of the examples translated as *asi*, which expressed smaller probability, were with the past reference, while most example translated by means of an affirmative construction presenting the proposition as a fact appeared with present reference.

A summary of the all the examples of MUST found in the English fiction, apart from the cases of MUST in the form of MUST HAVE, and their corresponding translations is presented in Table 1, an analogical summary for MUST HAVE is illustrated in Table 2.

MUST: 183				
meaning	number	translation	number	
A	93	MUSET	44	
		opposite polarity	3	
		imperative	5	
		<i>je třeba, potřeba</i>	2	
		+ opinion	MUSET	31
		present	8	
negative	20	NESMĚT	11	
		NEMOCI	3	
		NEMÍT	1	
		NEMUSET	1	
		opposite polarity	2	
		lexical verb	1	
B	22	MUSET	17	
		MÍT cond.	1	
		<i>copak</i>	1	
		<i>nezbývá, je třeba</i>	2	
C	48	MUSET	17	
		<i>určitě</i> (and similar)	14	
		<i>asi</i> (and similar)	3	
		lexical verb	13	
		<i>je vidět</i>	1	

Table 1: Summary of MUST (EN - CZ)

MUST HAVE:58				
meaning	number	translation	number	
C	58	MUSET	23	
		<i>určitě</i> (and similar)	13	
		<i>asi</i> (and similar)	14	
		lexical verb	5	
		<i>podle všeho</i>	1	
		extra	<i>nepochybovat</i>	1
			<i>určitě musel</i>	1

Table 2: Summary of MUST HAVE (EN - CZ)

7 MUST (CZ – EN)

7.1 Form MUST

7.1.1 Interpretation A: Obligation – speaker's authority

There were seven examples (KL: 4 – 9, 54, 90, 97; KU:2 - 18, 58; HR: 1 - 17) of MUST with this interpretation found in the Material. In five cases MUST corresponded to Czech MUSET:

Musíte domů, spát! – You **must go** home now ... (KL: 109, 100 – 97)

Když na ni nestačím já, musíš mi pomoci. – Since I cannot cope with her myself, you **must help** me. (KU: 33, 24 – 18)

*...že by bylo, a to se musí zařídit, aby nad kanapem na stropě viselo zrcadlo ... - But best of all, and she **must arrange** it would be to hang a mirror from the ceiling ... (HR 14, 15 – 17)*

In the remaining two cases (KU: 1, KL: 1) it was once a translation of MÍT in the present tense and once of MĚL BY:

Je-li však Marie Claude sama ženou, kdo je ta druhá žena, která se v ní skrývá a které si má vážit? - ...the one he **must** always **respect**? (KU: 104, 90 – 58)

Měli byste s chlapcem vyhledat psychologa. – You really **must take** him to see a psychiatrist. (KL: 23, 18 – 9)

+ OPINION

There is a special meaning of MUST + a reporting verb + *that* which is referred to as “opinion” in this paper. MUST enters in a combination with reporting verbs much more frequently than other modal verbs. There were eleven examples (VI: 9 – 3, 8, 18, 20, 29, 71, 77, 111, 117; KL: 2 – 13, 37) of MUST with this interpretation found in the Material. In three cases (VI: 3) they were translations of MUSET:

*...ale musím ještě aspoň přiznat, že se cosi změnilo ... - ...but I still **must** at least **admit** that something had changed ... (VI: 146, 122 – 77)*

In four cases (VI: 3) MUST corresponded to different expressions expressing obligation in Czech – *je třeba, nutno, po pravdě řečeno, přece jen*:

*Nutno říci, že se pohybovala velice rychle. – It **must be said** that she moved with great alacrity. (VI: 18, 14 – 3)*

*Když jsme tam vstoupili, sledoval jsem dívčinu tvář **přece jen** s jistými obavami. – The first time we entered it, I **must say** I was a bit concerned how she would react ... (VI: 196, 164 – 111)*

In two cases (VI: 2) MUST corresponded to Czech *sice*:

*Dva aperitivy mě **sice** dostatečně uvolnily, ale přesto ... - It **must be admitted** that the two aperitives did a lot to relax me, but ... (VI: 60, 51 – 29)*

And in the remaining two examples (KL: 2) there was no special expression used in Czech:

*Prosím tě, řekl jsem, abys nám už nikoho a nic neházel na terasu. – I **must ask** you never again to throw ... (KL: 23, 19 – 13)*

*To mě nikdy nenapadlo. – Well, I **must say** that is something I have never thought of doing. (KL: 50, 42 – 37)*

7.1.2 Interpretation B: Requirement- impersonal, practical

There were seven examples (KL: 2 – 102, 148; KU: 2 – 39, 52, HR: 1- 105; VI: 2 – 52, 90) of MUST with this interpretation found in the Material. In six cases (KL: 2, KU: 2, VI: 1, HR: 1) MUST corresponded to Czech MUsET:

*Člověk **musí zemřít** a chce aby po něm zůstala aspoň pyramida nebo dům. – Man knows he **must die** and wants to leave behind a pyramid or at least a house ... (KL: 160, 149 – 148)*

*Ten, kdo chce stále někam výš, **musí počítat** s tím, že se mu jednoho dne dostaví závrať. - ... **must expect** some day to suffer vertigo ... (KU: 72, 59 – 39)*

The remaining case was special, because MUST functioned there as a noun, in Czech it corresponded to NEZBYTNÝ:

Řekl jsem, že silné opalovací krémy jsou dnes **nezbytné**, protože v obloze je díra. – I said that powerful suntan lotions were now **a must** unfortunately on account of the hole in the sky. (VI: 66, 55 – 34)

7.1.3 Interpretation C: Logical necessity

There were twenty-three examples (KL: 12 – 2, 16, 29, 59, 62, 68, 93, 111, 147, 145, 152; HR: 5 – 20, 35, 57, 95, 144; VI: 6 – 2, 34, 113, 114, 88, 104) of MUST with this interpretation found in the Material. In nine cases (KL: 5, HR: 2, VI: 2) MUST corresponded to Czech MUSET:

*Nikdy jsem nepochyboval o tom, že všichni proroci **musili** v sobě **mít** notně bláznoství. – I had always thought that every phrophet **must be** something of a madman. (KL: 159, 147 – 147)*

*... a já jsem věděl, že to **musí být** krásný pocit vidět na každé té dlaždičce vytištěno svoje jméno. - ... and I knew it **must be** wonderful to see your name printed on ewvery cobblestone. (HR: 160, 37 – 35)*

In three cases (VI: 2, HR: 1) it corresponded to Czech *asi*:

***Asi jsem** impotentní, řekl Oskar po chvíli ochraptěle ... - I **must be** impotent ... (VI: 198, 166 – 113)*

In three cases (KL: 3) it corresponded to Czech *určitě* and similar expressions – *ovšem, jistě*:

*...ale pak si řekl, že já tu **určitě** hořím zvědavostí, co se děje v Praze. - ...but then he said to himself that I **must be** dying to know what was going on (KL: 164, 152 – 152)*

In seven cases (KL: 3, VI: 2, HR: 2) MUST corresponded to a lexical verb in the indicative in the present (6) or the past (1) tense:

*Poprvé v životě jsem pochopil, jak **se cítí** sekretářka, kterou zve na oběd šéf. – For the first time in my life I realized how a secretary **must feel** when her boss invites her out to lunch. (VI: 23, 18 – 6)*

*...anebo se odstěhuju do Prahy, tam **je** místo v restauracích taky, a tam celou zimu budu mít květin ... - Or maybe I'd just move to Prague, for there **must be** restaurant jobs there, too. (HR: 145, 17 – 20)*

*Od té doby, co jsem ji naposledy viděl, **uplynula** už aspoň dvě desetiletí. – it **must be** at least twenty years since I saw her last. (KL: 28, 22 – 16)*

In the last case MUST corresponded to a special phrase:

***Ale kdepak.** – You **must be joking.** (KL: 91, 81 – 68)*

MUST – INTERROGATIVE

There was only one example (VI) found in the Material which corresponded to Czech

MUSET:

*Proč **musím uklízet** třídu kvůli uklízečce? – Why **must I tidy** the classroom to prepare it for ... (VI: 165, 138 – 90)*

7.2 Negative form of MUST (CZ – EN)

7.2.1 Interpretation A: Obligation – speaker's authority

There were eight examples (VI: 4 – 19, 84, 124; KL: 2 – 151, 12; HR: 1 – 89; KU: 1 – 57) found in the Material. Seven of them (VI: 4, KL: 2, KU: 1) corresponded to Czech NESMĚT:

***Nesmíš** si je **připouštět** k tělu. – You **mustn't let** them to become too familiar. (VI: 41, 34 – 19)*

*Napsal mi, že na mě myslí, ale to se **nesmím zlobit**, že si jako musel najít jinou. - ...but that I **must not be angry** with him, that he had to find someone else. (KL: 163, 151 – 151)*

In the last example (HR) the structures in Czech and in English were different:

*...a ona se na mě podívala a ubrouskem mi utřela tvář a řekla mi, že od české soldatesky se nic jiného **čekat** nedalo a **nedá**. - ...and said, You can't, you **mustn't expect** anything else from those Czech jingoes. (HR: 228, 123 – 89)*

The assumption about the broader scope of the meaning of MUSTN'T in comparison with Czech NESMĚT (as its most common correlation) based on the examples from the English fiction is further supported here. Czech NESMĚT can express only clear, pure obligation when the speaker has the power to impose it while English MUSTN'T can include in itself also the meanings expressed by CAN'T. This can be illustrated by the fact that in the last example sentence CAN'T can replace MUSTN'T in the English sentence, but NESMĚT cannot replace *nedá* in the Czech sentence. It could, however, be replaced by NEMOCI.

7.2.2 Interpretation C: Logical necessity

There was only one example (KU) found in the Material which corresponded to Czech NEMOCI:

*A má-li Tereza sama nervózní pohyby, nedostatečnou vláčností gest, **nemůžeme se** tomu **divit** ... - ...if her gestures lack a certain easy grace, we **must not be surprised** ... (KU: 57, 46 – 31)*

7.3 Form MUST HAVE (CZ – EN)

7.3.1 Interpretation C: Logical necessity

For MUST HAVE interpretation C was the only one found in the Material and there were forty-five examples (HR: 24 – 9, 10, 12, 28, 41, 44, 52, 56, 61, 65, 63, 69, 78, 83, 84, 94, 107, 108, 113, 114, 132, 134, 137, 138; KL: 13 – 17, 32, 45, 58, 71, 77, 81, 82, 86, 94, 101, 103, 114; VI: 6 – 1, 41, 79, 97, 118, 120; KU: 2 – 17, 29) found. In seventeen cases (KL: 6, HR: 8, KU: 1, VI: 2) it corresponded to Czech MUSET in the past tense:

*Převlékla se do tenoučké blůzičky, **musela** jí v ní **být** pořád zima ... - ...in which she **must have been** desparately cold ... (KL: 103, 94 – 82)*

Avšak **museli** moc dobře **zaplatit**, že je šéf sem vzal. – But the foreigners **must have paid** well if our boss took them in. (HR: 190, 77 – 61)

Pokud někdo cosi tušil, **musel** to **být** náš pes, jehož jsem nyní venčil nezvykle často. – If anyone suspected anything it **must have been** our dog ... (VI: 148, 123 – 79)

In fourteen cases (HR: 5, KL: 5, VI: 3, KU: 1) it corresponded to an adverb expressing certainty or near certainty – *jistě* (6), *zřejmě* (3), *patrně* (2), *určitě* (1), *samozřejmě* (1), *zjevně* (1):

...že všichni důstojníci, kteří **jistě byli** svobodní, by se o ni ucházeli nebo mohli ucházet, ale nikdo z nich ji nedostal. – ...that all officers that **must have been** single, would have loved to try to get for her hand. (HR: 243, 143 – 107)

Měl v tom **zjevně** praxi. – He **must have had** a lot of experience (KL: 92, 82 – 71)

...dovtípl jsem se, že jsem **byl patrně** kýmisi za tmavými okny vily už vyhlížen ... – ...I assumed that I **must have been** spotted already by someone from behind the villa ... (VI: 9, 7 – 1)

In eleven cases (HR: 9, KL: 1, VI: 1) MUST HAVE did not really correspond to necessity in Czech but to an adverb expressing possibility – *asi* (9, HR: 8), *snad* (1), *tak nějak* (1):

...ale ten penzista **asi** špatně **viděl** a tak dlaní t'apal v prachu. – But the pensioner **must have had** poor **eyesight** because he was groping around ... (HR: 141, 12 – 12)

... a já jsem se s ním zase rozloučil a **tak nějak** jsem mu **byl** milý, hladil mě ... – He **must have been** fond of me because as I said goodbye to him again he patted me on the head (HR: 195, 83 – 65)

Jedna **měla snad** půl druhého metráku... – One **must have weighted** half a ton ... (KL: 118, 110 – 101)

In two cases (HR: 2) in Czech there was no special expression corresponding to MUST HAVE:

...ale pak ve dvě hodiny mu nesl právě ten pingl Karel tác, a na něm bylo všechno ve stříbře, a podle poklopů to **byla vždycky husička** ... – But at two Katel would bring him the tray and judging by the silver covers over the food it **must have been a small goose** ... (HR: 200, 90 – 69)

*...a už asi na chodbě vytáhli nože ... - ...and I suppose they **must have pulled their knives** out in the hallway ... (HR: 136, 6 – 10)*

In the last case (VI) it corresponded to MÍT in the past tense, supported by the word *logicky*, clearly illustrating that MUST really expressed “logical necessity“ in the sentence:

*Jakuba jsem osobně nepotkal. **Měl to logicky být** některý z těch kluků před K-martem, ale dodnes netuším který. – **Logically it must have been** one of the fellows in front of K-markt, but (VI: 210, 177 – 120)*

In the Czech fiction there was an interesting example of MUSET found which in Czech expressed deontic modality while it was translated to English by MUST with epistemic function:

*Já nevím, abyste si **nemusel zajíždět**... - I do not know...it **must be out of your way**... (KL: 96, 87 – 75)*

A summary of the all the examples of MUST found in the in the translations of the Czech fiction, apart from the cases of MUST in the form of MUST HAVE, and their corresponding Czech means is presented in Table 3, an analogical summary for MUST HAVE is illustrated in Table 4.

MUST:58

Meaning	Number	Translation	Number
A +opinion (11)	18	MUSET	5
		MÍT	2
		MUSET	3
		<i>je třeba, nutno, přece jen ...</i>	4
		<i>sice</i>	2
		lexical verb	2
B	7	MUSET	6
		<i>nezbytný</i>	1
C	23	MUSET	6
		<i>asi</i>	3
		<i>určitě</i> (and similar)	3
		lexical verb	7
		special	1
Interrogative	1	MUSET	1
Negative			
A	8	NESMĚT	7
		special	1
C	1	<i>nedá</i>	1

Table 3: Summary of MUST (CZ – EN)

MUST HAVE:45

Meaning	Number	Translation	Number
C	45	MUSET (past)	17
		<i>určite</i> (and similar)	14
		<i>asi</i> (and similar)	11
		lexical verb	2
		MÍT + <i>logicky</i>	1
		special	1

Table 4: Summary of MUST HAVE (CZ – EN)

8 HAVE TO (EN-CZ)

Under the heading "HAVE TO" also the expression HAVE GOT TO is included. This decision is based on the fact that many linguists treat the two forms as one semantic structure and, apart from the differences in their grammar and formality, do not semantically distinguish between them at all (e.g. Leech (2004), Quirk 1985, Swan 1996) or suggest just potential differences (e.g. Palmer (1979), Dušková (1972), (Huddleston and Pullum (2002))). There are, however, authors (e.g. Coates (1983)) whose research suggests more significant semantic differences between the two forms. On that account, at the end of the chapter dealing with HAVE TO there is a comparison of the excerpts with HAVE TO and HAVE GOT TO provided.

The basic meanings of HAVE TO are the same as those of MUST. Leech (2004: 80, 81) uses the same three groups as for MUST with two differences. First "The meaning of have to differs from sense A of MUST above in that the authority or influence of the speaker is not involved. HAVE TO expresses obligation or requirement without specifying the person exercising power or influence". Second HAVE TO for logical necessity is "chiefly colloquial AmE". Differences between MUST and HAVE TO will be studied in detail later in the paper.

This paper follows Leech's classification of the meanings of HAVE TO, which means that the categories are similar to the ones for MUST.

- A. Necessity to act - authority other than the speaker
+ opinion
- B. Requirement - general, public
- C. Logical Necessity

The main difference between interpretations A and B for HAVE TO consists in the fact that the necessity in A concerns a particular person(s) or situation(s) while in B the reference is more general.

It is assumed that in the last category "C: Logical necessity", there will appear only a limited number of examples if any at all, because HAVE TO in this meaning is mainly restricted to AmE³⁸ and the Material is taken from British contemporary fiction.

Negation

In the form HAVE NOT TO, in contradiction to MUST NOT, it is the modality which is negated not the proposition. It, therefore, belongs in the semantic field which is not of interest to us. It expresses possibility **not to act or not to be true**. Therefore, for negation of the modality expressed by HAVE TO, different lexical means, already discussed in connection with MUST, are usually used.

Time reference

HAVE TO generally expresses present time reference. When used with future reference, it is normally preceded by *will*, *shall* or *going to*, but it can also be used on its own. There is, however, a certain difference between sentences with HAVE TO and the operator of future reference + HAVE TO. Leech (2004: 96, 97) explains this as follows: "Modal auxiliaries in themselves are 'state verbs', and so a sentence with a primary modal like *must* is regarded as in the 'state present'. Thus the obligation exists in the present (or more precisely non-past) time zone. But the event to which the obligation applies can exist in a different time zone, especially the future. With *have to* this possibility exists too. But there is also the further possibility, where the modality (obligation) as well as the obligated event, are temporally located in the future." Furthermore the operator of future reference + HAVE TO is the only possibility if the obligation is preconditioned by another event likely to happen in the future. This matter has already been discussed in connection with MUST. For all meanings of HAVE TO the past counterpart is HAD TO.

³⁸ See e.g. Leech 2004: 80, Quirk 1985: 226, Palmer 1979: 46

8.1 Form HAVE TO

8.1.1 Interpretation A: Necessity to act - authority other than the speaker

In the Material there were thirty cases of HAVE TO with this meaning. Although I included the mentioned thirty cases in this category, some of them are rather border cases between categories A and B, because what imposes the obligation is ambiguous between a concrete person and circumstances. I included these cases into this category due to the fact that they express obligation referring to a concrete person in one concrete case rather than describing obligation in a general sense.

*I would return it myself, but I **have to** go upstairs just now. - Já bych ji uklidila, ale **musím** teď nahoru. (IS: 58, 45 - 27).*

The woman uttering the sentence works as a servant and it is not clear from the context whether the obligation was just imposed on her by her master at this concrete time period, or whether it is her general duty and therefore more the question of general circumstances of her working as a servant.

In sixteen cases (DA: 9 - 31, 36, 71, 113, 123, 157, 177, 179, 161); IS: 1 - 27; AM: 1 - 178, RO: 5 - 20, 44, 51, 73, 114) HAVE TO was translated into Czech as MUSET.

***Have to** do it soon because the time limit was midday. - **Musí** sebou hodit, protože časový limit končí v poledne. (DA: 69, 61 - 31)*

*You've **got to** pay the funeral parlour. - **Musíš** zaplatit pohřebnímu ústavu. (DA: 254, 362 - 161)*

*I do not know why D **have got to come** two days before the wedding. - Nechápu proč **musí** D. přijet už dva dny před svatbou. (RO: 86, 89 - 65)*

In twelve out of the sixteen cases it is clearly the speaker who imposes the obligation, so it seems that it goes against the rules set at the beginning concerning the difference between MUST and HAVE TO. But although the obligation is imposed by the speaker, it is clear from the context that the decision is not based merely on the speaker's will but more on the outer circumstances.

Got to go and get my exercise now. - **Musím** si dát ranní rozcvičku. (DA: 71, 63 - 36)

There's thousands of people know this dog, so you've **got to** be careful. - Tohohle psa znají tisíce lidí, takže **musíte** bejt opatrný. (DA: 337, 208 - 179)

You **have got to go** into hiding... - **Musíte** se někde **schovat** ... (RO: 33, 35 - 20)

You **have got to close** your mind. - V tom případě ale **musíš** svoji mysl **uzavřít**. (RO: 145, 151 - 114)

In four of these sixteen cases MUSET was conditional in Czech.

I suppose, you **have to read** the whole thing to understand. - Asi by sis to **musela** přečíst celý. (AM: 174, 172 - 178)

Also you **have to have** fifty dollars. - A **musela** bys mít těch padesát dolarů. (DA: 192, 286 - 123)

I **have to be** there half an hour beforehand for the formalities. - **Měla bych tam být** o půl hodiny dříve, abych vyřídila všechny formality. (DA: 124, 274 - 77)

- when you **have to dust** a room you get to know and hate all objects in it. - **Kdybyste** v té místnosti **museli utírat** prach, také byste znali a nenáviděli všechny předměty. (DA: 115, 69 - 71)

Others contained propositions with present reference in both languages and Czech MUSET was not preceded by the future form of BÝT (it means that also in the Czech translations modality was formally in the present tense)

In eight cases (DA: 3 - 171, 124, 114; IS: 2 - 78, 79; AM: 3 - 146, 162, 187) HAVE TO was translated into Czech without the use of any modal expression. Four of them (AM: 2, IS: 2) dealt with a proposition with present reference.

Usually we find a body and **have to look** for a murderer. - Obvykle najdeme tělo a pak **hledáme** vraha. (AM: 113, 112 - 146)

It is rather irksome **to have to hear** people talking today as though... - Dost mi ale vadí, když dnes **poslouchám** lidi, kteří se tváří ... (IS: 144, 104 - 78)

And four (DA: 3, AM: 1) dealt with a proposition with future reference.

You **have to pay** out fifty dollars in cash before they give it to you. - Nedostaneš to dřív, dokud jim na ruku **nevysázíš** padesát dolarů. (DA: 192, 278 - 124)

It's just the next thing, like leaving home. You **have to do** it eventually. You wait. - Taky to časem **uděláš**. Jen počkej. (AM: 198, 196 - 187)

Once HAVE TO was translated into Czech as POŘEBOVAT.

...the banks are closed until Monday and I've simply **got to have** some money for the weekend. - ... a nutně **potřebuji** peníze na víkend. (DA: 188, 282 - 114)

+ opinion

In a similar way as MUST, HAVE TO is also used with verbs of reporting such as *say*, *admit*, *understand*. In contradiction to MUST, however, it is less frequent and it does not express a personal opinion, but rather an opinion arrived at under the influence of outer conditions. HAVE TO + a verb of reporting appeared in the Material only eight times (IS: 6 - 9, 14, 35, 108, 131, 132; AM: 1 - 155; RO: 1 - 182), four times in the first person and four times in the third person. In the first person it was translated into Czech as MUSET.

I **have to admit** Mr Graham has a point here. - **Musím dát** v tomto panu Grahamovi **za pravdu**. (IS: 44, 36 - 14)

I am sorry but I **have to say** that I have every trust in his good judgement. - Lituji, ale **musím říci**, že úsudku jeho lordstva bezmezně důvěřuji. (IS: 236, 169 - 132)

I **have to say**, Dirk... - **Musím říct**, Dirku ... (RO: 243, 255 - 182)

In the second sentence from the just presented examples the fact that is being reported is not what the person would like to say (his/her personal conviction) but what he/she is forced to say based on outer circumstances. MUST is unlikely in this context and this fact can indicate a difference in the use between MUST/HAVE TO + a verb of reporting.

The third person is used to refer to somebody other than the speaker only once (the first one from the following examples), in the other two cases it is used with general reference, but in fact it refers to the speaker. It further strengthens the fact that when HAVE TO is used, the speaker is not personally involved in his/her claim. Once it was translated into Czech as *je nutno* and once without an explicit expression of modality.

*It was comfortable there, she **had to admit**, and Alan didn't appear to mind. - Musela **připustit**, že to bylo pohodlné, a ani se nezdálo, že ... (AM: 123, 122 - 155)*

*...it **has to be said** that certain employers have done much to encourage these sorts of trends. - ... ale **je nutno říci**, že někteří zaměstnavatelé ... (IS: 35, 30 - 9)*

*Of course, one **has to allow** that Mr. Harry Smith was employing the word dignity in a quite different sense ... - Samozřejmě **připouštím**, že pan H. S. užil slova důstojnost ve zcela jiném smyslu ... (IS: 204, 146 - 108)*

8.1.2 Interpretation B: Requirement - general, public

In the Material fourteen cases (DA: 3, IS: 5, AM: 2, RO: 4) of HAVE TO with meaning B were found. Nine examples were (IS: 3 - 22, 144, 145, DA: 2 - 156, 172; AM: 2 - 113, 190, RO: 2 - 45, 47) translated into Czech as MUSET.

*Just so long as you make sure your maggots is alive - they've **got to be wiggling**. - Musej se pěkně **kroutit**. (DA: 322, 193 - 172)*

*In time, you **have to hand** it to the past. - Stejně přijde čas, kdy člověk **musí brát** na vědomí minulost. (AM: 76, 76 - 113)*

*We've all **got to put** our feet up at some point. - Všichni to **musíme** někdy **zabalit**. (IS: 256, 182 - 144)*

*If it **has to come to force**, then it will... - Pokud to **budeme muset udělat násilím**, tak to uděláme ... (RO: 47, 49 - 26)*

In the remaining five cases HAVE TO was once translated as *je třeba*, *je nutno*, once with the use of *jen*, once by *zbývá* and once by *MÍT* in the present tense:

*In fact, one **has to accept** the distinct possibility that one may have previously ... - Vlastně **je třeba připustit** i možnost, že jsem snad původně ... (IS: 149, 108 - 80)*

*One **has to be** guided by the judgement of the true ladies and gentleman, argued the Society. - **Je nutno** se řídit úsudkem oněch skutečných urozených dam a ... (IS: 33, 28 - 6)*

*Why do all my children **have to be** small and weak? - Proč **jsou jen** všechny moje děti tak mrňavé a slabé? (DA: 241, 335 - 150)*

*Why does my room **have to be cleaned** out. - Proč **se má** v mém pokoji **uklízet**. (RO: 81, 83 - 61)*

*All we **have got to do** is find the tent again. - už jenom **zbývá** najít stan. (RO: 308, 325 – 236)*

In the last example the Czech translation clearly illustrates by means of the passive construction, that in this sentence HAVE TO really has the interpretation B. The passive construction enables not to mention the agent, since the typical feature of the interpretation B is that there is no clear source of obligation, but that the described action is generally desirable.

8.2 Forms HAD TO, HAVE HAD TO, HAD HAD TO

8.2.1 Interpretation A: Necessity to act - authority other than the speaker

There were two examples (RO: 2 – 117, 167) found in the Material, both translated as MUSET:

*She **had to go** down with Umbridge to the courtrooms, she could not refuse ...
Musela jít s Umbridgovou dolů do soudní síně ... (RO: 209, 221 – 167)*

+ opinion

There were found two examples (RO: 2) both translated as MUSET:

*...but he **had to admit** to himself ... - ale **musel si přiznat**, že ... (RO: 19, 19 – 11)*

In two cases (RO: 2) HAD TO was used to express the same meaning as MUST since for the past reference with this interpretation HAD TO is the only possibility. In both cases it was translated as MUSET:

*...but I **had to check**, did I not? – **Přesvědčit** jsem se ale **musel**, ne? (RO: 168, 176 – 134)*

The fact that here the obligation comes from the speaker is clearly illustrated by means of the question tag, because only the presence of the obligation the speaker imposes on him/herself can be questioned by this speaker.

8.2.2 Interpretation B: Requirement - general, public

There were found fifty-one cases of HAD TO and HAVE HAD TO with meaning B in the Material. Thirty-five cases (IS: 3 – 6, 73, 95; AM: 10 – 59, 80, 97, 133, 150, 165, 168, 156, 170; DA: 5 – 82, 95, 137, 141, 167; RO: 17 – 19, 135, 124, 29, 198, 131, 230, 239, 134, 38, 11, 207, 80, 116, 210, 137, 24) were translated into Czech by MUSET in the past and one (AM) as MUSET in the present tense.

*... and the trying nature of the events I **have had to endure** this evening. - ...a s tíhou událostí, jež jsem dnes večer **musel snášet**. (IS: 189, 135 - 95)*

*At this point I can see a dozen or so such figures and I **have had to forgo** the small game. - Těch postavíček jsem napočítal asi tucet, a tak jsem se **musel vzdát** zábavy ... (IS: 128, 94 - 73)*

*Everywhere **had to let** Prince in. - ... všude **musel být vpuštěn** dovnitř. (AM: 115, 114 - 150)*

*The first thing Mary **had to do** about his suicide was make a statement about it, too. - První, co **musela** Mary **udělat** ohledně Alanovy sebevraždy, bylo učinit prohlášení. (AM: 156, 154 - 165)*

*You **had to be** out by nine. You couldn't come back until twelve. - Úderem deváté **musely být** pryč a nesměly se vrátit před dvanáctou hodinou. (AM: 68, 68 - 98)*

*... the fog began to thicken and the car **had to slow down**. - mlha počala houstnout a vůz **musel zpomalit**. (DA: 126, 249 - 82)*

*... the upper teeth came down on my knuckles and started chopping away at them so fiercely I **had to let go**. - ... a začaly se mi divoce zařezávat do zápěstí, že jsem se **musel pustit**. (DA: 235, 329 - 141)*

*Perhaps if she **had to sleep** with anyone, she could sleep with Russ, who ... - Jestli už Mary **musí** s někým **spát**, mohla by spát s Rusem, který ... (AM: 125, 124 - 156)*

*...and Harry **had to sink** low into the side car ... - a Harry se **musel** ve vozíku **příkrčit**... (RO: 52, 54 - 29)*

In seven cases (DA – 120, 180, 42, 128, 91, 175, 130) it was translated without the use of any modal expression. In four of these HAVE TO was translated as STAČIT or JEN.

*You **had to have** a special sort of face to wear things like that. - Takové oblečení **se hodí jen** k zvlášť vybranému obličejí. (DA: 190, 284 - 120)*

*Drioly knew he **only had to mention** his wife and the boy's thick brown lips would loosen and begin to quiver. - Drioly věděl, že **stačí, aby se zmínil** o své ženě, a chlapcovy rty povolí a rozechvějí se. (DA: 77, 82 - 42)*

*So **all I had to do** this morning was to go to the bank ... - **Na mě bylo jen zajít** do banky ... (DA: 327, 197 - 175)*

Twice (AM: 1 – 157; RO: 1 - 30) it was translated as BÝT DONUCEN, once as MÍT, once as BÝT TŘEBA, once as BÝT NUTNO (IS – 6) and two times by means of a main verb in the past tense (RO: 2 – 23, 165):

*And there was an authentically bad moment when Michael **had had to go** down on his knees while a black soldier approached... - kdy **byl** Michael **donucen padnout** na kolena ... (AM: 130, 129 - 157)*

*He said **I had to**, sir. - Řekl, že ho **mám vzbudit**. (IS: 101, 76 – 63)*

*I think we could overpower her if we **had to** - ... **myslím, že bychom si s ní poradili, kdyby bylo třeba** (RO: 274, 287 – 196)*

*The priority now **had to be to leave** the Ministry before they were exposed... - **nejdůležitější teď bylo zmizet** z ministerstva, dřív než budou odhaleni (RO: 209, 220 – 156)*

BÝT DONUCEN explicitly expresses that the obligation was imposed by some other power than that of the speaker. This translation would be impossible in the case of MUST. MÍT is the most common translation of HAVE into Czech (the first meaning found for example in Velký anglicko-český slovník by K. Hais and B. Hodek, Academia Praha 1992). It is, therefore, common to both languages that this lexeme represents one of the possible means to express obligation. The whole matter will be studied further after discussing SHOULD.

8.3 The future forms of HAVE TO

8.3.1 Interpretation A: Necessity to act - authority other than the speaker

There were eight cases (AM: 3, IS: 2, DA: 1, RO: 2) found in the Material which belonged to this category of meaning. In seven cases (AM: 3 – 135, 174, 180; IS: 2 – 18, 82; RO: 2 – 13, 15) *will + have to* was translated into Czech as *být (fut.) + muset*.

Of course you will have to let them go. - Samozřejmě je budete muset propustit. (IS: 155, 110 - 82)

...you will have to wait for chapters nine to twelve... - ...na všechny podrobnosti si budete muset počkat ... (RO: 28, 29 – 13)

And the remaining case (DA - 164) of *shall + have to* one was translated as MUSET in the present tense:.

In that case we shall have to assume that you are right. - V tom případě musíme mít za to, že máte pravdu. (DA: 258, 366 - 164)

8.3.2 Interpretation B: Requirement - general, public

There were nine examples (RO: 6 – 5, 70, 75, 231, 168, 181; DA: 1 – 121; AM: 2 – 151, 152) found in the Material. In eight cases (RO: 5, DA: 1, AM: 2) *will + have to* was translated into Czech as *být (fut.) + muset*.

Now you will have to cope with all the shit. - Teď si s tím, hergot, budeš muset poradit sama. (AM: 181, 179 - 180)

...and the rich have special terrors. Mary will have to watch herself here. - Mary si bude muset dát pozor. (AM: 166, 164 - 174)

Again, your readers will have to buy my book... - Vaši čtenáři si opět budou muset koupit moji knihu ... (RO: 28, 29 – 15)

In the remaining case it was translated by a main verb in the future tense:

We shall just have to wait and see. - Počkáme si a uvidíme. (DA: 192, 286 - 121)

None of the cases of the future operator + HAVE TO are connected with an explicitly stated event in the future by which the proposition would be preconditioned (as it has already been discussed the operator of future reference + HAVE TO is the only possibility if the obligation is preconditioned by another event likely to happen in the future). At a closer look, however, it can be seen that in the majority of the sentences a certain future precondition is at least implied. All cases of *will* + HAVE TO were translated into Czech by *být (fut.)* + MUSET and in these cases at least certain future precondition is implicitly included: *when the bad thing happens again you will have to cope with it; the rich will use their special powers and then Mary will have to be careful; if the readers want to get more news, they will have to buy ...*

All the cases of *will* + *have to* were not in the 1st person. The two examples of *shall* + *have to* in the Material are both in the 1st person plural. So it may seem that the only difference between *will* + HAVE TO and *shall* + HAVE TO, is purely grammatical. But let's compare the two sentences with *shall* with a sentence found in Kundera:

Měli bychom se jít oblékat, budeme musít za chvíli jít. - We should be getting dressed, we will have to leave soon. (KU: 40, 37 - 39)

In this sentence *shall* would sound strange, because *shall* rather than expressing "pure future" implies "self-imposed obligation" (Chalker 1990: 122). In this sentence the obligation is expressed by *should* and moreover it is not self-imposed but imposed by a different authority. In the other two sentences, however, the obligation is self-imposed on the basis of the circumstances. In the first sentence SHALL does not express future reference as is also suggested by the Czech translation.

Form WOULD HAVE TO

The expression WOULD HAVE TO appeared in the Material only with meaning B and it did so in eighteen cases (AM: 5 - 134, 148, 154, 182, 188; DA: 5 - 6, 29, 32, 56, 81; IS: 5 - 4, 5, 39, 72, 135, RO: 2 - 181, 212, 231).

In eight cases (AM: 4, IS: 2, RO: 2) WOULD was used to express future obligation in the sequence of tenses. In at least four of these cases there was an event implicitly suggested by which the future obligation was preconditioned: *when she decides to leave she will have to walk in the rain, after he gathers his guts he will have to try, after the problem is discovered, acknowledged, she will have to move out.*

*On establishing that she **would have to walk** in the rain to the bus stop, I insisted on running her there in the Ford... - Když jsem si uvědomil, že **bude muset jít** na zastávku v dešti, trval jsem ... (IS: 248, 175 - 135)*

*Mary knew that Alan would soon make his bid ... But he **would have to try** it, his mind made up by love. - Jenže on se o to **bude muset pokusit**, neboť jeho mysl je ovládána láskou. (AM: 122, 122 - 154)*

*Trudy **would have to be moving** too: any trouble and the girls were out. - Trudy **bude muset taky odejít**. (AM: 101, 100 - 148)*

In six cases (DA: 5, IS: 1) WOULD was used to express the conditional. In five cases it was translated into Czech as MUSET + *by*.

*I would **have to pay** him full wage. - **Musel bych mu dávat plný plat**. (DA: 126, 249 - 81)*

*The ship **would have to stop** - **Lod' by musela zastavit**. (DA: 69, 61 - 32)*

Once it was translated as MUSET in the past tense:

*An idea would have struck him and **he would have to let** Gellert **know** immediately - Něco ho prostě napadlo a **musel se** okamžitě se svým nápadem **svěřit**. (RO: 291, 307 - 212)*

And in one case there was no explicit modal expression and it was not in the conditional mood.

*What if the boy lost? Then we **would have to rush** him to the hospital in the Cadillac that he had not won. - Pak se s ním **poženeme** do nemocnice v cadillaku, který nevyhrál. (DA: 36, 31 - 6)*

In two cases (IS) WOULD was used to express a past habit and HAVE TO was once translated as MUSET and once without the use of any modal expression.

*And most frustrating of all **would be having to witness** at the conclusion otherwise decent employees shaking their heads ... - A nejhorší bylo, když jsem **sledoval**, jak na závěr všech těch historek jindy vcelku rozumní kolegové potřásali hlavou ... (IS: 30, 26 - 4)*

*... so that I and the likes of Mr Graham **would have to share** the frustrating experience ... - Takže mne i třeba pana Grahama dosti otravovalo, když jsem o něm **museli poslouchat** jednu historku za druhou ... (IS: 30, 26 - 5)*

Form **HAVING**

The form HAVING appeared 7 times (IS: 6 – 15, 45, 59, 96, 97, 103; DA: 1 - 50) in the Material. In six cases as a part of a complex construction and once as a part of the present progressive tense (IS). In the last case it was translated into Czech as MUSET and HAVING was used to emphasize an activity in progress at the moment. In the Czech translation this fact was reflected in an adverb *ted'*.

*...and he's **having to endure** Harry's speeches as a result. - ...a **ted' musí snášet** Harryho rčení. (IS: 200, 144 - 103)*

In the former cases HAVING TO was translated as MUSET four times (DA: 1, IS: 2) and two times without any explicit expression of modality.

*She never liked to break her enjoyment by **having to stop** while she wondered what to play next. - Nechtěla si kazit radost tím, že **by musela přestat** a přemýšlet, co hrát dál. (DA: 89, 341 - 50)*

*... so that his lordship soon found himself **having to listen** to some more of - a tak se jeho lordstvo rázem octlo v situaci, kdy **muselo vyslechnout** ... (IS: 95, 72 - 59)*

*... that, for all their **having to work** at an exhausting rate, they could feel great pride ... - ...že práce **bude** sice vyčerpávající, ale zato budou hrdí ... (IS: 81, 61 - 45)*

*One would have thought that **having to abandon** the Ford on some lonely hill -
Člověk by si pomyslel, že když **nechá** auto někde na samotě na kopci ... (IS: 189,
136 - 96)*

8.3.3 Interpretation C: Logical Necessity

Although HAVE TO is rarely used to express Logical Necessity there were three examples (AM, IS, RO) of HAVE TO with meaning C found in the Material. One of them is translated into Czech once as *určitě*, once as *MUSET* and once without the use of a modal expression.

*Were things changeable? They **had to be**. - Daly se vůbec věci změnit? - **Určitě ano**. (AM: 67, 68 - 96)*

*...he **had to be real**: he had just dived into the pool ... - ale věděl, že musí být skutečně tady ... (RO: 302, 318 - 230)*

*And to think we **have to be** seen by the world to be arm in arm with them. - Když si pomyslím, že jsme s nimi jedna ruka a svět se na to **dívá**. (IS: 79, 60 - 40)*

According to Quirk (1985: 226) "in the logical necessity sense, *have (got) to* is rather more emphatic than *must*, and is found chiefly in AmE". Since the Material contains excerpts from British fiction only, HAVE TO in meaning C can't be restricted to AmE. In the first sentence the reason for the choice of HAVE TO is mainly grammatical. The form HAD TO expresses future in the past. In this case if MUST were used, it would have to stay in its basic form and it's location in the past would not be clearly marked. The form MUST HAVE is also not possible. Although it has clear past reference it has only this and can't be used to refer to a future event in the past. HAD TO, on the other hand is capable of referring to a future event in the past and is therefore the most suitable and natural choice in the given context.

In the second sentence HAVE TO could be replaced by MUST and any clear reason for the choice of HAVE TO in this particular utterance has not been found.

8.3.4 Special Examples

*Listen, I **have got** something to tell you. - Poslyš, **musím** ti něco říct. (DA: 105, 19 - 63)*

*No doubt, it **has to do** with late hour. - Jistě to **souvisí** s pokročilou hodinou ... (IS: 189, 135 - 94)*

*...dignity **has to do** crucially with a butler's ability not to ... - ... důstojnost majordoma v zásadě **znamená** umění neopustit ... (IS: 43, 35 - 13)*

*... which were indeed terrible things because they **had to do** with physical injury... - ...a byly opravdu hrozné, protože se **týkaly** rychle způsobeného zranění ... (DA: 330, 200 - 176)*

*Such a pity you **have to retire** already. - Škoda, že už **chcete** jít ... (IS: 202, 145 - 105)*

*As you might guess, I **am having to keep** entirely to myself. - Jak jste patrně vytušili, **žiji** sám pro sebe.... (DA: 236, 331 - 145)*

In all the cases in this group (except for the last two) the form HAVE TO is different from the one discussed so far and used to express obligation. The form HAVE TO being discussed now is HAVE + object + *to* + verb. Dušková (1988: 178) says about this form that “následuje-li infinitiv za předmětem, jde o lexikální have s významem “mít”, při prepozici podmětu není zřejmé, o kterou vazbu jde”³⁹. If the infinitive follows an object, it is a case of a lexical verb *have* with the meaning “mít”, if the object is found in preposition then this form can't be distinguished from *have to* for obligation. The first sentence is a clear example of this form. It is, therefore, surprising that it is translated as MUSET into Czech although it is not supposed to be used to express obligation. When looking closer, however, at the interpretation of the meaning of this particular phrase, the translation may not seem so surprising any longer. If one has information “to tell so somebody” it can be assumed that the information is seen to be of interest or importance for that somebody, at least by the speaker. And if the speaker believes so than he necessarily has to come to a conclusion that he must pass the information on to the listener. The connection between HAVE + Object + TO + verb and HAVE TO for obligation is crucial when looking for the reasons why HAVE TO is closely related in meaning to

³⁹ if the infinitive follows an object, it is a case of a lexical verb *have* with the meaning “mít”, if the object is found in pre-position, then this form can't be distinguished from *have to* for obligation.

MUST and therefore used to express obligation in English (and also in Czech as will be illustrated when discussing SHOULD later in the paper).

The following three sentences represent a slightly different case. There is no explicitly expressed object in the form. It is, however, implicitly included. *No doubt, it has to do with late hour.* = *No doubt it has **something** to do with late hour.* In this case (due to the not explicitly expressed Object) HAVE TO DO is ambiguous between HAVE something TO DO and HAVE TO for obligation. In the first sentence this ambiguity, however, does not seem to cause any troubles because both phrases are close in meaning: *jistě to má co do činění s pokročilou hodinou* means basically the same as *jistě se to musí týkat pokročilé hodiny* and this example can be again used to illustrate at least one of the possible reasons why HAVE TO is used to express obligation in English. In the other two sentences the ambiguity is resolved by the context because in these cases the interpretation of the obligation is not possible.

The following sentence is interesting because of the progressive form of HAVE TO which is not very common. In this case HAVE TO has an advantage over MUST because it can be used in a progressive form. As it has been discussed previously, HAVE TO usually has present reference but the lexical verb usually has future reference and often the whole verb phrase is understood as referring to the future. In this context, however, what is needed is a verb phrase with present reference, which a progressive form can explicitly express.

The Czech translation of the last sentence differs significantly in meaning from the English original. Instead of some means to express obligation a verb CHTÍT is used, which in Czech is used to express meaning similar English verb WANT. There does not seem to be any structural reason for the difference between the expected and the actual Czech translations, and moreover, the difference in meaning is so big, that it is very unlikely that it could be explained by the structural differences between the two languages.

A summary of the all the examples of HAVE TO in the form *HAVE TO* found in the English fiction and their corresponding translations is presented in Table 5, an analogical summary for the form *HAD TO* is illustrated in Table 6. Table 7 presents a summary of other forms of HAVE TO.

HAVE TO: 53				
meaning	number	translation	number	
A	30	MUSET	17	
		MÍT	1	
		<i>stačit, jen</i>	2	
		<i>být donucen</i>	1	
		<i>potřebovat</i>	1	
		lexical verb	present	4
			future	4
+ opinion	8	MUSET	6	
		present	1	
		nutno	1	
B	14	MUSET	9	
		<i>je třeba je nutno ...</i>	4	
		MÍT	1	
		<i>jen</i>	1	
C	1	present	1	

Table 5: Summary of HAVE TO (EN – CZ)

HAD TO: 48			
meaning	number	translation	number
A	10	MUSET	3
		past	3
			4
B	35	MUSET	22
		MÍT	1
		<i>stačit jen</i>	7
		<i>být donucen</i>	2
		<i>být třeba</i>	1
		<i>past tense</i>	2
C	2	MUSET	1
		lexical verb	1
D (as MUST)	2	MUSET	2

Table 6: Summary of HAD TO (EN – CZ)

HAVE TO:B – other forms: 48				
form	number	translation		number
having	7	MUSET		5
		lexical verb		2
will have to	7	MUSET	future	8
			present	1
would have to	17			
sequence of tenses	8	MUSET	future	8
conditional	7	MUSET cond.		6
		future		1
past habit	2	MUSET past		2

Table 7: Other forms of HAVE TO (EN – CZ)

9 HAVE TO (CZ-EN)

In the section of the empirical part dealing with the verb phrase HAVE TO in the translations of Czech fiction into English the same categories as the ones used for the translation in the opposite direction were retained.

- A. Necessity to act – authority other than the speaker
- B. Requirement – general, public
- C. Logical necessity

9.1 Form HAVE TO

9.1.1 Interpretation A: Necessity to act – authority other than the speaker

In the material there appeared nine (HR: 1, VI: 6, KL: 2) cases of *have to* with this meaning. Out of the nine cases in seven cases (VI: 5 – 21, 45, 91, 92, 93; KL: 2 – 119, 131) HAVE TO was used as a translation of Czech *muset*.

Proč **musěj** moje děti zpívat ve sboru, když ve sboru zpívat nechtěj. – Why do all my kids **have to** sing in the choir(VI: 165, 138 – 92)

Asi se **musí** pít na místě. – I guess you **have to** drink it on the spot. (KL: 136, 128 – 131).

Once HAVE TO was used as the translation of MÍT (VI):

Mám doma ještě nějakou práci. – There's a job I still **have to do** at home. (VI: 136, 113 – 73)

The basic distinction between MUST and HAVE TO in English is sometimes reflected in Czech in the distinction between MUSET and MÍT. In the sentence **Mám** doma ještě nějakou práci the verb MÍT clearly illustrates that the obligation to do the work comes not from the speaker but from somebody else. If the obligation came from the speaker, it would be expressed by MUSET, e.g. Zítřa **musím** být ve škole dřív, abych si stihla připravit věci na hodinu. – it is clearly my decision, while Zítřa **mám** být ve škole dřív. – somebody ordered me to do so.

The last example belonging to this group was also translated by means of a modal verb, but with the opposite polarity.

...takže třeba lepší koňak je dva kilometry od hranice Cognaku, už se to **nesmí** jmenovat koňak, ale brandy. – ...and even though the best cognac comes from two kilometres outside the border of Cognac it still **has to be called** brandy... (HR: 148, 62 – 53)

Into this category there can be included one more example, previously in the paper marked as 'opinion'; it means *have to* + a verb of reporting:

Musím říct, že pro to prvenství dělal opravdu všechno. – And I **have to** say, he did his very utmost to retain his preminence. (VI: 95, 80 – 48)

In this case HAVE TO has the same meaning as MUST.

9.1.2 Interpretation D: Necessity to act – speaker's authority

There was an extra example (VI: 1) found where HAVE TO was used with the same meaning as MUST – therefore the obligation was clearly coming from the speaker:

*Vyřídte jí, že trvám na tom, abyste teď ze začátku **zůstávali** doma ... - Tell her I insist you **have to stay** at home for the first sessions ... (VI: 30, 25 – 10)*

The explanation of this phenomenon might be as follows. First, as it has already been mentioned in the theory, the original clear distinction between MUST and HAVE TO is getting fuzzier, with the tendency for HAVE TO to become more frequent and to be used even in the cases which used to be reserved for MUST, since MUST is felt as too strong and authoritative. A second reason might be the presence of the verb INSIST which itself expresses obligation and since it is used in the first person, also the source of modality. If MUST, which also clearly expresses the source of modality, was used, then the information about the source of modality would be expressed twice.

9.1.3 Interpretation B: Requirement – general, public

In the Material there were found twenty - five examples of HAVE TO (KL: 13, VI: 7, HR: 4, KU: 1) with this meaning. In sixteen cases (KL: 10 – 4, 22, 39, 44, 56, 64, 80, 121, 138, 144; VI: 5 – 25, 32, 42, 50, 101; HR: 2 – 1, 30) they corresponded to Czech MUSET.

*Někdo to zase **musí podstoupit** a **musí to být** hrozně pomalý a strašný umírání. – Someone **has to take it** upon himself and it **has to be** a very slow and dreadful death. (KL: 155, 144 – 144)*

*Umělec **musí pít**, protože vidí hlouběji než jiní. – The artist **has to drink** because ... (VI: 82, 68 – 42)*

In four of these sixteen examples (KL: 3, VI: 1) it was not clearly interpretation B, but an interpretation somewhere between B and A = obligation coming from the speaker.

*Ale za ta prkna **se přece musí** někomu **zaplatit**. – But surely we **have got to pay** somebody for the wood. (KL: 124, 134 – 121)*

*Tiše, pane Ivane, **musíte** strašně **tiše**, oni za chvíli přijdou. – You **have to be quiet** as a mouse ... (KL: 66, 59 – 56)*

It is natural because modality can in its extreme be seen as one general function within which the individual modal expressions describe its particular degrees on one common scale. Another reason might be that the meaning is in fact closer to MUST because of the already discussed tendency. In Czech the fact, that although it is the speaker who states the obligation, it is perceived as a general requirement because in this society everything is gained for money, is emphasised by means of the passive construction (the first example sentence).

In the remaining eight cases a modal verb was used only in English while in Czech there was no modal expression used. In two cases (HR: 1, KL: 1) in the Czech sentence there was a main verb with future reference:

*Chud'ato drž se, jseš malej, z malýho a' to někam chud'ato **dotáhneš**, já za tebou přijdu! – Poor little fellow, just stick to it. You are small so **you've got to try hard to make** something of yourself ... (HR: 195, 83 – 66)*

In five cases (KL: 4 – 3, 26, 107, 126, VI: 1 - 61) HAVE TO corresponded to a main verb with present reference and once with future reference:

*Nazdar, **řve** táta, proč vždycky řve tak nahlas? – ...dad yells – why **does** he always **have to yell** so loud? (VI: 120, 100 – 61)*

*Je to zajímavý život, řekl jsem, spisovatel **je** trochu jako dobrodruh. – And a writer **has to be** a bit of adventurer. (KL: 37, 31 – 26)*

*Prosím vás, Mistře. **Napišu** Lojzíkovi do Londýna, on mi pošle, co budu potřebovat. – Oh that. **All I have to do is drop a line** to old Alois in London and he will send me whatever is needed. (KL: 17, 13 – 3)*

In the last two cases (HR: 1 – 34; KU: 1 - 60) from this group it corresponded once to the word STAČIT and once to NEZBÝVAT:

*...a **stačí přijít** a zatáhne za provázek a figurína jako dětský balónek se stáhne ... - and **all you have to do is come and pull on the right string and the mannequin** ... (HR: 155, 31 – 34)*

*Ale protože hluchnou, nezbyvá jim, než si ji pouštět hlasitěji. – But because they are going deaf it **has to be played** louder still. (KU: 106, 93 – 60)*

The correlation between *all have to* in English and *stačit* in Czech has already been discussed. As it can be illustrated on the last of the previous three examples, although STAČIT or NEZBÝVAT are most frequent ways, they are by no means the only possibilities.

9.1.4 Interpretation C: Logical necessity

There were only two cases (VI: 1, HR: 1) of HAVE TO with this interpretation both used as the translations of Czech MUSET:

*Jde to vůbec, psát o sebevraždě? – **Musí to jít.** – Is it possible to write about suicide? – **It has to be.** (VI: 61, 51 – 30)*

*...a řekl mi, to **musíš** hned **poznat** zlučnickáře, jen se na hosta podívej. - , and he would say, You **have to learn to recognize** a gallbladder case when you see one. (HR: 205, 96 – 75)*

Even the boundary between deontic and epistemic modality, although for the purpose of comprehensible classification they are presented as two distinct kinds, is sometimes not clear-cut. It can be due to the fact that logical necessity can be sometimes seen as a conclusion at which a person was forced to arrive at by outer circumstances. *Is it possible to write about suicide? – It certainly is* = the circumstances have to allow it, or nothing can prevent a person from writing about it. In the second sentence it even might be possible that the translator misunderstood the original sentence and translated it as deontic modality while thanks to the surrounding co-text it was supposed to be understood as epistemic modality. The sentence actually says: *look at the guest – you certainly see that he is a gallbladder case*. The sentence, however, also suggests that if he can't see it now he has to pay attention to it. So HAVE TO in this sentence really combines both deontic and epistemic modality at the same time.

9.2 Form HAD TO⁴⁰

9.2.1 Interpretation A: Necessity to act – authority other than the speaker

There were eighteen examples (HR: 13 – 4, 5, 6, 55, 59, 60, 73, 99, 101, 103, 110, 124, 125; KU: 4 – 14, 15, 38, 42; VI: 1 - 86) with this meaning found in the Material.

In seventeen cases they were translations of MUSET:

***Musily** jsme za pochodu **zpívat**. – We **had to sing** as we marched. (KU: 26, 18 – 15)*

*...a že si toho **musím vážit**, zrovna tak, jako celý život z toho žil ten Zdeňkův slavný číšník, který obsluhoval Ferdinanda d Este. - ...and I **had to appreciate** that, like Zdenek's famous waiter who ... (HR: 189, 76 – 59)*

***Musíme** cenu samozřejmě **zaokrouhlovat**. – Naturally it went without saying that we **had to** ... (KL: 53, 45 – 43)*

In one case HAD TO was a translation on Czech MÍT:

*...kteří mají ve svých jménech nástin slovanského kořene tak jako já, číšník v oddělení pět, kde jsem **měl na starosti** pět stolů v poledne ... - ...so I became a waiter in section five and I **had to cover** five tables at noon ... (HR: 237, 135 – 99)*

9.2.2 Interpretation B: Requirement – general, public

There were seventy –four examples (HR: 28, KL: 23, VI: 9, KU: 11) of HAD TO with this meaning found in the Material. Forty-seven of them (HR:18 – 11, 14, 15, 16, 48, 49, 58, 64, 67, 72, 74, 85, 86, 97, 117, 121, 123, 143; KL: 15 – 8, 24, 34, 52, 55, 73, 76, 91, 96, 108, 117, 125, 132, 142, 143; VI: 8 – 7, 59, 70, 74, 87, 89, 94, 122; KU: 6 – 7, 8, 9, 25, 26, 27) were translations of Czech MUSET in the past tense:

***Musil zastavit** auto před křižovatkou a počkat půl hodiny než přejedou. – He **had to stop** his car and wait a half an hour before they passed. (KU: 40, 33 – 27)*

*Ale pan Karel dal pěstí tomu podomkovi, že ten se svalil a **musela přijít** policie... - ...and the police **had to be called** (HR: 203, 93 – 72)*

⁴⁰ this form will refer to all past and perfect forms of HAVE TO

*V kvartě propadl z fyziky a matiky a **musel** gymnázium **opustit**. - ...and **had to leave** the school. (KL: 127, 117 – 108)*

*Vzhledem k větru jsem **musel** trochu **křičet**. - Because of the wind I **had to shout** slightly. (VI: 138, 115 – 74)*

Three examples (KL: 2 – 43, 137; HR: 1 – 122) corresponded to Czech MUSET in the present tense:

***Musíme** cenu samozřejmě zaokrouhlovat... - Naturally, it went without saying that we **had to** ... (KL: 53, 45 – 43)*

In the remaining twenty-four examples (HR: 10, KL: 8, VI: 1, KU: 6) there were no modal expressions used in Czech. In thirteen cases (KL: 5 – 65, 69, 83, 115, 120; HR: 5 – 29, 91, 102, 115, 139; KU: 3 – 3, 12, 36) HAD TO corresponded to a lexical verb in either the present or past tense, two of the verb phrases (HR: 1, KL: 1) were in the passive:

*Křičela tolik, že Tomáš **oddaloval hlavu** od její tváře. - She screamed so hard that Tomas **had to turn his head** away. (KU: 66, 54 – 36)*

*Jednou **jsem vozil** **babičku** asi dvě hodiny z vyšetření na vyšetření... - On one occasion I **had to push an old lady** in her trolley ... (KL: 104, 95 – 83)*

*...se s ubohými Němci děje tohle to, co jsem viděl na vlastní oči, což potvrzovalo všechno to, proč **byly zabrány** Sudety - ...why Sudetenland **had to be taken back**. (HR: 226, 124 – 91)*

In four cases (HR: 2 – 38, 96; KL: 1 – 89; KU: 1 - 67) HAD TO was preceded by *all* and it corresponded to Czech STAČIT:

*...že **stačilo natáhnout** ruku a tu košili vzít - ...when **all she had to do was reach out** and pick it off.. (HR: 162, 40 – 38)*

***Stačilo natáhnout ruku** a obejmout ji ... - **All I had to do was reach out** and embrace her. (KL: 107, 98 – 89)*

In three cases (VI: 1 – 115; KU: 1 – 56; KL: 1 - 47) HAD TO corresponded to BÝT TŘEBA:

Sabina se domnívá, že **je třeba mít** k přidělenému osudu korektní vztak. – Sabina believed that she **had to assume** the correct attitude to her unchosen fate. (KU: 103, 89 – 56)

...ale k tomu **je třeba sehnat** volné sáčky. - ...but for that you **had to have** empty bags. (KL: 58, 50 – 47)

In Czech the use of the passive construction emphasises the fact that in interpretation B = general requirement there is no concrete authority imposing the obligation, and it is an important function of the passive to enable not to mention the agent.

The last four cases (KL: 2, KU: 1, HR: 1) represent a mixture of various means used in Czech:

Pokračoval jsem v cestě jen **s největším sebezapřením**. – I **had to force myself** to continue the journey. (KL: 127, 117 – 109)

Here Czech *sebezapření* is used instead of the modal expression since it can be interpreted as an inner obligation not to do something, in this case *not to stop*.

In the following two examples a different polarity was used in English and in Czech. Once a semantically negative verb *ZBAVIT* was used followed by the noun *nutnost* which can be considered a modal means. In the second case verbal negation was used together with the verb *SMĚT*.

Karenin mu dlouho vyskakoval k tváři, takže se na dlouhou dobu **zbavil nutnosti** něco říct. - ...so it was a while before they **had to make** any overtures to each other. (KU: 90, 76 – 49).

Teprve teď mi došlo, jak člověk, který dělá takové řemeslo, **nesmí si připustit** ani špetku studu. - ...that anyone in that line of work **had to be** quite shameless. (KL: 57, 49 – 46)

In the last case the phrase *had to make sure* was used as a translation of **mají na starosti**:

...jak když je nějaký státní pohřeb, jak zase **mají na starosti**, aby když je vláda na pohřbu, nikdo nepovoláný se tam nedostal ... - ...whenever there was a state funeral that members of the government attended, they **had to make sure** no unauthorised persons were allowed in ... (HR: 192, 80 – 62)

9.2.3 Interpretation D: Necessity to act – speaker's authority

Since deontic MUST does not have its own past form, the suppletive HAD TO is used for deontic MUST with past reference. The three previously discussed interpretations cover also the meaning of MUST: B- requirement and C- logical necessity. These two interpretations are common to both MUST and HAVE TO. For HAD TO, therefore, one more category is needed: D, which is in fact A category of Must with past reference. There were sixteen examples (HR: 5 – 13, 33, 54, 90, 140; KL: 5 – 22, 40, 57, 63, 88; KU: 4 – 10, 45, 48, 53; VI: 2 – 80, 110) of HAD TO with this meaning found in the Material and twelve of (HR: 3, KL: 4, KU:4, VI:1) them were translations of Czech MUSET:

*Večer, řekla, **musí být** se svým mužem. – Oh no, in the evening she **had to be** with her husband. (KL: 33, 27 – 22)*

*...přesvědčena ve svém snu, že jí chce odejít navždycky a že ho **musí zadržet**. - ...convinced in her sleep that he meant to leave her for good and she **had to stop** him ... (KU: 23, 15 – 10)*

*A já jsem věděl, že ji **musím chránit** a hájit proti všem Čechům... – I knew that I **had to defend** her against any Czechs ... (HR: 228, 124 – 90)*

The remaining four cases (HR: 2, KL: 1, VI: 1) were translations of Czech sentences without any modal expression:

***Cítil** však **potřebu objasnit** účel svého výstředního nákupu a učinil mi malou přednášku ... - He **felt he had to explain** to me the purpose of his rather outlandish purchase ... (VI: 195, 164 – 110)*

*Počítal jsem, jak jsem uměl, řekl jsem s náhlým vzdorem. – Well I did the best I could, I said, suddenly feeling I **had to defend** myself ... (KL: 67, 60 – 57)*

9.3 Form HAVING TO

There were six examples (HR: 1 – 45; KL: 2 – 21, 116; VI: 2 – 49, 63) of *having to* found in the Material which expressed necessity. In all cases it was used with the interpretation B. In two cases *having* was used as a part of the progressive tenses, in three cases it was used on its own as a simple non-finite verb phrase. In two cases (VI: 2) it corresponded to Czech MUSET:

*...zase se už **musím usmívat**, když nechci ... - Again I **am having to smile** when I do not feel like it. (VI: 121, 101 – 63)*

Three times (HR: 2, KL: 1) it corresponded to a lexical verb in the indicative mood:

*...a **pořád obnovujeme** kupky sena, každých čtrnáct dní, staré kupky se odvezou a místo nich se přiveze čerstvě posečené ... - We **were always having to replace** the haystacks, because every two weeks the old ones were taken away ... (HR: 172, 53 – 45)*

*Tak bych si přál s ní strávit alespoň jediný večer, objímat se ve tmě a nikam nespíchat. - ...to embrace her in the dark **without having to** hurry ... (KL: 33, 27 – 21)*

9.4 Form WILL HAVE TO

There were eight examples (HR: 2 – 21, 131; KL: 2 – 78, 146; VI: 3 – 4, 51, 85; KU: 1 – 47) of *will have to* with this meaning found in the Material. In all cases it was used with the interpretation B. In six cases (VI: 2, KL: 2, KU: 1, HR: 1) it corresponded to Czech MUSET in the future tense:

*Zdá se, že letos ještě **budeme muset učit**. – It looks as if we **will still have to teach** this year. – (VI: 155, 130 – 85)*

*Nezlob se Karenine, ještě jednou **budeš muset změnit** byt. - It looks as though you **will have to move** again. (KU: 89, 75 – 47)*

In one case it corresponded to Czech MUSET in the present tense:

*Chci-li ji dostat celou, **musím postupovat** opatrně. – If I want to get it out whole, I **will have to proceed** with utmost caution. (VI: 19, 15 – 4)*

In the last case it corresponded to a main verb in the future tense:

*... a on jí s ohromnou laskavostí říkal, Náno blbá, já **odepnu** pásek a dám ti přes hubu... - **I'll have to take off** my belt and slap your face (HR: 296, 211 – 131)*

9.5 Form WOULD HAVE TO

There were thirty-seven examples (HR: 16, KL: 10, VI: 6, KU: 5) of *would have to* found in the Material. All of them were used with interpretation B. The examples were further classified into the following categories: **sequence of tenses** – where it is an alternative to *will have to* used after a reporting verb with past reference, **conditional** used, apart from the fact that it has a function different from the other two, for the purpose of more convenient comparison with Czech since in Czech conditional is a distinct verb mood, and **past habit**, which is one of the typical functions of the modal verb WOULD.

9.5.1 Sequence of tenses

There were fifteen examples (HR: 6 – 23, 24, 93, 100, 127, 141; KL: 3 – 49, 92, 105; VI: 4 – 35, 47, 56, 66; KU: 2 – 20, 46) of *would have to* with this function found in the Material. In seven cases (HR: 2, KL: 2, VI: 2, KU: 1) it corresponded to Czech MUSET in the future tense:

*... a že je **bude muset strhávat** ze sebe jako starý plakát. – so tightly to her body that she **would have to tear** it off like an old poster. (HR: 95, 19 – 23)*

*Ale jedno bylo už jasné: Čechy se **budou muset sklonit** před dobyvatelem. – But one thing was clear: the country **would have to bow** to the conqueror. (KU: 35, 26 – 20)*

In three cases (HR: 2, VI: 1) it corresponded to Czech MUSET in the present tense:

... všichni odkládají to, na co se jednou **musí vyptávat** ... - putting off the questions they **would have to ask** one day ... (HR: 310, 228 – 141)

In one case (KU: 1) it corresponded to Czech MÍT in the present tense:

Má tedy **prožít** celý svůj život ve strachu, že ho ztratí? – **Would she have to live her whole life in fear of losing him?** (KU: 89, 75 – 46)

And in the remaining four cases (HR: 2, KL: 1, VI: 1) it corresponded to a lexical verb in the indicative mood in the future tense (2x) or present tense (2x):

...a řekla mi, že mi nabízí ruku, o kterou ale **půjdu požádat** jejího otce ... - that she wanted to marry me, but **I would have to ask** ... (HR: 240, 139 – 100)

...ale já jsem mu řekl, že tu omluvu nepřijímám, že ještě **uvidíme** ... - ...but I told him I would not accept his apology and that we **would have to see**... (HR: 230, 126 – 93)

9.5.2 Conditional

There were fifteen examples (KL: 6 – 14, 50, 51, 112, 133, 140; HR: 4 – 50, 82, 116, 122; VI: 3 – 81, 82, 78; KU: 2 – 24, 66) of *would have to* with this function found in the Material. In ten cases (HR: 3, KL: 3, VI: 3, KU: 1) it corresponded to Czech MUSET in the conditional mood:

Vždyť **já bych taky musela skočit** z toho okna, kdyby se ti něco stalo. – **I would have to jump out** of the window too ... (KL: 24, 20 – 14)

...a dotáhnout to na tajemníka všech pražských hotelů, to už **by mně museli uznat** – nemilovat, ale respektovat ... - they **would have to respect** me - not love, perhaps, but respect me (HR: 261, 164 – 116)

Kde by sehnal angličtináře? To **by je museli dávat** jako dealerskou provizi. – They **would have to be supplied** as dealer's commission. (VI: 153, 128 – 81)

In three cases (KL: 3) it corresponded to a lexical verb in the conditional mood:

...a já kdybych se pokusil upřesnit svoje pocity, řekl bych, že jsem vnímal přítomnost řádu ... - if I tried to describe my feelings I would have to say I was aware of ... (KL: 154, 142 – 140)

In the remaining example the original and its translation were of different polarity and it corresponded to *nemohl* in Czech:

Kdyby byl někdo tem příběh vymyslíl, nemohl by ho jinak ukončit. – If someone had invented the story, this is how he would have to end it. (KU: 38, 29 – 24)

9.5.3 Past habit

There were seven examples (HR: 7 – 3, 31, 32, 37, 39, 47, 77) of *would have to* with this function found in the Material. In three cases (HR: 3) it corresponded to Czech MUSET in the past tense:

...a babičku voda a déšť lískala do tváře tak, že se někdy musela s tím průvanem servat o tu košili. - ...and the rain would whip Grandma's face so hard that she would have to wrestle the wind for the possession of the shirt. (HR: 162, 40 – 39)

In the other four cases (HR: 5) it corresponded to a lexical verb in the past tense:

... a tak každej ji zase nafukoval svým dechem znovu ... - ... and the air would go out of her, so that each man would have to blow it up himself ... (HR: 154, 29 – 32)

9.6 Interrogative form

There were three examples of HAVE TO (KL: 1 – 30; VI: 1 – 53; KU: 1 – 69) in the interrogative mood, two with interpretation B and one with A found in the Material. In all three cases it corresponded to Czech MUSET:

... ale pak o tom začal pochybovat: musilo to opravdu tak být? – Did it really have to be? (KU: 112, 97 – 69)

Opravdu se za každou cenu musím omlouvat? – Do I really have to apologize each time? (VI: 106, 88 – 53)

9.7 Comparison of HAVE TO and HAVE GOT TO

A thorough study of the differences in the meaning and use between HAVE TO and HAVE GOT TO can be found in Coates (1983). She claims that, semantically, HAVE GOT TO is similar to MUST, which differs from HAVE TO in its subjectivity. “While Root HAVE TO is never subjective (she claims that in the samples she excerpted the speaker is never the source of obligation), but expresses meaning ‘it is necessary for’, Root HAVE GOT TO covers a range of meaning, from subjective to more objective. It is never performative; the majority of examples are similar to those in the ‘skirt’ or Root MUST - that is, they can be paraphrased ‘it is essential that’” (Coates 1983: 53). Coates further adds that “HAVE GOT TO is typically associated with an animate subject and cannot have habitual meaning” (Coates 1983: 53, 54). The latter point has been also arrived at by Huddleston and Pullum (2002), Dušková (1972). Dušková, however, unlike Coates still considers HAVE GOT TO objective – “necessity imposed by circumstances“, and therefore closer in meaning to HAVE TO than to MUST. Palmer further adds that only HAVE TO and not HAVE GOT TO can express actuality (Palmer 1979: 92).

For the purpose of the comparison only the examples of HAVE TO and HAVE GOT TO in the present tense and in the affirmative were used, because the choice of either of the two expressions in other forms might be influenced by not semantic, but purely grammatical reasons. In the Material there were fifty-one examples of HAVE TO (AM: 5 – 113, 146, 162, 178, 190; DA: 6 – 31, 71, 77, 123, 124, 150; IS: 11 – 9, 14, 15, 27, 35, 40, 80, 105, 108, 131, 132; RO: 5 – 26, 42, 54, 61, 150; HR: 3 – 34, 53, 75; KL: 12 – 3, 4, 10, 26, 39, 44, 56, 64, 74, 107, 138, 144; KU: 1 – 60; VI: 8 – 30, 32, 42, 45, 48, 50, 100, 101) and twenty-nine examples of HAVE GOT TO (DA: 8 – 36, 63, 113, 114, 161, 171, 172, 177; IS: 2 – 144, 145; RO: 13 – 20, 28, 44, 45, 47, 51, 56, 65, 73, 114, 140, 173, 182; HR: 1, 30, 66; KL: 3 – 80, 121, 131) found.

Although, in general, the tendencies described by Coates could be seen, a number of examples which contradicted them were found. Coates considers HAVE GOT TO subjective, but in eight cases (DA: 3 – 161, 171, 172; IS: 1 -144; RO: 2 – 56, 65; KL: 2 – 121, 131) HAVE GOT TO was objective; the source of the obligation was not the speaker.

*Asi se **musí pít** na místě– I guess **you’ve got to drink** it on the spot. (KL: 136, 128 – 131)*

*We've all **got to put our feet up** at some point. – Všichni to **musíme** někdy **zabalit**. (IS: 256, 182 – 144)*

*You've **got to pay** the funeral parlour. – **Musíš zaplatit** pohřebnímu ústavu. (DA: 254, 362 – 161)*

In one case HAVE GOT TO in addition to being objective appeared with an inanimate subject.

*It **has got to be** me. – **Musím to udělat** já. (RO: 78, 80 – 56)*

And in three cases its interpretation was habitual or near to habitual (IS: 144, 145, KL: 80.)

*...pořádek **musí být**... – We **have got to keep** some kind of order. (KL: 99, 91 – 80)*

As far as the use of HAVE TO is concerned, in nine cases (KL: 4 – 10, 44, 56, 64; IS: 4 – 35, 14, 131, 132; VI: 3 – 25, 32, 48, HR: 1 – 75) the speaker was the source of obligation. In the majority of cases HAVE TO was followed by a verb of reporting. A more detailed discussion of MUST and HAVE TO + a verb of reporting can be found later in the paper.

*...je obraz z literárního hlediska hodně problematický, ale bohužel na něm **musím trvat**... - but I **have to keep** it in ... (VI: 47, 39 – 25)*

*Well, I **have to say** that American chap was quite right. – No, **musím říct**, že ten Američan měl úplnou pravdu. (IS: 234, 168 – 131)*

*Prosím Vás, neodkládejte návštěvu, odborník Vám poradí... - Now, you really **have to understand** that any delay is to be avoided ... (KL: 23, 18 – 10)*

A summary of the all the examples of HAVE TO in the form *HAVE TO* found in the translations of the Czech fiction and their corresponding Czech means is presented in Table 8, an analogical summary for the form *HAD TO* is illustrated in Table 9. Table 10 presents a summary of other forms of HAVE TO.

HAVE TO: 37			
meaning	number	translation	number
A + opinion as MUST	10	MUSET	7
		MÍT	1
		NESMĚT	1
		MUSET	1
		MUSET	1
B	25	MUSET	16
		present	5
		future	6
		<i>nezbývá</i>	2
C	2	MUSET	2

Table 8: A summary of HAVE TO (CZ – EN)

HAD TO: 103			
meaning	number	translation	number
A	18	MUSET	17
		MÍT	1
B	69	MUSET	44
		dif. polarity	2
		lexical verb (present, past, passive)	14
		STAČIT	4
		BÝT TŘEBA	3
		special	2
D (as MUST)	16	MUSET	12
		lexical verb	4

Table 9: A summary of HAD TO (CZ – EN)

HAVE TO-B – other forms: 72				
form	number	translation		number
having	15	MUSET		2
		lexical verb		3
will have to	7	MUSET	future	7
			present	6
would have to	38			
sequence of tenses	16	MUSET	future	7
			present	3
		MÍT		1
		lexical verb	future	2
			present	2
conditional	14	MUSET cond.		10
		different polarity cond.		1
		lexical verb cond.		3
past habit	8	MUSET past		3
		lexical verb past		5
interrogative	3	MUSET		3

Table 10: A summary of other forms of HAVE TO

10 BASIC DIFFERENCES BETWEEN MUST AND HAVE TO

10.1 Summary of the theoretical findings

According to the theory, the basic difference in the non-epistemic use is, apart from the structural reasons such as non existence of certain forms of MUST (e.g. non-finite or progressive), resides in the fact that "*must* is generally subjective, in that it refers to what the speaker thinks is important or essential to do. *Have to*, on the other hand, is more 'objective', i.e. the obligation or compulsion tends to come from a source outside the speaker" Leech (2004: 83).

The matter, however, is not as simple as that. MUST can also be used to express general rule or requirement rather than speaker's authority (interpretation B). This shows that the

above mentioned (and probably best know) distinction applies only to interpretation A and then logically a question could be raised first whether there is any difference between B interpretation of MUST and HAVE TO since both are described by Leech (2004) as “*requirements*”, and then what the relation between B interpretation of MUST and A interpretation of HAVE TO is because they both express **Necessity to Act** imposed by an authority other than the speaker. Palmer (1979: 93) concludes the study of this difference in meaning between MUST and HAVE TO in the following way: "We could, in fact, draw a distinction between three kinds of necessity: deontic (subject oriented), neutral and external, and say that MUST may be either deontic or neutral and HAVE (GOT) TO either neutral or external; negatively, HAVE (GOT) TO is never deontic, MUST never external".

The second difference concerns the different degree of actuality. “In the present tense HAVE TO and HAVE GOT TO imply actuality, while MUST does not. This accounts for the use of HAVE GOT TO in the following example where MUST could not be used: It’s a slow walk down. He’s got to fight his way through the crowds. This refers to a boxer actually in the process of fighting his way through. If MUST had been used it could only refer to the future. (Palmer 1979: 93, 94).

The third difference is connected with the frequency of use. If the actual frequency of use of MUST and HAVE TO is considered, a tendency to replace MUST by HAVE TO when expressing obligation can be observed. According to Leech (2002: 173) "recently "must" in its "obligation" sense has become less common, especially in AmE, perhaps because it tends to imply that the speaker is claiming authority over the addressee...have to, need to or should can be used instead."

What concerns epistemic modality according to Quirk (1985: 226) “have (got) to is rather more emphatic than must, and is found chiefly in American English.”, therefore, since the Material is taken from British fiction, only two examples of interpretation C of HAVE TO were found, which does not offer enough material to investigate any differences.

10.2 Summary of the examples from the Material

10.2.1 The relation between B interpretations of MUST and HAVE TO

When comparing the sentences found in the Material one difference which seems possible to be generalised at least for the majority of the relevant sentences has been found. MUST seems more 'active' while HAVE TO more 'passive' in relation to obligation. This means that MUST is used to express obligation which can be actively responded to – it means actually performed or fulfilled while HAVE TO expresses necessity to face or endure something. In other words MUST expresses necessary course of action related to a certain goal or purpose whereas HAVE TO expresses events inevitably happening and influencing the person(s) involved.

*To support these ladies the men **must** work like slaves ... - Aby pak tyto dámy mohly žít na úrovni, **musí** dřít muži jako otroci ... (DA: 183, 277 - 109)*

*A butler of any duality **must** be seen to inhabit his role ... - Pravý majordom **musí** navenek plně a bezezbytku zaujímat svoji roli ... (IS: 178, 127 - 89)*

*Když na ni nestačím já, **musíš mi pomoci**. – Since I cannot cope with her myself, you **must help** me. (KU: 33, 24 – 18)*

***Musíte domů, spát!** – You **must go** home now ... (KL: 109, 100 – 97)*

*In time, you always **have to hand** it to the past. - Stejně přijde čas, kdy člověk **musí brát** na vědomí minulost. (AM: 76, 76 - 113)*

*We've all **got to put** our feet up at some point - Všichni to **musíme** někdy **zabalit**. (IS: 256, 182 - 144)*

*Je to zajímavý život, řekl jsem, spisovatel **je** trochu jako dobrodruh. – And a writer **has to be** a bit of adventurer. (KL: 37, 31 – 26)*

*...a **stačí přijít** a zatáhne za provázek a figurína jako dětský balónek se stáhne ... - and **all you have to do is come** and pull on the right string and the mannequin ... (HR: 155, 31 – 34)*

The second difference resides in the fact that MUST relates to a particular person(s) or situation(s) while HAVE TO can be used with general meaning.

*An infant nurse at twenty dollars a day **must expect** to be hauled out of bed occasionally. – Dětská ošetřovatelka za dvacet dolarů denně **musí přece počítat** s tím... (DA: 254, 354 – 155)*

*Of course, one **has to expect** such things to occur amongst maids and footmen. – **Musíte přirozeně počítat**, že se podobné věci mezi služkami a sluhy stávají. (IS: 53, 41 – 22)*

*všichni odkládají to, na co se jednou **musí vyptávat** ... - putting off the questions they **would have to ask** one day ... (HR: 310, 228 – 141)*

10.2.2 The relation between B interpretation of MUST and A interpretation of HAVE TO

The relation between B interpretation of MUST and A interpretation of HAVE TO can be seen as functioning on two different levels. Two thirds of the cases of HAVE TO have the interpretation similar to B interpretation of MUST. This can be well exemplified by two sentences taken from Ishiguro, both referring to the obligation imposed by a master or by general requirements of the work on a servant.

*I would return it myself, but I **have got to go** upstairs just now. - Já bych ji uklidila, ale **musím** teď nahoru. (IS: 58, 45 - 27)*

*I do not mean to be rude but I really **must** return upstairs. - Nechci být nezdvořilý, ale **musím** se opravdu vrátit nahoru. (IS: 229, 163 - 124)*

The same interpretation of MUST and HAVE TO can be also found in the following examples:

*I **have to be** there half an hour beforehand for the formalities. - **Měla bych tam být** o půl hodiny dříve, abych vyřídila všechny formality. (DA: 124, 247 - 77)*

*... and therefore they **must** learn to be doubly expert with what they have. - ... a proto se **musí** hodně učit, aby ... (DA: 249, 358 - 157)*

It is also of significance that the majority of these examples of HAVE TO (82 %) were translated into Czech by means of a modal expression, mainly MUSET or MÍT.

The remaining one third of interpretations A of HAVE TO is close in their meaning to B interpretation of HAVE TO in the fact that the obligation is not actively performed, but mainly just passively received, or if any activity is involved then it is a simple activity not requiring much effort. What is also significant is the fact that none of these six sentences was translated into Czech by means of a modal expression and in half of the cases there appeared words similar to *enough*, *jen* and STAČIT.

*That's enough. He **only has to know** what it tastes like. - To stačí. **Stačí**, když se **doví**, jak to chutná. (DA: 221, 315 - 131)*

*It is rather irksome to **have to hear** people talking today as though ... - Dost mi ale vadí, když dnes **poslouchám** lidi, kteří se tváří ... (IS: 144, 104 - 78)*

*...a nice clean tin of maggots arrives by post and all you've **got to do** is slip it in the fishing bag ... - ...přinese pěknou čistounkou pikslu s červama a vy ji **jenom strčíte** do ruksaku ... (DA: 321, 192 - 171)*

10.2.3 Relation between MUST or HAVE TO + verb of reporting

MUST seems to be more frequent with verbs of reporting than HAVE TO. In the English fiction it was 23 : 8, in the Czech fiction 11 : 2. It could be caused by the subjective character of MUST and the objective character of HAVE TO. The modal verbs discussed here usually appeared in the first person and therefore clearly expressed the opinions of the speakers.

Although in many cases there is no difference in meaning between MUST + verb of reporting and HAVE TO + verb of reporting, at least certain tendencies of different use can be inferred. In the Material MUST + verb of reporting was found only in the first or second person, while HAVE TO + verb of reporting appeared also in the third person. This is not surprising and it corresponds to the close relation between MUST and the speaker. With this fact, also the second tendency is connected. MUST is probably rarely found with expressions of regret or in cases where the obligation is in a strong contradiction with the speaker's inner conviction or his/her view of the matter. HAVE TO on the other hand can appear in the third person, often to express speaker's opinion in a generalised, objective way.

*I am sorry, but I **have to say** that I have every trust in his good judgement. - Lituji, ale **musím říci**, že úsudku jeho lordstva bezmezně důvěřuji. (IS: 236, 169 - 132)*

*... it **has to be said** that certain employers have done much to encourage these sorts of trends. - ... ale **je nutno říci**, že někteří zaměstnavatelé ... (IS: 35, 30 - 9)*

10.2.4 Relation between MUST or HAVE TO from the viewpoint of actuality

This matter can be studied on the following three examples:

*Now, you **must take** good care of yourself. - A teď, **buďte** na sebe **opatrná**. (IS: 252, 179 - 132)*

*You **must stop thinking** like that. - **Přestaňte myslet** na takové věci (DA: 241, 335 - 147)*

***Musíte** domů, **spát!** - You **must go home** now ... (KL: 109, 100 - 97)*

*She always received the same answer - that she **must continue to wait**. - Pokaždé dostala stejnou odpověď - **že musí čekat**. (DA: 128, 251 - 85)*

*Proč **musěj** moje děti zpívat ve sboru, když ve sboru zpívat nechtěj. - Why do all my kids **have to** sing in the choir (VI: 165, 138 - 92)*

The possibility of the use of MUST as such with future reference is questionable. As the four sentences above from the Material confirm and as I believe Palmer (although he and other linguists (Chalker, Leech) state that MUST can be used with future reference) actually means it, the lexical verb used in a verb phrase with MUST in the majority of cases, if not always, refers to the future. The time reference of MUST itself is difficult to determine. While the whole verb phrase is predominantly used with future reference, therefore the required action will be realized sometime in the future, the obligation expressed by MUST is already existent and known, and therefore present.

In the first three sentences MUST, as is clearly suggested by the Czech translations, is used to modify actions referring to the future. In the fourth sentence what is required by the context is the actuality of the whole verb phrase. Therefore a progressive form of MUST should be theoretically used, which is not possible. An interesting way out was found. In English the action itself is connected with the verb *continue* which expresses duration in its semantics. The actuality is therefore expressed in this verb not in MUST itself. The fact

that the use of the additional verb was required in English, while in Czech the actuality is expressed by the verb *čekat* itself supports the assumption that MUST on its own can't be used to express actuality in English. HAVE TO, on the other hand, is capable of expressing actuality as the last example sentence demonstrates.

10.2.5 The frequency of the use of MUST and HAVE TO

According to the theory, HAVE TO should be more frequent. The frequency of occurrence of the two modal expressions in the Material was as follows. Altogether there appeared 329 examples of MUST and 377 examples of HAVE TO. If all the cases of Logical Necessity for expression of which HAVE TO is not used in British English are subtracted the numbers are as follows: MUST - 154 and HAVE TO - 377. If we further subtract all cases expressing opinion, which is also mainly a domain of MUST we get MUST - 120 and HAVE TO - 368. Thus when comparing areas where both MUST and HAVE TO are used, HAVE TO really substantially prevails. If we, however, consider MUST and HAVE TO only in the Present Simple (to create fair conditions because it is the only form in which MUST can be used) we get MUST - 226 and HAVE TO - 90. The ratio becomes completely opposite. It therefore seems that the prevalence of HAVE TO is grammatical more than anything else. If there, therefore, exists a tendency that HAVE TO starts to replace MUST even in contexts which were previously a domain of MUST, it really has to be rather recent, because the Material covering the period from the seventies till now does not reflect such a tendency.

11 MUST AND HAVE TO AND THEIR COUNTERPARTS IN CZECH – DEONTIC MODALITY

In Czech the basic distinction between obligation imposed by the speaker and obligation imposed by someone other than the speaker is not so explicitly expressed. If one consults English – Czech and Czech – English Dictionaries, not much can be learnt about the above suggested differences: e.g. in Fronek's English-Czech Dictionary (1998) HAVE has, as its eleventh meaning, the meaning *muset* and in the Czech-English Dictionary (2000) the following is stated "muset = have to; (in the present tense only) must; in Big English-Czech Dictionary (1992) the first example for *must* does not suggest the connection

between *must* and the speaker at all: *all men must die*. Also in studies on modality in Czech there is nothing about different lexical items used to express obligation imposed by the speaker and obligation imposed by someone other than the speaker. Benešová (1971: 130) differentiates between cases where “the initiator of modality and the initiator of the activity is the same or different”. But the verbs used are the same: *muset*, *být nucen*.

This does not, however, mean that no difference at all is reflected in Czech translations of these English verbs, and that, as it might be the conclusion arrived at after consulting an English-Czech dictionary, both MUST and HAVE TO are always translated as MUSET into Czech.

When studying the above determined interpretations of MUST and HAVE TO and their translations into Czech the following tendencies have been found so far:

1. MUST is more often translated as MUSET than HAVE TO.

EN - CZ

When comparing the absolute numbers this conclusion may not seem true, because 70% of cases of MUST and 65% of cases of HAVE TO were translated as MUSET into Czech. But as it has already been discussed in connection of the frequency of use of these verbs, HAVE TO is often used instead of MUST for grammatical reasons. When considering HAVE TO in the present tense, only 57% of cases were translated as MUSET.

CZ / EN

In this direction of comparison 58% of MUST and 65% of HAVE TO corresponded to MUSET. When considering HAVE TO in the present form, it was 62%.

2. HAVE TO is more often translated without any explicit expression of modality.

EN - CZ

Such translation represented 3% of cases for MUST and 23% for HAVE TO in a present form and 21% for HAVE TO in general.

CZ / EN

Such translation represented in 8% of cases for MUST and 23% for HAVE TO in the present tense (30% for HAVE TO in a present form) and 18 % for HAVE TO in general.

The two above mentioned points are connected with one another and therefore they will be reflected on together. The reasons lie in the two discussed differences between MUST and HAVE TO – namely in the deontic and more “active” function of MUST. Since MUST is connected with the speaker, the concrete person imposing the obligation, expecting the **active** reaction, therefore what is expected from the hearer needs to be expressed explicitly. HAVE TO on the other hand is more often connected with general rules, or even the most reasonable courses of action, which does not necessarily require **any active** reaction. It expresses necessity required by the situation rather than active obligation. Than it's enough to describe the necessity as such without explicitly expressed modality:

*Usually we find a body and then **have to** look for a murderer. – Obvykle najdeme tělo a pak **hledáme** vraha. (AM: 113, 112 – 146)*

3. Only MUST was translated into Czech by the imperative

*You **must stop** thinking like that. - **Přestaňte** myslet na takové věci. (DA: 241, 335)*

*Now, you **must take good care** of yourself - A teď, **buďte** na sebe opatrná. (IS: 252, 179)*

*You **must excuse** me, but I ... - No ...**nežlobte** se, ale ... (IS: 248, 176 – 136)*

*... but as soon as I die, you **must put on** a pair of shoes and **walk down** the village ... - ale až umřu, **obuj** si boty, **sejdi** dolů do vesnice ... (DA: 252, 360 – 159)*

This would need to be studied on a more representative sample of language but the examples from the Material suggest that the imperative in English has more immediate (what concerns the time of the action required by it) function than in Czech. All the examples concerned referred to actions which were supposed to be in progress for a certain longer period of time. *You must stop thinking like that* = from now on you must think differently, it refers to thinking in general and it includes a long period of time, might be the rest of life. An utterance *Stop thinking like that*, on the other hand, would more likely refer to thinking of a particular matter and the time reference would be much more

immediate, probably including the following half an hour or so. *Excuse me* refers to something that was done or what is being done while *you must excuse me* refers to something that will be done. After saying *put on your shoes* the speaker expects an immediate reaction while in the sentence above *you must put on the shoes* the reaction is expected as soon as the speaker dies, which may be a question of years. In Czech translation with MUSET the imperative would be acceptable too, and therefore it seems that the difference in interpretations between MUSET and the imperative mood in Czech is less sharp than in English.

4. Only HAVE TO corresponded to Czech *stačit* and *jen*

As HAVE TO mainly deals with obligation imposed by someone other than the speaker, the person imposing the obligation is often not known or clear, and it is often difficult to distinguish interpretations A and B. HAVE TO often expresses the most reasonable course of action to reach a certain goal – it says that doing something is necessary if one wants to reach a certain goal = all one is required to do by the situation/circumstances is ... = for the successful completion of the desired aim it is enough... . This flow of reasoning illustrates the correspondence between the English original and its Czech translation. Why is not, however, the form with *enough* common in English and one with MUSET in Czech? It may be caused by the fact that in English personal constructions prevail while in Czech impersonal constructions are quite common: *pro dosažení cíle mu stačí aby ...* .

The Czech translations with *stačit* also show that the difference between more “active” MUST and more “passive” HAVE TO is not restricted to interpretation B, but it is more general.

5. MUST is more frequently translated with the opposite polarity than HAVE TO

E. Benešová talks in connection with modal verbs in Czech about synonymous ways of expressing the same kind of modality (interpretation) where one of the expressions always contains a negated main verb. The pair relevant to this thesis is *muset pracovat – nesmět nepracovat* (1971: 131). In Czech as it has been discussed in the theory section, two different modal verbs are used. In English, however, the corresponding pair is *must work – must not [not work]*. Therefore in English MUST + verb in affirmative and MUST NOT +

a verb with opposite meaning to the one in affirmative are very similar in meaning: *must stay = mustn't leave*. The counterpart with different polarity for HAVE TO has to be a different modal expression – the most common being probably CANNOT.

11.1 Summary

From the above discussed differences in interpretation between MUST and HAVE TO and the corresponding expressions in Czech the following generalisations can be drawn.

English seems more sensitive to the differences between the individual interpretations at least what concerns “deontic”⁴¹ inescapable necessity. In English this semantic field is basically divided into three rather distinctive parts covered by MUST, HAVE TO and the imperative construction (the individual differences have already been discussed), while in Czech this whole area can be covered by MUSET and for the majority of cases by the imperative construction as well without any significant change in meaning. This, however, does not mean that Czech is not able to differentiate between the individual interpretations at all, and translators often use other than explicitly modal means to do so. Czech modal verb MUSET is more closely related with MUST (the reasons lie in its often deontic and more active function) while HAVE TO is translated into Czech by a wider range of forms often without explicitly expressed modality (e.g. *stačit (jen), mít, být donucen* or affirmative construction in the present, past or future tense).

The difference in actuality and future reference of the lexical verb (HAVE TO can express actuality because the lexical verb it modifies has only a limited possibility to refer to the future and if it does then only to the near future, while MUST cannot express actuality but the lexical verb can refer and often does to the far away future) is also reflected in Czech translations. HAVE TO was translated into Czech by affirmative constructions in the present tense while MUST was not.

⁴¹ The term deontic is used as the complement to epistemic, or with the similar meaning that Quirk (1985) calls intrinsic. It includes in it Palmer's (1979) deontic and dynamic modality.

12 MUST AND HAVE TO AND THEIR COUNTERPARTS IN CZECH – EPISTEMIC MODALITY

The difference in expressing logical necessity between English and Czech does not seem as big as certain contrastive grammars suggest. Dušková (1998: 186) claims that "Modal verbs as a means of expressing epistemic modality are more frequent in English than in Czech (they often correspond to Czech modal adverbs or particles)". From what has been found in the Material the both mentioned means are roughly in balance: 63 examples of modal verb MUSET, 65 examples of modal adverbs and 32 examples without explicitly expressed modality. The ratio between epistemic modality expressed by MUSET and by an adverb is similar in the translations in both directions, and surprisingly in the Czech fiction MUST was even more numerous than adverbs: EN-CZ: MUST: 40, adverb: 44, CZ-EN: MUST: 23, adverb: 21. So it does not seem that native Czech speakers would use modal adverbs or particles more often than other means to express epistemic necessity. The stratification of the means used to express epistemic necessity is more or less the same in both languages – MUST: 40%, adverbs: 40%, without any explicit modal expression: 20% (EN – 38%, 42%, 21%, CZ – 41%, 38%, 21%).

13 NECESSITY NOT TO – PROHIBITION

13.1 CANNOT, COULD NOT

CAN expresses various meanings, mainly possibility, ability to permission. With regard to the topic of this thesis, however, only one of those meanings is relevant – that of permission, and moreover only when used with the negative polarity. Since CAN with this meaning takes external negation = it is the modality, not the main verb that is negated, therefore its meaning is **not allowed to** which is close to **necessary not to** - if something is not permitted than it is necessary not to do it.

EN - CZ

In the English fiction there were six examples (RO: 2 – 12, 87; DA: 2 – 88, 103; IS: 1 – 120; AM: 1 - 160) of *cannot* found. In one case (RO: 1) it was used with epistemic interpretation and translated to Czech as *určitě ne*:

In fairness to A. it must be admitted that living in his shadow **cannot have been** a comfortable experience. – Je ovšem třeba přiznat, že život v Albusově stínu pro něj **určitě nebyl** ničím radostným... (RO: 22, 23 – 12)

In the remaining five cases (DA: 2, RO: 1, IS: 1, AM: 1) it expressed deontic necessity, once (RO: 1) it was translated into Czech as NESMĚT, and four times (DA: 2, IS: 1, AM: 1) as NEMOCI:

They **cannot keep** the objects longer than that unless they can prove they are dangerous. – **Nesměj si** věci z pozůstalosti **ponechávat** déle, neprokáží-li ... (RO: 105, 108 – 87)

Afraid, I **can't tell** you, boy. Strictly confidential. – Bohužel ti **nemohu** nic říct chlapče. Přísně tajné. (IS: 227, 162 – 120)

A summary of the all the examples of CAN/COULD NOT found in the English fiction and their corresponding translations is presented in Table 11.

CAN/COULD NOT: 6			
meaning	number	translation	number
deontic	5	NESMĚT	1
		NEMOCI	4
epistemic	1	<i>určitě ne</i>	1

Table 11: A summary of CAN/COULD NOT (EN – CZ)

CZ - EN

In the Czech fiction there were four examples (HR: 2, KL: 1, VI: 1) found. Twice (HR: 1, KL: 1) it corresponded to Czech NEMOCI, once it expressed deontic and once epistemic modality:

...a pak starosta skoro zaslzel a řekl nám slavnostně, abychom si z toho nic nedělali, že **nemůžeme** oba **padnout** v boji za novou Evropu... - ... that we **couldn't** both **die** in the struggle for the New Europe ... (HR: 242, 141 – 106)

Nemohlo mu být víc než pět let a nepoznal jsem, jestli je to chlapec nebo děvčátko.
– It **could not have been** more than five years ... (KL: 33, 27 – 23)

In the remaining two cases (HR: 1, VI: 1) it was again used epistemically and corresponded to a lexical verb in the indicative without any explicit modal expression, and once to MUSET:

... a řekla, **vy žertujete**, vy, který si umíte tak krásně uvázat kravatu ... - She laughed and said, **You can't be serious**, you tie your necktie so beautifully. (HR: 211, 103 – 80)

Musel jsem v duchu **konstatovat**, že naše nová kolegyně je opravdu pěkná. – I **could not help remarking**, that our new colleague was really good-looking. (VI: 155, 129 – 83)

A summary of the all the examples of CAN/COULD NOT found in the translations of the Czech fiction and their corresponding Czech means is presented in Table 12.

CAN/COULD NOT: 4			
Meaning	Number	Translation	Number
epistemic	3	NEMOCI	1
		NEMUSET	1
		lexical verb	1
deontic	1	nemoci	1

Table 12: A summary of CAN/COULD NOT (CZ – EN)

13.2 NOT ALLOWED

Examples of NOT ALLOWED (eight - KL: 4 – 85, 87, 113, 134; HR: 3 – 43, 51, 70; VI: 1 - 22) were found only in the Czech fiction. Six times it was in the past tense (KL: 2, HR: 3, VI: 1), once in the present tense (KL: 1) and once in the present progressive tense (KL: 1). In six cases it corresponded to Czech NESMĚT (HR: 3, KL: 3):

Já taky nesmím tisknout, Táno, ani řádeček. – I am not allowed to print so much as a line ... (KL: 106, 97 – 87)

A nesměli jsme si ani sednout, ani spolehnout, buďto něco urovnávat nebo stát lehce opření ... - We weren't allowed to sit down or relax, we had to keep busy straightening things out or leaning gently against ... (HR: 177, 60 – 51)

In the remaining two cases it once corresponded to *nebylo mi přáno*, and once a different expression with the opposite polarity was used:

Nebylo mi bohužel přáno vyslechnout své kolegy až do konce... - Sadly I was not allowed to hear the remainder of the conversation ... (VI: 43, 35 – 22)

A mě, mě taky vyhnali... - I was not allowed to stay, either ... (KL: 105, 95 – 85)

A summary of the all the examples of NOT ALLOWED TO found in the translations of the Czech fiction and their corresponding Czech means is presented in Table 13.

NOT ALLOWED TO: 8			
Meaning	Number	Translation	Number
deontic	8	NESMĚT	6
		<i>nebylo mi přáno</i>	1
		lexical verb	1

Table 13: A summary of NOT ALLOWED TO (CZ – EN)

13.3 Special expressions

In the English fiction there were found two other expressions (DA: 2) expressing *necessity not to*: *I won't have somebody talking, am I not permitted*. Into Czech they were once translated as NESMĚT and one as NEMOCI:

I simply won't have you talking like that. – Takhle s Claudem nesmíš mluvit. (DA: 323, 193 – 173)

Am I not permitted to look at the pictures? – Nemůžu se snad podívat na obrazy? (DA: 82, 87 – 44)

Another modal verb used to express *necessity not to* is the verb MAY used with negative polarity. With this meaning it is used with external negation = modality not the lexical verb is negated, and therefore it has similar meaning to CAN'T. It is, however, much more formal, and since Dušková translates it as NESMĚT, it would seem, at least what concerns its strength, closer to MUSTN'T: “Zápor *may not* (v dispozičním významu „nesmět“) se vyskytuje v úředním jazyce“ (Dušková 1994: 191)⁴². The fact that *may not* is rather formal might be the cause of its absence in the Material.

13.4 The comparison of the means used to express *necessity not to*

Deontic modality

Grammar books do not seem to deal in any big detail with the way in which *necessity not to* is expressed. It is difficult to find theoretical studies of the differences in the meaning and use between the individual means. The main difference is the difference between MUST on the one hand and a set of negative modal means such as CANNOT, MAY NOT, BE NOT ALLOWED on the other hand, which is described as the difference between *necessity not to* do and negative permission to do = a ban. The former is felt stronger. This assumption is commented on by Leech (2004), and Palmer (1979): “Both these statements (with *may not* and *mustn't*) are prohibitions, but differ in that the second sounds rather more forceful, positively forbidding instead of negatively withholding permission” (Leech

⁴² Negative *may not* (in deontic sense: nesmět) is used in official language

2004: 95), "But there is an obvious difference between refusing permission (may not/can't) and laying an obligation not to (mustn't). With the former it is to be assumed that permission is normally required, while with the latter the speaker takes a positive step in preventing the action for which permission may not normally be required" (Palmer 1979: 65).

In Czech there are two basic modal verbs used: NESMĚT and NEMOCI, which since they are both used with external negation express negative permission. The only formal possibility in Czech to express the meaning of MUSTN'T is MUSET with the negative infinitive which, as it has already been discussed, is rare and restricted. Based on a short comment in Dušková (1994: 192): "Obvyklý zápor k dispozičnímu *may* je *must not*, popř. *can't*. Např. *you mustn't worry* nesmíte si dělat starosti, *we can't take the dog into the hotel* nemůžeme (nesmíme) vzít psa do hotelu. *One mustn't be proud*. Člověk nesmí být pyšný."⁴³, one might arrive at the conclusion that MUSTN'T corresponds to Czech NESMĚT and CAN'T to Czech NEMOCI. This might be further supported by looking into a dictionary which either does not suggest anything or the same correlation e.g. in Lingea Lexicon NESMĚT = MUST NOT, MAY NOT. The situation is, however, not so easy. From the previous discussion of excerpts with MUST NOT it seemed that the distinction between MUST NOT and CANNOT is less sharp than between NESMĚT and NEMOCI whose meanings should be, based on the form, closer. As the books did not provide any further information on the issue apart from the above mentioned, native speakers of British English were asked for help. The opinions they provided were interesting, and surprising at the same time. They agreed on the assumption that while there exists a rather big overlap between MUST NOT and CANNOT, partly depending on a particular context and intonation, there is a basic difference felt between the two means, which does not seem primarily to reside in the force of the modal means as Leech (2004) suggested, but rather in the meaning. While CANNOT expresses either inability (which is outside the scope of this paper) or something which is officially (often by law) not allowed/banned, MUST NOT is used to express more personal involvement of the speaker describing something which is considered morally wrong. It can be seen as more or less in agreement with Palmer (1971) - see the paragraph above). If something is usually not allowed, then one, if they in spite of this want or need to do it, has to ask for permission. It is, however, not logical to ask for

⁴³ The usual negation of deontic may is *must not*, or *can't*, e.g. *you mustn't worry* nesmíte si dělat starosti, *we can't take the dog into the hotel* nemůžeme (nesmíme) vzít psa do hotelu. *One mustn't be proud*. Člověk nesmí být pyšný.

permission to do something which is considered morally inappropriate. Such things are usually done either out of ignorance, or because one cannot help it. The interpretations of MUSTN'T and CAN'T found in the Material more or less correspond to the distinction described by the native speakers.

The assumption that CANNOT basically means NOT ALLOWED can be further supported by an example from my practice. As a part of their assignment second-year students were asked to express various responses to a given statement, e.g. a possibility, necessity, expectation... One of the given sentences was *Yesterday I overslept and missed a bus*. As a ban one of the students provided the following sentence: *You couldn't oversleep yesterday and missed the bus*. I marked it as wrong without much thinking about it. The student came to me and she explained to me how she arrived at the sentence. She consulted Foley (2003: 184) and under the heading of *Prohibition* she found the following example: *We couldn't go to the disco because we were too young*. On the spot I was not able to explain to her (and even to myself) what the core of the problem was. Later, however, I realized that it is explicable on the basis on the native speakers' and Palmer's opinions. CANNOT generally refers to actions for which permission is or can be asked; it is therefore similar in meaning to BE ALLOWED TO. Oversleeping is not an activity for which permission is generally given, the word by its nature expresses something negative, and if we used NOT BE ALLOWED in this sentence it would sound equally awkward. In terms of Foley's sentence, it is a common situation that a certain age is set by law that needs to be reached before a person can go to the disco, and a test with NOT BE ALLOWED works smoothly here.

In Czech the two expressions generally used are NESMĚT and NEMOCI. Since even for the Czech language it was not possible to find a theoretical discussion of this issue, I tried to deduce the negative meanings of the two modal verbs from the positive ones. From Benešova's (1971: 132) classification of modal verbs it follows that MOCI is used to express possibility in general – it means in cases when the source of modality are outer circumstances as well as if the source of modality is a concrete human being and both in the case when the source of modality is identical with the source of action and when the source of modality is different from the source of action. SMĚT is used only if the source of modality is a concrete person and only in cases when the source of modality is different from the source of action. Based on these findings I feel that NESMĚT mainly expresses

things which are not allowed, which are officially banned, which might be supported by the fact that only NESMĚT and not NEMOCI was used as the corresponding expression to NOT ALLOWED TO. NEMOCI, on the other hand, refers, in addition to inability and impossibility based on outer circumstances, to things seen as bad, something that a kind of inner control prevents a person from doing e.g. – *to jí nemohu udělat, nemohu ji zradit*. According to this explanation, therefore, the correspondence between MUST NOT, CAN NOT on the one hand, and NESMĚT, NEMOCI on the other should be completely opposite. An example from Rowling might be used to support this view:

They cannot keep the objects longer than that unless they can prove they are dangerous.(= it is banned by the Ministry) – Nesmějí si věci z pozůstalosti ponechávat déle, neprokáží-li ... (RO: 105, 108 – 87)

Since, however, in the same way as in English, also in Czech there is a big overlap between the two means, there is certain flexibility in their use. Nevertheless learners of English should be aware of the potential meanings of these modal verbs and not content themselves with a rather oversimplified view which might be easily arrived at.

This comparison becomes simpler when the discussed modal verbs are used with past reference because due to formal reasons MUST NOT cannot be used. MUST does not have the past form and in order to express strong obligation with past reference other forms must be used, the most common being HAVE TO. HAVE NOT TO or more precisely HAD NOT TO, however, does not express an *obligation not to*, but a *possibility not to*. Apart from the just mentioned formal reason, there might be a semantic or logical reason for the non-existence of the past form of MUST with deontic interpretation. Since MUST, and in the same way probably also MUST NOT, is strongly subjective, being used when the source of modality is the speaker, mainly in its negative form it is highly illogical with past reference. MUST NOT expresses something seen as wrong by the speaker, so if the speaker was the source of the action at the same the logical result would have to be the non-realization of the action (no space for MUSTN'T here) or the action would be accidental and then other means would be preferable, e.g. *I did not want, mean, intend...* If the speaker was different from the source of activity who did something which the speaker considered wrong, the natural choice would be SHOULD/UGHT NOT.

Epistemic modality

There were only four examples of epistemic *necessity not to* found in the Material, which is not enough for any general conclusions. However, theoretically at least, the system of modal verbs is poorer in Czech than in English including only one modal verb in Czech: NEMOCI and two modal verbs in English MUST NOT – although rather rare with epistemic interpretation, and CANNOT. A further discussion of epistemic necessity can be found in the conclusion to this paper.

14 SHOULD (EN – CZ)

SHOULD is a modal verb which is used to express also other meanings than different shades of obligation which are the subject of this dissertation. Huddleston and Pullum (2002: 187 – 188) include them under the heading of “low-degree modality” and classify them further into: “mandative, adversative, purposive, emotive and conditional”. Carter and McCarthy (2006: 653, 654) describe these interpretations as “surprise, suggestion”, and SHOULD in “hypothetical conditional clauses with if in formal contexts, expressing tentative possibilities”. These meanings are not discussed in this paper. Nevertheless one important interpretation of SHOULD (Huddleston and Pullum 2002: 186, state that it is “its most frequent use”) is to describe a desirable action, a requirement or advice which can be perceived as a weaker shade of obligation. Therefore SHOULD should definitely be considered in this dissertation.

As far as deontic modality is concerned, the most frequent interpretation (and according to Carter and Mc Carthy (2006: 653) the most frequent interpretation of SHOULD in general) of SHOULD is “what is desirable” (ibid: 653). Huddleston and Pullum (2002: 186) describe the deontic use of SHOULD in the following way: “Deontic should/ought is usually subjective, indicating what the speaker considers ‘right’ – whether morally or as a matter of expediency”. With regard to epistemic modality Carter and McCarty (2006: 254) state that SHOULD indicates “what is likely or possible”.

From Carter and McCarty’s point of view it might seem that epistemic SHOULD, since it expresses possibility, which is usually presented as a different modal meaning distinct from obligation, does not belong to the scope of this paper. If we however have a look in

other grammars of English, their authors often work with terms which clearly indicate that SHOULD falls into the semantic sub-field of obligation (different less strict shades of obligation). Leech (2004) titles one of his sub-chapters “*Should* and *ought to* as weaker equivalents of *must*” and he then determines the two basic modal meanings of *should* as a) “weakened obligation” and b) “weakened logical necessity”. Huddleston and Pullum (2002: 186) describe epistemic SHOULD as “again usually subjective, has a strength comparable with probable, but differs from it in that it involves inference, this means that the concept of ‘right’ is always relevant here”. The problems of the terminology chosen might be caused by the fact that although possibility and necessity (the terms most commonly used as the two poles of epistemic modality) are presented as distinct meanings they in fact function on one and the same scale expressing the gradient of what can be seen as one general interpretation – epistemic kind of modality. It is usually easy to name the two opposite ends of a scale. What is more difficult is to decide in what way the material within the two ends should be classified and categorized, and what name each category should be given. Therefore what one may call probability may be called possibility by another, although if they were asked to mark what they mean by it on the scale, they might indicate exactly the same place. This might be the case also in the above mentioned categorization by Carter and McCarthy. Although Carter and McCarthy refer to both conditional and epistemic interpretations of SHOULD as “possibility”, from the examples they provide it is clear that they would belong at different points on the above discussed scale, as the following examples from their book suggest:

“A: Tomorrow I’ve got a lot of sport. Cos I’ve got games in the morning then I’ve got swimming for four lessons.

B: It **should** be a pleasant day then.

Some people carry a card which says that if they **should** be killed in an accident, they are willing for their organs to be used for transplantation.

(Carter and Mc Carthy 2006: 354)

While the first assumption is clearly based on evidence and comes close to a fact, the other is undesirable possibility which is hoped not to happen. The first example, since it is based on evidence, approximates the meaning of epistemic MUST.

Many linguists have noticed and discussed connections between MUST and SHOULD. Not all of them, however, came to the same conclusions. One point in which general consensus seems to be reached is different time reference these modal verbs usually express. The comparison of the above examples of epistemic SHOULD with typical examples of epistemic MUST may lead to a question whether if an estimation is made about a future event (with future reference) SHOULD is not the favoured, if not the only, possibility. Gailor (1983: 346,347) confirms such an assumption. In his article *Reflections on 'should', 'ought to' and 'must'* he states that “*should/ought to* are generally used to express ‘probability’ only when the context clarifies that we are speculating on future events, or on something that can be verified in the future” and that “we cannot use *must* to express the supposition that he will be worn out later.” Although here the matter is discussed on one example, from the article it is clear that Gailor makes a generally valid statement here and that what he means is that MUST cannot be used to express an assumption with future reference. Huddleston and Pullum (2002: 187) discuss the same characteristics of SHOULD on a different basis – on the basis of cause and consequence: “The primacy of the deontic use (where the situation is characteristically in the future) may also explain why *should/ought* are used epistemically in inferring consequences from causes but not the other way round”. Inferred consequences will be used with future reference, while if causes are discussed on the basis of consequences they can never refer to the future – it can be either the present or past. It can therefore be concluded that epistemic MUST does not usually have future reference while SHOULD does.

Where there seems to be a discrepancy, is the role of the speaker as an authority imposing the obligation. Thomson and Marinet (1980: 205) suggest that “*should/ought to* is used when there is no authority on the part of the speaker”. Huddleston and Pullum (2002: 186) as it has already been mentioned call both *should* and *ought* “subjective”. Also Leech (2004:101) speaks about the deontic interpretation of SHOULD as about “obligation or requirement (by speaker)”. He, therefore, sees the speaker’s authority as crucial. In his terminology there, however, appears, a certain inconsistency regarding the word *requirement* because what he called *requirement* in the previous chapters, namely those on MUST and HAVE TO was “more impersonal meaning of *must* where we might say ‘it is essential that, it is necessary to’ or “as with *must* there is the closely related meaning of *have to* in which the required course of action is general or public” (Leech 2004:79, 80). Gailor’s position is somewhere in-between. He presents cases where the authority of the

speaker is unquestionable, as the editor's authority is when he addresses potential contributors: "*Entries should be clearly typed*" (Gailor 1983: 347). On the other hand in the sentence "*He should be in hospital*" (ibid: 347) the speaker would probably like to have some authority but obviously does not have any, so all he/she can do is to express a wish. The mentioned discrepancy might have led Gailor (ibid) to introduce one additional meaning of SHOULD which he called "desirability" or "opportuness". The distinction between SHOULD expressing weakened obligation and SHOULD expressing desirability is in the authority of the speaker where in the first case it is clearly the speaker who imposes the obligation while in the second the speaker does not have the authority. Some grammarians e.g. Palmer (1979) and Quirk (1985) will include *desirability* under the third kind of modality which Palmer calls *dynamic* and Quirk *root*. Apart from this difference one important characteristic of SHOULD, which clearly distinguishes it from MUST and HAVE TO, is that SHOULD even in its clearly deontic interpretation A refers to what is desirable and perceived as positive.

For the purpose of this dissertation, in order to clearly mark the relation of SHOULD to necessity, three basic interpretations of SHOULD are distinguished and referred to as:

- A: Weakened obligation
- B: Desirability
- C: Weakened logical necessity

The first two terms have been adopted from Leech (2004) for the purpose of clarity and also continuity, since his terminology was also used in the case of MUST and HAVE TO. The third category was added on the basis of Gailor's research, and it is believed to be beneficial to test and possibly confirm the existence and relevance of such a distinct category on the Material.

14.1 Form SHOULD

14.1.1 Interpretation A: Weakened obligation (authority other than the speaker)

In the Material there were found eight (RO: 4 – 98, 103, 200, 233; DA: 2 – 5, 43; IS: 2 – 68, 31) examples of SHOULD with this meaning. In all these cases SHOULD had future reference.

In six cases (RO: 4, IS: 2) it was translated by MĚL BY:

*I think we **should** keep it off for a while. – Myslím, že **bychom** ho nějakou chvíli **neměli** nosit. (RO: 283, 295 – 200)*

*I really **should** come back here in spring. – **Měl bych** sem vážně přijet na jaře. (IS: 109, 82 – 68)*

In two cases (DA: 2) there were no specific modal expressions used in Czech, but the verb was in the conditional mood:

*What idea? That he **should make** a picture of you upon my back? – Jaký nápad. **Aby mi vytetoval** na záda tvoji podobiznu? (DA: 78, 83 – 43)*

*What I **should do** I **should tie** one of your hands to the table before we started and I **should stand** there with a knife ready to go ... - **Udělal bych** to tak, že **bych** vám **přivázal** jednu ruku ke stolu a **čekal bych** s připraveným nožem... (DA: 35, 30 – 5).*

14.1.2 Interpretation B: Desirability

Nine examples (RO: 4 – 21, 97, 172, 183; IS: 4 – 2, 23, 33, 146; DA: 2 – 30, 127) of SHOULD with this meaning were found in the Material.

In six (RO:2, IS: 3, DA:1) cases it was translated as MĚL BY:

*Perhaps we **should wait** outside the hall... - Možná **bychom měli počkat** mimo pokoj. (RO: 114, 118 – 172)*

*...and a good butler **should** always **take** it into account ... - a dobrý majordom by na to **neměl** při plánování práce zapomínat ... (IS: 53, 41 – 23)*

In one case (RO) it was translated by MÍT:

*It has been decided that you all **should go** home and go into hiding ... - Bylo rozhodnuto, že se všichni **máte vrátit** domů ... (RO: 217, 228 – 172)*

In three cases (RO:1, IS: 1, DA: 1) it was translated without a modal expression:

*So you **should be**. – Ani se ti nedivím. (DA: 195, 289 – 127)*

*I **should hope**, that by the time my employer returns, I shall be in a position to surprise him – A doufám, že až se můj zaměstnavatel vrátí, budu ho moci překvapit. (IS: 258, 183 – 146)*

*Good man – goblin, I **should say**. – Výborně člověče, **totiž chci říct**, skřete. (RO: 244, 256 – 183)*

14.1.3 Interpretation C: Weakened logical necessity

There were seven (IS: 5 – 24, 25, 28, 49, 110; RO:1 - 171, DA: 1 – 5) of *should* with this meaning found in the Material.

Once (RO) it was translated as MĚL BY:

*There...that **should fool** her... - To je ono...to by ji mělo zmást ... (RO: 216, 227 – 171)*

In this case it is not a clear example of epistemic modality, it describes the result based on the action of outer circumstances and therefore it is on the boundary between dynamic and epistemic modality.

In the remaining four cases (IS: 2, DA: 1) there was no modal expression but the indicative of the main verb in present tense or past tense.

*Sir Donald **should know** that, but he has asked me none the less. – Sir David to **dobře ví**, ale přesto se na mě obrátil. (IS: 86, 65 – 49)*

What concerns the question of time reference of SHOULD discussed in the introduction to *should* above, in the last three cases where SHOULD was translated into Czech by means of a main verb in present tense, the time references of the verb phrases used in English are also present. If the modal verb phrases were replaced by main verbs in the present tense, the meaning of the sentences would not change or it would change only slightly:

*Sir Donald **knows** that, but he has asked me none the less.*

*I must say I am at some loss as to why you **are** so **concerned**.*

*It seems such a pity that your room **is** so dark and cold.*

*I am terribly sorry that this **happened**.*

The possibility to replace SHOULD with just the main verb in the present tense is obvious mainly in the last three examples. These sentences, however, are not typical examples of epistemic SHOULD. Here SHOULD functions more or less as a tentative form of the indicative and its connection with the genuine epistemic interpretation is the fact that it expresses factuality rather than a speech act. On the other hand it can be considered deontic in the fact that the described state of affairs (the way things probably are) can result from the general circumstances.

A summary of SHOULD is presented in Table 14

SHOULD: 25			
meaning	number	translation	number
A	8	MÍT (conditional)	6
		lexical verb (conditional)	2
B	10	MÍT (conditional)	6
		MÍT (future)	1
		lexical verb	3
C	7	MUSET	1
		MÍT (conditional)	1
		lexical verb	5

Table 14: A summary of SHOUD (EN – CZ)

14.2 Interrogative form of SHOULD

14.2.1 Interpretation A: Weakened obligation

There were two examples (RO: 1 – 46; DA: 1 - 72) found and both were translated into Czech by MĚL BY:

*So what **should** I do? – Tak co **bych měl udělat?** (DA: 121, 76 – 72)*

14.2.2 Interpretation B: Desirability

There were two (AM: 1, DA: 1) examples translated into Czech by a special phrase without a modal verb:

*It is true. Why **should** you **mind**? – Vždyť je to tak. A co **je** vám **do toho**? (AM: 161, 159 – 172)*

*Why **shouldn't** he **search** for it? – Co **kdyby** po něm **začal pátrat**? (DA: 136, 261 – 93)*

14.2.3 Interpretation C: Weakened logical necessity

There were two examples found (RO: 2). In both cases SHOULD was translated into English as MĚL BY:

*But why **should** he? – Proč **by** to **měl** ale zjistit? (RO: 73, 73 – 46)*

*Their enchantments had worked for weeks, why **should** they **break** now? -tak proč **by měla** zrovna teď **selhat**? (RO: 297, 313 – 228)*

These sentences are not clear examples of epistemic necessity – they rather than *factuality* express *actualization* (Huddleston and Pullum's (2002) terms), but actualization not based on the inner will of the speaker, but on the outer circumstances. Although it was decided not to work with the category of “dynamic” kind of modality, here it would be useful. Thus the two excerpts from the Material above were categorized under the heading of epistemic modality because if we slightly rephrase them, they carry more or less epistemic meaning: *He will certainly not find out, They will certainly not break now.*

A summary of the all the examples of SHOULD in an interrogative form found in the English fiction and their corresponding translations is presented in Table 15.

SHOULD - interrog: 6

meaning	number	translation	
A	2	MÍT (conditional)	2
B	12	special	2
C	2	MÍT (conditional)	2

Table 15: Summary of SHOULD in the interrogative form (EN – CZ)

14.3 Form SHOULD NOT

If a verb phrase with SHOULD is negated, it is the main verb that is actually negated. Therefore it is close to MUST NOT and can be again seen as its “weakened form“ (Leech 2004: 101). It can acquire the same meanings as affirmative SHOULD.

14.3.1 Interpretation A: Weakened obligation

Under negation it seems even more difficult to distinguish the interpretation A from B. There were only two clear examples of the interpretation A (DA: 1, RO: 1) because they were in the second person, where the speaker is clearly the authority. Both the sentences were translated to Czech by NEMOCI:

*You **should not be** quite so quick to lower your defences. – Vy dva byste příště v ostražitosti **neměli polevovat** tak rychle. (RO: 168, 176 – 136)*

*You **really** should not bother. – S tím jste se **neměla obtěžovat**. (DA: 156, 221 – 106)*

14.3.2 Interpretation B: Desirability

There were three examples (RO: 2, DA:1) found in the Material once translated into Czech by MĚL BY, once by means of the conditional mood and once by the main verb in the future tense:

...so why **should not** I tell him – *Proč bych se tedy o něj nevsadil?* (DA: 36, 32 – 7)

Why was everybody so determined that he **should not get** it? – *Jenže on chtěl pravdu. Proč všichni usilují o to, aby se jí nedobral?* (RO: 153, 162 – 122)

14.3.3 Interpretation C: Weakened necessity

There was one example (DA – 181) translated by MUSET with the opposite polarity:

Shoudn't be any trouble anyway because I picked the others in the race myself. - **Musí to vyjít**, protože ty druhý mrchy pro závod jsem vybíral já osobně. (DA: 338, 209 – 181)

A summary of all the examples of SHOULD NOT found in the English fiction and their corresponding translations is presented in Table 16.

SHOULD – negative.: 6			
meaning	number	translation	number
A	2	MÍT (conditional)	2
C	1	MUSET	1
B	3	NEMÍT (conditional)	1
		lexical verb (conditional)	1
		lexical verb (future)	1

Table 16: Summary of SHOULD NOT (EN – CZ)

14.4 Form SHOULD HAVE

14.4.1 Interpretation A: Weakened obligation

There were seven examples (RO: 6 – 40, 58, 109, 151, 148, 201; IS: 1 - 3) of SHOULD HAVE with this meaning and all of them were translated into Czech as MÍT in the past tense.

*What **should I have said** was that there was no serious dispute among professionals of quality. – Snad **jsem měl říci**, že to vědí zkušení profesionálové ... (IS: 30, 26 – 3)*

*I **should have never married** her. – Vůbec **jsem si ji neměl brát**. (RO: 175, 148 – 148)*

14.4.2 Interpretation B: Desirability

There were four examples (RO: 4 – 42, 76, 152, 194) of SHOULD HAVE with this meaning found in the Material and all of them were translated into Czech as MÍT in the past tense.

*He is wondering whether he **should have asked** for more money. - ...je chce vědět, jestli si za něj **neměl říct** víc... (RO: 182, 191 – 152)*

*I am going to have to get back to Downing Street. I **should have been** there an hour ago. – Budu se muset vrátit do Downing Street, **měl jsem tam být** už před hodinou. (RO: 69, 69 – 42)*

A summary of the all the examples of SHOULDHAVE found in the English fiction and their corresponding translations is presented in Table 17.

SHOULD HAVE: 11

meaning	number	translation	number
A	7	MÍT (past)	7
B	4	MÍT (past)	4

Table 17: A summary of SHOULD HAVE (EN – CZ)

15 SHOULD (CZ – EN)

Now the modal verb SHOULD is studied from the viewpoint of its use in translations from Czech. The same procedure as the one used with the previously discussed modal verbs is used and the interpretations are classified into the same categories as those used for the translations from English.

15.1 Form SHOULD

15.1.1 Interpretation A: Weakened obligation

There were twelve examples of SHOULD (KL: 9 – 1, 5, 6, 20, 38, 98, 104, 135, 136; VI: 3 – 38, 54, 64) with this interpretation found in the Material. In seven cases (KL: 5, VI: 2) it corresponded to Czech MĚL BY:

Já jsem humanisticky orientovaný spisovatel. Měl bych domy lásky spíš pranýřovat, ne je navštěvovat. – I should pillory houses of pleasure, not patronise them. (VI: 74, 62 – 38)

Ale ty jako spisovatel bys měl zkusit všechno. – ...you should try your hand at everything ... (KL: 50, 42 – 38)

In four cases there were no modal verbs used in Czech. In three cases (KL: 3, VI: 1) SHOULD corresponded to the conditional mood in Czech. In the first example the combination of *persuade* and SHOULD is integrated in the Czech verb *přimět*, because it in itself expresses obligation while *persuade* does not.

Přiměl jsem ji sice, abychom pokoj aspoň změřili a nakreslili si plánek, ale veškeré mé ... - Admittedly I did manage to ***persuade*** her ***that we should*** at least measure the room, but ... (VI: 122, 102 – 64)

A ***kdybyste viděl***, co si dovolí ke mně ... - And you ***should see*** what he is up to with me ... (KL: 20, 16 – 6)

15.1.2 Interpretation B: Desirability

There were ten examples of SHOULD (KL: 3 – 42, 95, 100; VI: 3 – 35, 98, 102; HR: 2 – 88, 126; KU: 2 – 6, 61) with this interpretation found in the Material. In four cases (KL: 2, KU: 1, VI: 1) it corresponded to a lexical verb in the indicative in either the present or past tense.

*Nepsaná smlouva erotického přátelství předpokládala, že Tomas **vyloučí** lásku ze svého života.* – The unwritten contract of erotic friendship stipulated that Thomas ***should exclude*** all love from his life. (KU: 22, 13 – 6)

In three cases (HR: 2, VI: 1) it corresponded to MĚL BY:

...že už se spolu nebudeme sázet, co si který host dá, či nedá, nebo **by dátí měl** ... - ... what the different guests would or ***should order*** ... (HR: 223, 118 – 88)

In one case (VI) it corresponded to Czech MUSET:

*Myslím, že člověk si **musí** vždycky vytyčit nějaký nejbližší mezník.* – I believe people ***should*** always fix themselves a nearer milestone ... (VI: 181, 152 – 98)

In two cases (KL, HR) the sentences were constructed differently in English and in Czech:

Vrhla na mě zdrcující pohled jako na člověka, který se odmítá znát ke svému potomkovi ... - She gave me a scathing look, as if to say I ***should be ashamed*** of myself for repudiating my own blood ... (KL: 18, 13 – 5)

...a dobré je, že když tady nemohu být hoteliérem, tak ať jde se mnou i ten hotel ... -
if I could not be the hotel keeper anymore then the hotel **should go** down with me ...
(HR: 291, 205 – 126)

15.1.3 Interpretation C: Weakened logical necessity

There were two examples of SHOULD (VI: 1, HR: 1) with this interpretation found in the Material. Once (VI) it corresponded to Czech MUSET:

Nezáleželo ani zbla na tom, že mne sám povolal, a **musel** tudíž nejlépe **vědět**, proč přicházím ... - ...that he had summoned me and **should** therefore **be** the better **informed** why I was there ... (VI: 43, 36 – 23)

And once (HR) it corresponded to the indicative in the future tense:

A on řekl, že teď odtud **bude vidět** jeho rodiště. – And he said that from here we **should be able to see** his native village. (HR: 262, 166 – 119)

A summary of the all the examples of SHOULD found in the translations of the Czech fiction and their corresponding Czech means is presented in Table 18.

SHOULD: 21			
meaning	number	translation	number
A	9	MÍT (conditional)	7
		lexical verb (conditional)	1
		<i>přimět</i>	1
B	10	lexical verb (present, past)	5
		MÍT (conditional)	3
		MUSET	1
		special	1
C	2	MUSET	1
		lexical verb (future)	1

Table 18: Summary of SHOULD (CZ – EN)

15.2 Form SHOULD NOT

There were seven examples of negated SHOULD (VI: 2 – 35, 75, KL:4 – 11, 31, 36, 136, KU: 1 - 62) found in the Material. Four of them were of interpretation B, one A (KL). Four of them (VI: 2, KL: 1, KU: 1) were translations of Czech NEMÍT either in the indicative in the present tense, or in the conditional:

*Aspoň **byste to neměl nosit** takhle všechno najednou po kapsách. – You **should not** really **be carrying** all this stuff around in your pockets like this. (KL: 148, 137 – 136)*

*...a řekl cosi v tom smyslu, že holky **by nás nikdy neměly překvapit** - ...girls **should never surprise us** ... (VI: 66, 55 – 35)*

One was a translation of the lexical verb in the indicative (KL):

*...a pravila tak tiše, **aby ji Bedříšek nezaslechl**. - ... and said in a whisper, so that Fredie **should not hear** her ... (KL: 23, 19 – 11)*

The last two examples were interpretations C, once a translation of *určitě*, and once as *nedalo*:

*Ne, to **určitě ne**. – No, I **should not** think so. (KL: 40, 35 – 31)*

*Ale vzhledem k roční době se na nepřízeň osudu **žehrat nedalo**. - ... so I **should not** really **bewail** my fate ... (KL: 49, 41 – 36)*

A summary of the all the examples of SHOULD NOT found in the translations of the Czech fiction and their corresponding Czech means is presented in Table 19.

SHOULD – negative: 7

meaning	number	translation	number
A	1	NEMÍT	1
B	4	NEMÍT	3
		lexical verb	1
C	2	<i>určitě</i>	1
		<i>nedalo</i>	1

Table 19: Summary of SHOULD NOT (CZ – EN)

15.3 Interrogative form of SHOULD

15.3.1 Interpretation A: Weakened obligation

There were six examples of SHOULD (VI: 1 – 125, HR: 1 – 25; KU: 3 – 1, 2, 5, KL: 1 - 20) with this interpretation found in the Material. In five cases (KU: 2, KL: 2, VI: 1) SHOULD corresponded to MÍT, four times in the indicative mood and once in the conditional:

Má ji pozvat do Prahy natrvalo? – Should he call her back to Prague for good?
(KU: 3, 7 – 1)

Nechápal jsem, proč bych si měl přát žít v jiné zemi. – I could not understand why I should want to. (KL: 32, 26 – 20)

Once it corresponded to *nemohl bych*:

*A ten agent řekl, proč **bych nemohl rozhazovat** drobný na ulici, když vy, jako majitel tohoto podniku, rozhazujete denně ... - Why **shouldn't I** when you're the owner of this establishment and you throw away ... (HR: 147, 21 – 25)*

15.3.2 Interpretation B: Desirability

There was only one example (VI - 37) of SHOULD with this meaning and it corresponded to Czech *at'*, which is a common means of expressing a wish or desirability:

*Chce mlčet, tak **at' mlčí**. – If she does not want to talk, **why should she?** (VI: 71, 60 – 37)*

A summary of the all the examples of SHOULD in the interrogative form found in the translations of the Czech fiction and their corresponding Czech means is presented in Table 20.

SHOULD – interrogative: 8			
meaning	number	translation	number
A	7	MÍT (past)	4
		MÍT(conditional)	2
		<i>nemohl by</i>	1
B	1	lexical verb	1

Table 20: Summary of SHOULD in the interrogative form (CZ – EN)

15.4 Form SHOULD HAVE

15.4.1 Interpretation A: Weakened obligation

There was only one example of SHOULD HAVE (KL) with this interpretation found in the Material.

*Samozřejmě **jsem měl** po tomto otřesném zážitku auto **prodat** ... - I **should have sold** the car after this drastic experience ... (KL: 128, 118 – 110)*

15.4.2 Interpretation B: Desirability

There were eight examples of SHOULD HAVE (VI: 3 – 11, 60, 119; HR: 2 – 2, 79; KL: 3 – 53, 67, 72) with this interpretation found in the Material. In five cases (VI: 2, KL: 2, HR: 1) it corresponded to Czech MÍT in the past tense:

*A teď **jsem se měl otočit** a bleskurychle ji políbit. – Now I suppose I **should have turned** swiftly and kissed her. (KL: 63, 55 – 53)*

*Už jsem **měl dávno být** na kurtu. – I **should have been** on the court long ago. (VI: 31, 25 – 11)*

In the remaining three cases *should have* was also connected with a verb of perception and it was once expressed in Czech as MUSET and twice by a special structure - *ta vám plakala, ten se něco naprosil*:

*Nechápali..., křenila se Beáta. **Museli byste je vidět**. – You **should have seen** them. (VI: 210, 176 – 119)*

***Ta vám plakala**. – You **should have heard her** cry. (KL: 92, 83 – 72)*

*...už začal pracovat na place, ach, **ten se něco naprosil**, aby mohl roznášet párky! - ...he has started waiting on tables, and you **should have heard him beg** and plead to be allowed to go on selling frankfurters. (HR: 133, 2 – 2)*

One common function of SHOULD + perfect infinitive is to describe something seen as wrong, something which should have been done in a different way. Pollock (1997: 198) states that “*should/ought to + have + past participle* is used to talk about past regrets or to criticize past actions. It is used to say that someone did a wrong thing.” In Czech NEMĚL, MĚL jsem to udělat has similar meaning, and when the English construction really had this meaning, it was the most common corresponding phrase. In the last two sentences, however, the function of SHOULD HAVE is not an accusation or a regret over wrongdoing, and this fact is reflected in Czech by the use of a different means than MÍT or NEMÍT.

15.4.3 Interpretation C: Weakened logical necessity

There was only one example of SHOULD HAVE (KL) with this interpretation found in the Material.

Tak to by naopak měly ještě zbýt ... - they should have some radiators left over ...
(KL: 90, 81 – 67)

A summary of the all the examples of SHOULD HAVE found in the translations of the Czech fiction and their corresponding Czech means is presented in Table 21.

SHOULD HAVE: 10			
meaning	number	translation	number
A	1	MÍT (past)	1
B	8	MÍT (past)	5
		lexical verb	2
		MUSET	1
C	1	MÍT (past)	1

Table 21: Summary of SHOULD HAVE (CZ – EN)

15.5 Form SHOULD NOT HAVE

There were three examples of SHOULD HAVE HR: 1 - 22, KL:1 - 33, KU: 1 - 62) with this interpretation found in the Material. Three of them were interpretations B, one A (KL), and all of them were translations of Czech NEMÍT in the past tense:

Neměla jsi tehdy odjíždět. – You should not have left. (KL: 42, 37 – 33)

Zase diskutovali o tom, zda se proti Rusům mělo či nemělo bojovat se zbraní v ruce. – As usual they were hashing over whether they should or should not have taken up arms against the Russians. (KU: 109, 95 – 62)

SHOULD HAVE - negative: 3			
meaning	number	translation	number
A	1	NEMÍT (past)	1
B		NEMÍT (past)	2

Table 22: Summary of SHOULD NOT HAVE (CZ – EN)

16 OUGHT TO (EN – CZ)

In many grammar books the meanings of SHOULD and OUGHT TO are presented as very similar and since no difference is actually introduced or discussed in these books it can lead to the assumption that ‘very similar’ instead of ‘the same’ is used for ‘safety reasons’. Huddleston and Pullum (2002: 186) believe that “*should* is generally interchangeable with *ought (+ to)*”. There, however, exist studies on these two modals which introduce certain concrete differences. One argument in favour of these studies might be that it is improbable that any language would keep two distinct forms for exactly the same meaning. This basic assumption may also be the source of the above mentioned ‘very similar’. The only difference commonly stated is that OUGHT TO much less frequent. Gailor (1983) however, believes that where *ought to* is substantially less frequent and restricted in its use

is in epistemic modality – in expressing logical necessity. And if it is used in this function it often sounds as a complaint. “We tend avoid *ought to* when we want to be careful not to bring in an idea of duty.” (Gailor 1983: 348).

What concerns deontic modality Swan in Gailor (1983: 348) states that “with *should* we give our own subjective opinion, while *ought to* has rather more objective force and is used with less confidence in the desired for result”.

16.1 Form **OUGHT TO**

16.1.1 Interpretation A: Weakened obligation

There were five examples (RO: 5 – 92, 108, 121, 204, 226) with this meaning found in the Material. Three of them were translated by MĚL BY:

*I think we **ought to keep moving**.* – *Myslím, že bychom raději **měli být v neustálém pohybu**.* (RO: 136, 142 – 108)

*We **ought to be working** together.* – ***Měli bychom spolupracovat**.* (RO: 108, 113 – 92)

The remaining two were translated as *Nebylo by lepší?* and POTŘEBOVAT:

*Harry no, I am sure you **ought to rest**.* – *Ne Harry, určitě si **potřebuješ odpočinout**.* (RO: 284, 298 – 204)

*...but perhaps we **ought to dissaperate** under the Invisibility cloak.* – *Nebylo by lepší, **kdybychom se pro všechny případy přemístily?*** (RO: 296, 312 – 226)

16.1.2 Interpretation B: Desirability

There were six examples (RO: 5 – 50, 94, 100, 184, 185) with this meaning found in the Material and all of them were translated by MĚL BY:

*...but he believes you **ought to wear** sun colours to a weadding - ...je přesvědčený, že na svatbě **by se měly nosit** barvy slunce.* (RO: 118, 122 – 100)

16.1.3 Interpretation C: Weakened logical necessity

There were five cases (RO: 6 – 36, 93, 179, 180, 195, 209) of *ought to* with this meaning found in the Material. In three cases there was no modal expression used in Czech:

*The enchantments they had cast around themselves **ought to be sufficient** – doufali, že kouzelné ochrany **budou dostatečující** (RO: 242, 253 – 179)*

*...to watch the sun rise over the sparkling snowy hillside **ought to have been** the greatest treasure on earth - ...**považoval** za největší poklad na světě (RO: 286, 300 – 209)*

Once it was translated as *mohlo*:

*There **ought to be** a few salmon in here. – Tady **by snad mohlo být** pár lososů. (RO: 242, 253 – 180)*

Once it was translated as MUSET:

*...she was standing there staring at a house which **ought to have been** completely invisible to her ... - a zírala na bům, který pro ni **musel být** absolutně neviditelný (RO: 273, 286- 195)*

And once it was translated as MĚLI BY

*George and Lupin **ought to be** back within a minute. – George s Lupinem **by se měli vrátit** asi za minutu. (RO: 62, 62 – 36)*

16.2 Form OUGHT NOT TO

Similarly as with SHOULD NOT also OUGHT NOT TO expresses weakened obligation not to do something. There were just two examples (RO – 101, 175) found, both with interpretation A and both translated to Czech as MĚL BY:

*Maybe we **ought not to wear** it. – Myslím, že **bychom ho neměli nosit** na těle. (RO: 236, 247 – 175)*

A summary of the all the examples of OUGHT TO and OUGHT NOT TO found in the English fiction and their corresponding translations is presented in Table 23.

OUGHT TO: 16			
meaning	number	translation	number
A	5	MÍT (conditional)	3
		POTREBOVAT	1
		nebylo by lepší	1
B	5	MÍT (conditional)	5
C	6	MUSET	1
		MOCI (past)	1
		lexical verb	3
		MĚL BY	1
OUGHT NOT TO. : 2			
meaning	number	translation	number
A	2	MÍT (conditional)	2

Table 23: Summary of OUGHT TO and OUGHT NOT TO (EN – CZ)

17 OUGHT TO (CZ – EN)

17.1 Form OUGHT TO

17.1.1 Interpretation A: Weakened obligation

There were four cases (VI: 3 – 44, 43, 65; KL: 1 - 84) of *ought to* with this meaning found in the Material. In all these cases *ought to* was the translation of Czech MĚL BY:

Deska už před chvílí dohrála, měl bych vstát a odejít ... - ... I ought to get up and leave ... (KL: 104, 95 – 84)

Zítřejší svou averzi možná měl na hodinu překonat. Jsou třídní schůzky. – Maybe you ought to overcome your aversion for an hour tomorrow. (VI: 91, 76 – 44)

17.1.2 Interpretation B: Desirability

There were six cases (VI: 5 – 13, 14, 57, 109, 116; KL: 1 - 99) of *ought to* with this meaning found in the Material. In five of these cases *ought to* was the translation of Czech MĚL BY, and once of POTŘEBOVAT:

*Možná, že **by měl jít domů**... - Perhaps, **he ought to go home** ... (KL: 117, 108 -99)*

*Intelektuálka sice ví, že **by měla být** spontánně nabídnutým subjektem, ale když hraje bezmocnou ... - ... knows that she **ought to be** ... (VI: 203, 171 – 116)*

*Případným dalším úvahám, co **potřebují** dvacetileté, vzápětí zamezil příchod třináctileté Agáty. - Any further opinions what twenty-year-old girls **ought to do** were ... (VI: 32, 26 – 14)*

17.2 Form OUGHT NOT TO

There appeared just one example (VI) of *ought not to* in the Material and it was a translation of Czech NESMĚT:

*Aktivnost básníkovy slova **nesmí být** ovšem **vykládána** tak, že ... - One **ought not to**, however, **interpret** the active nature of the poet ... (VI: 31, 25 – 12)*

17.3 Form OUGHT HAVE

There appeared just two examples (VI: 2) of *ought have* in the Material, both interpretations A and in both cases these were translations of Czech MÍT in the past tense:

*Možná **jsem měl** taky **psát** - Perhaps I **ought to have gone for writing**, too. (VI: 130, 108 – 69)*

*Možná že **měl** tu práci přece jen **vzít**. - Maybe you **ought to have taken** that job instead. (VI: 221, 185 – 163)*

A summary of the all the examples of OUGHT TO, OUGHT NOT TO and OUGHT TO HAVE found in the translations of the Czech fictions and their corresponding means in Czech is presented in Table 24.

UGHT TO: 11			
meaning	number	translation	number
A	4	MĪT (conditional)	4
B	6	MĪT (conditional)	5
		POTREBOVAT	1
Neg. B	1	NESMĚT	1
UGHT HAVE: 2			
meaning	number	translation	number
A	2	MĪT (past)	2

Table 24: Summary of OUGHT TO in various forms (CZ – EN)

18 THE DIFFERENCE BETWEEN OUGHT TO AND SHOULD

Altogether there were found eighty-eight (thirty-eight in the English fiction and fifty-one in the Czech fiction) examples of SHOULD and twenty-five (twelve in the English fiction and thirteen in the Czech fiction) examples of OUGHT TO.

Only OUGHT TO was found in the Material connected with adverbs such as *perhaps*, or *maybe*. This fact might support Swan's assumption discussed in the introduction to OUGHT TO stating that while SHOULD is generally subjective, expressing the personal opinion or will, OUGHT TO is more objective and "is used with less confidence in the desired for result" (Gailor, 1983: 384). Since SHOULD describes the reality from the viewpoint of the inner conviction of the speaker, then it is something which should not be presented hesitantly. OUGHT TO, on the other hand, since it is based on the circumstances

out of the control of the speaker is less forceful. The adverbs *maybe* or *perhaps* decrease the degree of confidence or conviction.

The Material supported the assumption discussed in the theoretical section that OUGHT TO is relatively rare. Although the numbers do not suggest a big difference (3, 5: 1), it is necessary to realize that OUGHT TO was used only by one author, namely Rowling. This could mean that OUGHT TO is by some authors considered as completely replaceable by SHOULD, and if a different author had been chosen the difference in the use of SHOULD and OUGHT TO could have been even more significant.

19 SHOULD AND OUGHT TO AND THE CORRESPONDING EXPRESSIONS IN CZECH

For the deontic modality the most common corresponding means in Czech is the verb MÍT (82 % in the English fiction and 81% in the Czech fiction). For the epistemic modality, however, MÍT (especially in the conditional mood) is rarely used in Czech. It is probably because in Czech MÍT in the conditional mood is even more strongly connected with deontic interpretation than SHOULD/OUGHT TO and therefore if epistemic modality is needed to be expressed clearly, other means are chosen in Czech, such as modal adverbs, lexical verbs without any explicit expressions of modality or even MUSET. Although SHOULD/OUGHT TO in English express medium epistemic necessity, they sometimes correspond to Czech MUSET which normally expresses strong necessity. One of the reasons might be the fact that, in terms of modal verbs (apart from the alternative means already mentioned), MUSET is the only modal verb which can clearly express epistemic necessity. In the Material there appeared examples where MÍT in the conditional mood was used with epistemic interpretation, but as it has been explained, those were examples where the interpretation was on the boundary between epistemic and dynamic.

20 MODAL EXPRESSIONS WITH “BE“

The other means are means which did not fit into any other category introduced prior to this chapter. Both in English and Czech modal and semi-modal verbs are not the only expressions to express modality. One such set of means in English is represented by the

verb BE either on its own or followed by the past participle. In the following sections these expressions as they were found in the Material are discussed.

20.1 BE TO

BE TO is a modal expression which is apart from referring to the planned or hypothetical future, used also to express necessity – nevertheless only with the deontic interpretation. According to Huddleston and Pullum (2002: 206) “BE is commonly used for deontic necessity, where it is comparable to subjective *must* or (more closely) objective *have*.” Carter and McCarthy (2006: 664) perceive the interpretations of BE TO in the similar way but consider it being rather formal. Since the interpretations of BE TO are similar to MUST and HAVE TO, the same interpretations which were used for them will be used.

In the English fiction there was just one example (IS: 1 - 85) of BE TO expressing obligation found in the original English fiction. It was translated to Czech as MÍT:

*You are saying Ruth and Sarah **are to be dismissed** on the grounds that they are Jewish? – Chcete říci, že **máme propustit** Ruth a Sáru proto, že jsou židovky? (IS: 157, 111 – 85)*

In the Czech fiction there were seven examples (KL: 5 – 10, 18, 79, 106, 150; VI: 1 – 40; HR: 1 - 142) found. In two cases it was subjective – therefore expressing the decision of the speaker, nevertheless from the context it was clear that at the same time it concerned actions that are perceived as generally desirable:

*Prosím Vás, **neodkládejte** návštěvu, odborník Vám poradí ... - Now, you really have to understand that any **delay is to be avoided**... (KL: 23, 18 – 10)*

*Zeptala se mě, zda mě **má oslovovat** křestním jménem nebo příjmením. – She asked if she **was to use** my first name of my Christian name. (KL: 99, 90 – 79)*

In the first case it corresponded to a main verb in the imperative, in the second case it corresponded to Czech MÍT, which is, according to Benešová (1971: 132 – the table), used in Czech only if the source of modality is different from the source of action, or if the modality is dependent on outer circumstances.

In the other five examples (KL: 3, VI: 1, HR: 1) BE TO expressed requirement. In three cases it corresponded to Czech MUSET:

Král s úsměvem pozdvihl skleničku – musel jsem si s ním připít na úspěch kurzu. – Kral raised his glass with a smile – I was to drink a toast with him to the success of ... (VI: 76, 63 – 40)

In one case it corresponded to Czech objective MÍT as it has been discussed above:

Co měl dělat, když já si motala svý v pasíáku. – Well, what was he to do when I was doing time? (KL: 163, 151 – 150)

In the last case BE TO was used with the negative polarity, it, therefore expressed *necessity not to do something*, in other words a *prohibition*. *I was not to spend = it was necessary that I did not spend*, or probably even better interpreted *it was desirable that I did not spend* corresponded to *neschválil* in Czech = *did not find desirable that I should spend more*. The assumption that in this case BE TO, although Huddleston and Pullum (2006: 206) state that BE TO expresses strong modality, expressed medium modality is supported by the fact that in Czech the modality is not explicitly expressed at all.

Měl jsem jen padesátku, připoměl jsem, že mi šetrní inženýři větší obnos na tuzéry neschválili ... - the cautious doctors having decided that I was not to spend... (KL: 126, 116 – 106)

20.2 BE + past participle expressing strong necessity

Second category of the modal expressions with BE includes modal expressions expressing strong necessity. The expression with this modality found in the Material are: **be bound to**, **be certain to**, **be forced to**, **be obliged to**.

Be bound to

It is usually used to express epistemic necessity. Its one advantage in comparison with MUST, which is a typical means used to express epistemic necessity is the fact that it can

be used “with future situation“ (Carter and McCarthy, 2006: 664). BE BOUND TO can also be used to express deontic necessity, but it is rather rare.

In the English fiction *bound to* appeared in the Material five times (IS: 3 43, 87, 143; RO: 1 – 25; DA: 1 - 83). In all five cases it expressed epistemic necessity. Once (DA) it corresponded to Czech MUSET:

It is bound to be cancelled now. – Let musel být už dávno odložen. (DA: 126, 250 – 83).

In three cases it corresponded to an adverb with a modal meaning – *určitě* (IS), *nepochybně* (RO), *nutně* (IS):

And the girl is bound to be let down. – Určitě se zklame. (IS: 166, 119 – 87)

In the last case it corresponded to a main verb in the future tense:

Don't keep looking back all the time, you are bound to get depressed. – Nehrabte se pořád v minulosti, nebo vás to zničí. (IS: 256, 182 – 143)

In the Czech fiction there appeared only one example expressing epistemic necessity and it corresponded to a main verb in the future tense:

Pospěšte si, než někdo přijde. – Someone is bound to come sooner or later ... (KL: 136, 128 – 130)

Be certain to

BE CERTAIN TO and BE SURE TO are both used “epistemically, often (unlike must) with future situation” (Huddleston and Pullum, 2006: 206). In the Material there were examples of BE CERTAIN TO found only in the British fiction (DA: 6 – 28, 35, 74, 84, 146, 149), all used epistemically which is the kind of modality it expresses. It was translated to Czech as *určitě* (3x):

If by any chance it does go, you will be certain to miss it now. – Kdyby ovšem letadlo přece jen letělo, už bychom ho určitě nestihli. (DA: 127, 250 – 84)

Twice it was used with the negative polarity, once translated as *neměl jistotu*, and once as *možná* – in accordance with the theoretical finding that negative certainty (necessity) = possibility:

*He was by no means satisfied that this woman **was absolutely certain to give the alarm when he made his jump.** – Stále **ještě neměl stoprocentní jistotu**, že tato žena spustí pokřik ... (DA: 70, 62 – 35)*

*Mind you, it **is by no means certain** that this is what he did. – Připomínám, že si to **možná ani neuvědomoval** ... (DA: 123, 246 – 74)*

Be sure to

In the English fiction there appeared eleven examples (RO: 6 – 63, 71, 99, 145, 191, 240; DA: 3 – 33, 87, 107; IS: 2 – 102, 140), in nine cases the verb BE was in the present tense, twice in the past tense and once in the form *would be*. In nine cases (DA. 5, DA: 3. IS: 1) it was translated as *určitě* and *would* corresponded to the conditional in Czech:

*Low field **would be sure to win** it then. – Potom **by určitě vyhrálo** dolní pole. (DA: 130, 253 – 87)*

***Are you sure** you have thought it through? – A **určitě jste si** to důkladně promysleli? (RO: 84, 85 – 63)*

In the remaining three cases (RO: 1, IS: 1, DA: 1) it was once translated as *jistě*, once as *nepochybuji* and once as *je jasný*:

*Yes, I **am sure** it does. – No, to máte **jistě** pravdu. (IS: 253, 180 – 140)*

*I **am sure** you all need your rest ... - **Nepochybuji**, že si všichni potřebujete ... (RO: 91, 94 – 77)*

In the Czech fiction there were five examples (KL: 5 – 19, 124, 128, 127, 153) found, four in the present tense and one in the past tense, one with the negative polarity. Twice it corresponded to Czech *určitě* and once to *snad*:

*Ale oni by nám je skoro **určitě** nesměli prodat. – But I **am sure** they would not be allowed to sell them. (KL: 136, 127 – 128)*

Snad by ta prkna nebyla tak drahá. – **I am sure**, they cannot cost very much. (KL: 136, 127 – 127)

Once a different phrase without an explicit modal expression was used in Czech and it was translated by means of *sure* into English:

Ale tím Vás nebudu obtěžovat, máte svých starostí dost. – **I am sure** you have worries of your own. (KL: 135, 126 – 124)

Be meant to

“Be meant to refers to things which are destined, or generally accepted to be true, it can also refer to what desirable, necessary or intended” (Carter and McCarthy, 2006: 674). From the examples in the book it can be concluded that it usually expresses deontic modality (as is also the case of the example found in the Material). There appeared only one example in the English fiction (DA) and it was translated into Czech as MÍT:

*You know quite well **you are meant to wait** for me.* – Dobře víte, že na mě **máte počkat**. (DA: 72, 64 – 41)

Be obvious, be doubtless

Both these modal phrases appeared in the Material only once each, both in the Czech fiction (VI - 55, KL - 19), they both expressed epistemic modality and corresponded once to *nepochybně* and once to *bylo mi jasný*:

*Za teplých nocí sem **nepochybně** směřovaly desítky mileneckých párů ... - ... it was **doubtless** the destination of ...* (KL: 30, 24 – 19)

Be forced to

Forced to is used to express objective deontic necessity, as Carter and McCarthy (2006: 677) have it “*force* and *make* are often used in the passive, with meanings referring to actions made obligatory by external agents“.

In the English fiction it appeared six times (RO: 6 – 16, 119, 123, 125, 154, 169). In three cases it was translated by different forms of Czech NUTIT: *přinutit* (2x), *donutit*, *být nucen*

:

*...they had not given a moment thought to what they would do if they **were forced to separate**. – co by měli dělat, kdyby je okolnosti **donutily se rozdělit** ... (RO: 204, 214 – 154)*

*After another quarter of an hour he **was forced to conclude** that the rest of the letter was gone. – Po další čtvrt hodině **byl** ovšem **nucen připustit** ... (RO: 151, 159 – 119)*

In one case it was translated as MUSET:

*They combed every inch of the room but were **forced to conclude** that the locket was not there. – ... nakonec však **museli přiznat**, že v ní medailonek není... (RO: 156, 162 – 123)*

In the last case the meaning of *forced to* is on the boundary between the deontic and epistemic modality, describing necessity resulting from outer circumstances:

*After they have read my book, people may **be forced to conclude** that ... – Až si lidé přečtou moji knihu, pravděpodobněd **dospějí k přesvědčení**, že ... (RO: 28, 29 – 16)*

In the Czech fiction there appeared four examples (KL: 2 – 66, 123; KU: 1 – 37; HR: 1 – 136) of *forced to*. In two cases (HR, KU) it corresponded to Czech MUSET:

*Dívka, která místo aby spěla za něčím vyšším **musí nosit** opilcům pivo... – A young woman **forced to keep** drunks **supplied** with beer... instead of being allowed to pursue something higher (KU: 67, 55 – 37)*

Once it corresponded to *nutno* and once to a main verb in the past tense (both KL):

*Protože..., upozorňuje ředitelství, že **je nutno** sáhnout k namátkovým prohlídkám tašek zaměstnanců. – The management **must inform** that **we are forced** to take preventive measures. (KL: 90, 80 – 66)*

*Já totiž trpím takovou chorobou. Tu jsem si uhnal, když jsem **dělal** v dole. – I suffer from the ailment I contracted while I **was forced to work** in the mines. (KL: 135, 126 – 123)*

Be obliged to

Obliged to is used to express strong deontic necessity which according to Carter and McCarthy (2006: 674) “originates outside the speaker and occurs mostly in formal contexts“.

In the English fiction it appeared eleven times (IS: 10 – 17, 54, 60, 61, 62, 91, 104, 116, 123, 124; AM: 1 - 166), and in all the cases it really expressed deontic necessity coming from either outer circumstances where it can be seen as bordering the logical necessity category (three – IS), or from an authority other than the speaker (seven cases – IS: 4, AM: 1). In six cases (IS: 6) it was translated into Czech as MUSET:

*Furthermore I **was obliged to recognize** certain other little signs which tended to support this theory. – Navíc **jsem chtěl nechtěl musel** vidět jisté drobné náznaky, které tuto teorii spíše potvrdily. (IS: 180, 129 – 91)*

*...it was still so dark that I **was obliged to turn** on the electric light... - Byla ještě taková tma, že **jsem musel rozsvítit**... (IS: 49, 38 – 17)*

In four cases (IS: 4) it was translated as BÝT NUCEN:

*... and in order to accomplish matters as quickly as possible I **was actually obliged to write** a note and ... - Chtěl jsem záležitost vyřídit co nejdříve, a **byl jsem** proto doslova **nucen** napsat jí vzkaz (IS: 92, 69 – 54)*

In the last case *be obliged* was used with the negative polarity and it expressed not necessity but possibility not to do something. It was translated as *není povinnost*:

*Course, you are **not obliged to say** anything at all, but in my experience ... - Samozřejmě to **není vaše povinnost** cokoli říkat, ale podle mých zkušeností ... (AM: 156, 154 – 166)*

In the Czech fiction there were nine examples (VI: 9 – 24, 27, 33, 39, 46, 58, 76, 106, 112) of *obliged to* found in the Material. All of them also expressed strong deontic necessity and in eight cases corresponded to MUSET in Czech:

*Vůbec mě neposlouchal, takže jsem ho chtě nechtě **musel následovat** – I was **obliged to follow** him willy nilly. (VI: 74, 62 -39)*

*Protože v mém hlasu byla až do konce přítomna ona známá křečovitá důstojnost řečníků, kteří **musí dokončit** svůj proslov i když ... - ...of the speaker who **is obliged to finish** ... (VI: 51, 42 – 27)*

And once it corresponded to *přinucení*:

*Jinak měly třídní schůzky zcela standartní charakter: rodiče **přinucení** nejprve uklízečkou **k vyzutí bot** stáli ... - followed their usual pattern: the parents **obliged** by the cleaner **to remove their shoes** ... (VI: 94, 79 – 49)*

20.3 BE + past participle expressing medium necessity

BE SUPPOSED TO

BE SUPPOSED TO describes the way things are generally believed or expected to be or happen. In grammar books its meaning is often compared to SHOULD, the difference resting in the fact that while SHOULD is considered subjective (see ...), BE SUPPOSED TO “differs from *should* in being objective“ (Huddleston and Pullum, 2002: 207). It predominantly expresses deontic modality and is only “occasionally found in an epistemic sense” (Huddleston and Pullum, 2002: 206). Since the meanings are similar to those of SHOULD, for the purpose of easier comparison, the same interpretations as those used for the discussion of SHOULD will be used.

In English fiction there were nineteen examples (RO: 19) found.

A: Weakened obligation (authority other than the speaker)

There were only two examples (RO: 170, 241) found where there was a clear source of modality, but other than the speaker. In both cases SUPPOSED TO was used in the past tense and translated to Czech by MÍT in the past tense:

It was not supposed to kill me, just keep me there ... - Neměl mě zabít, měl mě tam jen udržet ... (RO: 213, 224 – 170)

B: Desirability

There were eleven examples (RO: 10 – 35, 57, 86, 133, 174, 203, 208, 211, 234, 235) of BE SUPPOSED TO with this meaning found in the Material. In three cases it was translated by Czech MÍT – the past tense in Czech corresponded to the past tense in English and the conditional mood in Czech to the present tense in English:

How he was supposed to get a new one. – Jak si má teď sehnat novou? (RO: 285, 289 – 208)

It is supposed to leave in three minutes... - Mělo by odletět za tři minuty... (RO: 60, 61 – 34)

In four cases it was translated as MUSET in the present tense, while in English owing to the sequence of tenses there was the past tense used:

I know it is supposed to be you who uses it. – Vím, že to musíš udělat ty. (RO: 305, 321 – 235)

In the remaining four cases SUPPOSED TO was twice translated as ČEKAT, once as CHTÍT and once as a main verb without any special modal expression:

...maybe I am supposed to use it. - ...takže se ode mne třeba čeká, že ho budu používat. (RO: 167, 175 – 133)

And what is that supposed to mean? – A co chceš říct tím ... (RO: 235, 246 – 174)

They were supposed to be second ... - Byli druzí na řadě ... (RO: 62, 62 – 35)

C: Weakened logical necessity

Although based on the theoretical findings above the epistemic use of BE SUPPOSED TO is supposed to be rather rare, there were six examples (RO: 6 – 34, 41, 48, 95, 177, 190) with this interpretation found in the Material. In all the cases BE SUPPOSED TO was used in the present tense. Although the past tense is not excluded from this interpretation, the present tense is believed more likely to be used with epistemic interpretation. Epistemic BE SUPPOSED TO is close in meaning to *likely* and *probably*, and even in its epistemic sense it is more objective than for example MUST or SHOULD. While MUST and SHOULD often express personal evaluation of the situation – *He must have been at home since the lights in his flat were on.* = based on the evidence it is me myself who arrives at this conclusion, BE SUPPOSED TO refers to general, shared assumption. And since, what concerns assumptions of general validity, it is more natural to express them in the present than the past (because what used to be an assumption about the present when becoming the past at the same time becomes either confirmed or disproved), BE SUPPOSED TO with the epistemic interpretation is more likely to appear in the present than the past tense. In four cases BE SUPPOSED was translated as *údajně*, and in the last case by the expression *rozkřiklo se*:

*No, because you **are supposed to be** the best at magic. – Ne, protože z nás tři **umíš** údajně nejlíp kouzlit. (RO: 214, 252 – 177)*

*...and you **are supposed to be** on your death bed ... - a o tobě **se říká**, že ležíš na smrtelné posteli ... (RO: 253, 265 – 190)*

In Czech fiction thirteen examples of BE SUPPOSED TO (VI: 6, KL: 5, KU: 2) found.

B: Desirability

There were nine examples (VI: 4 – 15, 55, 62, 108; KL: 3 – 27, 70, 139; KU: 2 – 4, 21) found in the Material. In seven cases (VI: 3, KL: 2, KU: 2) it corresponded to Czech MÍT either in the present tense, or in the past tense or in the conditional mood:

Tímhle **mám řadit**? – I am **supposed to change the gear** with that? (VI: 121, 101 – 62)

Pohlédla na mě tázavě, ale já jako vždycky, když **jsem měl** blíže **vysvětlit** podobu té absurdity, jsem cítil vzrůstající se nechuť... – ...but as usual when I **was supposed to give a more detailed description** ... (KL: 37, 32 – 27)

A vůbec jsem nevěděl, co bych do té řeči jako **měl psát**, protože mi bylo jasné, že když napíšu ... – And I had not the foggiest idea what **I was supposed to put in the speech** because it was obvious ... (VI: 108, 90 – 55)

In the remaining two cases it once corresponded to Czech MOCI and once you were not supposed to corresponded to bylo proti předpisům:

Jak s ní asi tak **můžu vycházet**, když se mnou už tejdén nemluví.- How **I am supposed to get on with her** when she's not been talking to me for the past week? (VI: 33, 27 – 15)

Zdržovat se tu v denní dobu **by bylo proti předpisům**. – During the day you **were not supposed to hang around here**. (KL: 91, 82 – 70)

C: Weakened logical necessity

There were five examples (VI: 2 – 67, 68; KL: 3 – 60, 122, 141) found in the Material. It corresponded to *možná, předpokládám, mělo, nepochybně* and a main verb in the past tense:

Předpokládám, že stejně někam odjízďte stopem. – Besides, **I suppose** you'll be hitch-hiking off somewhere. (VI: 129, 107 – 68)

A co se tam **vlastně mělo zjevit**? – What was it he **was supposed to see**? (KL: 134, 125 – 122)

Mistr Holý **nepochybně** tuto část dne **trávil** sháněním nesehnatelných součástek. – It **was supposed** that Mr Holý **spent** this part of the day ... (KL: 73, 66 -60)

21 OTHER MEANS OF EXPRESSING NECESSITY

21.1 NEED

NEED is used both as a modal and a lexical verb, and its interpretations in both the functions generally overlap, but “there is some tendency for lexical *need* to favour a dynamic interpretation more than auxiliary *need* or *must*” (Huddleston and Pullum, 2002: 206). The same is also discussed by Leech (2001) who considers *need* on the one hand and *must*, *should/ought to* on the other hand from the viewpoint of constraint and concludes that “for *must* and *should/ought to* the constraint comes from outside the obligated person rather than inside (except for I/we *must*) while for *need* it is the own situation of the obligated person that imposes the constraint” (Leech 2001: 102, 103). Also Perkins compares NEED TO with both MUST and HAVE TO. He states that “MUST by itself gives no clue as to the identity or nature of a deontic source or empirical circumstance, apart from such the fact that it is such as to entail the occurrence of a given event. HAVE (GOT) TO is more specific in that it excludes (if not directly) the speaker from being the deontic source/empirical circumstance.... HAVE (GOT) TO thus indicates that compulsion is, or has been imposed, from without. NEED TO is more explicit than MUST in a slightly different way. It indicates a compulsion which comes from within, but which is still explicitly objective.” (Perkins 1983: 62). Auxiliary *need* is further “not used when the verb complement is a noun phrase” (Carter and McCarthy, 2006: 658). More visible distinction in meaning between lexical and auxiliary NEED can be observed under negation. In the present tense *needn't* means - it is not an obligation while DO NOT NEED TO = it is not necessary – the state of affairs does not require it to be done. In the past tense *needn't have* will refer to something done but the realization of which was unnecessary, while *did not need to* will describe an action which was not realized because it was clear in advance that it was not needed.

In the English fiction there were seven examples (RO – 62, 66, 67, 77, 79, 138) of lexical NEED TO, all but one (the future tense) in the present tense, all used with the positive polarity. In all the cases NEED TO expressed deontic modality, in five cases it was translated as MUSET, and in two as POTŘEBOVAT:

Will we need to translate runes? – Budeme muset překládat runy? (RO: 83, 85 – 62)

What we really need to decide is where we are going. – První věc, kterou doopravdy musíme rozhodnout je ... (RO: 87, 89 – 67)

There were also found five examples of auxiliary NEED (DA: 2 – 54, 64; IS – 93, 129: 2; AM: 1 – 147), all used with the negative polarity and all in the present tense. In four cases (DA: 1, IS: 2, AM: 1) it was translated as Czech NEMUSET, and once by a main verb in the imperative:

No, you needn't know that yet, - Ne, ještě to nemusíš vědět. (AM: 113, 113 – 147)

You need not tell me – I happen to know you adore Chopin. – Nic mi neřkej – já vím, že Chopina zbožňuješ. (DA: 95, 347 – 54)

In the Czech fiction there were four examples (VI: 3 – 17, 36, 105; HR: 1 – 87) of lexical NEED, two in the present tense, one in the future tense and one in the form of *would* + perfect infinitive. In three cases (VI: 2, HR: 1) it corresponded to Czech MUSET:

... ale to byly zase samé břízy, veliké břízy, to bych musel mít žebřík, abych si vylezl na nějakou větev... - ... but all the trees were birch now, tall birch, and I 'd have needed a ladder to reach one of the branches ... (HR: 223, 118 – 87)

In the last case NEED was preceded with *all*, which is also often used with HAVE TO. HAVE TO in this context often corresponds to Czech STAČIT. Since HAVE TO is close in meaning to NEED, also the interpretation of NEED with *all* is similar, this time expressed in Czech by *jen*:

Už jen konvička s kávou a dva šálky – a tichý hovor o literatuře může začít. – All it needs is a coffee pot and two cups – and ... (VI: 34, 27 – 17)

There was only one example of auxiliary NEED found in the Czech fiction. It was used with the negative polarity and in corresponded to *není nutný* in Czech:

*Není nutný všechno chápat, poznamenal jsem v souladu se svým přesvědčením ... - Surely one **need not understatnd** everything. (VI: 133, 111 – 72)*

Since all the cases of NEED with the negative polarity were used with present reference and all were cases of auxiliary NEED, there was no material provided to reflect on the theoretical findings regarding the difference in meaning discussed above. What concerns the difference between MUST and lexical NEED from the viewpoint of the source of modality, there were ten examples (RO: 6, VI: 3, HR: 1) of lexical NEED all used in affirmative sentences on which this could be studied. In five cases (RO: 3, VI: 1, HR: 1), where NEED was in the first person, this potential distinction cannot occur. The remaining five cases really referred to a situation which naturally required the asked for (necessary) behaviour. So the source of modality was not anybody concrete but the situation in which the person on which the obligation was imposed happened to be in. The distinction in meaning in the first person is not discussed in the theory, but it seems worth mentioning, since in the first person the difference in meaning seems to be directly opposite. While MUST and SHOULD in the first person clearly suggest the obligation coming from the speaker, NEED still keeps its “imposed by the situation necessity“, therefore necessity coming more from the outside than the one of MUST and SHOULD in the first person. In all cases, however, NEED expressed more objective necessity than MUST/SHOULD because for them the source of obligation is usually concrete in comparison with a situation which is always more general. This can be well illustrated in the example of NEED in an interrogative structure:

***Will we need to translate runes? – Budeme muset překládat runy?**(RO: 83, 85 – 62)*

It is not visible from the sentence itself, but the need to translate runes was connected with a kind of quest they were supposed to fulfil, therefore the obligation to do it was based on circumstances. If the sentence was changed into *Will we have to translate runes?* – then it might be a question about a content of a test where the obligation would be imposed by the teacher. MUST in this question is highly improbable.

21.2 HAD BETTER

Had better is used only with deontic interpretation and it is “generally subjective” (Huddleston and Pullum, 2002: 196). Therefore it is “not used to express general obligations and requirements” Carter and McCarthy (2006: 674). It is often contracted into *'d better*, but since this paper does not deal in detail with differences between formal and informal language, the distinction between full or contracted form is not relevant.

In the English fiction there appeared eleven examples (DA: 7 – 34, 40, 48, 67, 80, 116, 122; RO: 2 – 83, 112; IS: 1 – 65; AM: 1 – 184). In all cases it referred to the future. In four cases (RO: 2, IS: 1, DA: 1) it was translated by MÍT in the conditional mood:

*I think we **had better start** without Author ... - Myslím, že **bychom měli začít** bez Artura.... (RO: 102, 106 – 83)*

*You **had better come** and see him. – **Měl byste tam zajít**. (IS: 108, 81 – 65).*

In three cases (AM: 1, DA: 2) it was translated by MUSET, once in the future tense and once in the conditional mood:

***I'd better hurry** or they'll be shut. - **Budu si muset pospíšet**, nebo mi zavřou. (AM: 190, 188 – 184)*

In three cases (DA: 3) it was translated as *radši, raději*:

*I think, **I'd better do that**. – **Zajdu tam radši sám**. (DA: 192, 286 – 122)*

In the last case it was translated as *dejte si pozor*:

***You'd better not lose** this ticket, then. – **Dejte si pozor, abyste lístek neztratila**. (DA: 189, 283 – 116)*

In the Czech fiction there appeared two examples (VI: 2- 5, 31) of *had better*. It once corresponded to Czech *raději*, once to a main verb in the future tense, supported by *tak* which clearly expresses that what the speaker suggests is considered by him as suitable or desirable.

Řeknu-li nyní, že... - **raději proto budu** v plném znění citovat článek ... - *Were I now to say ... - so I had better quote in full an article ...* (VI: 19, 15 – 5)

Tak si dej ještě jednu. – **You had better have another one**, then. (VI: 61, 51 – 31)

21.3 WOULD RATHER

“*Would rather* says that one state of affairs is preferable to another and it occurs most commonly with I” (Carter and McCarthy, 2006: 669). There was only one example found in the Material (DA), translated to Czech by MÍT in the conditional mood:

I'd rather you didn't do that. – *Měla by sis počkat.* (DA: 194, 228 – 126)

21.4 Modal adverbs, adverbials

Modal adverbs like *certainly*, *surely*, *obviously*, *necessarily*, *unmistakably*, *for sure*, *no doubt* express epistemic necessity.

In the English fiction there were twelve examples of *certainly* (DA: 8 – 14, 16, 17, 21, 37, 53, 89, 111; RO: 3 – 27, 132, 144) found. They were translated twice as *určitě* (RO), twice as *nepochybně* a *bezpochyby* (RO, DA), twice as *samosebou* (DA), and once as *rozhodně*, once as *poněkud* and three times without any explicit modal expression:

Certainly *I will if that is the way you want it.* – **Samosebou**, proč ne? (DA: 57, 9 – 21)

...and **certainly it would be unreasonable** to deny either of them for pleasure of monthly meeting. - ... a že **by bylo nerozumné** upírat jim oboustranné potěšení (DA: 184, 278 – 111)

Then there were found three examples of *surely* (RO: 3 – 105, 141), translated as *jistě*, *nepochybně* a *přece musejí*:

But **surely** people realize, what is going on? – Lidé si ale **přece musejí** uvědomovat, co se děje? (RO: 171, 179 – 141)

Lastly, there appeared the following expressions – *no doubt* (RO - 2), *obviously* (RO - 187) and *unmistakably* (DA - 25), translated to Czech as *určitě*, *očividně* and *neomylně* respectively.

In the Czech fiction there appeared two examples – *obviously* (VI – 16) and *necessarily* (KL – 7) corresponding to Czech *evidentně* a *netvrším*:

*Netvrším, že ho museli nasadit zrovna proti tobě, třeba jim šlo jen o to ... - I do **not necessarily mean** to say that he is being asked to spy on you ... (KL: 22, 17 – 7)*

21.5 Special cases

The last group of language means used to express necessity in English gathers together various means which appeared in the Material once only, or twice at most. Since they do not provide representative enough example of their use, they are just listed here, not analysed or discussed any further. Where just listing the means is not enough to illustrate the way in which the means was probably used, the whole sentence is provided.

In the English fiction there appeared the following examples and corresponding translations: *No doubt* – *nepochybně* (RO), *duty* – *povinnost* (DA), *we have a duty not to be* – *neměli bychom se* (IS), *ORDER* – *PŘIKÁZAT, NAKÁZAT* (RO: 2), and the infinitive of *BE* – *MUSET* (RO)

*The first **thing to do was to find** Ron... - Ze všeho nejdřív **musel najít** Rona ... (RO: 209, 221 – 166)*

In the Czech fiction there appeared the following examples:

A necessity of survival – *nezbytné pro přežití* (VI), *the force* – *MUSET* (HR):

...tak ten tah jako by jej za vlasy vytáhl, až se **musel prudce vztyčit**, a jak si tak hlučně kýchl ... - and as he inhaled it was as if **the force** of the intake **pulled him straight up** by the hair, because he suddenly rose to his feet ... (HR: 201, 91 – 71)

21.6. Summary of other means of expressing necessity (in tables)

The following tables illustrate summaries of the means which were not classified into any bigger and more general categories. Table illustrates the different means used to express deontic necessity found in the English fiction and their translations into Czech. Table 26 illustrates the different means used to express epistemic necessity found in the English fiction and their translations into Czech.

DIFFERENT MEANS: deontic (EN – CZ) 50			
means	number	translation	number
BE TO	1	MÍT	1
BE MEANT TO	1	MÍT	1
BE FORCED TO	5	NUTIT	3
		MUSET	1
		DOSPĚT K	1
BE OBLIGED TO	11	MUSET	6
		BÝT NUCEN	4
		<i>povinnost</i>	1
NEED	7	MUSET	5
		POTŘEBOVAT	2
BE SUPPOSED TO – A	2	MÍT	2
BE SUPPOSED TO – B	11	MÍT	3
		MUSET	4
		ČEKAT	2
		CHTÍT	1
		lexical verb	1
HAD BETTER	11	MÍT	4
		MUSET	3
		<i>radši</i>	3
		<i>dejte si pozor</i>	
WOULD RATHER	1	MÍT	1

Table 25: Different means used to express deontic necessity (EN – CZ)

DIFFERENT MEANS – epistemic (EN – CZ): 31

means	number	translation	number
BE BOUND TO	5	MUSET	1
		adverb	3
		Lex.	
BE CERTAIN TO	5	adverb	4
		MÍT	1
BE SURE TO	14	adverb	12
		adjective	1
		<i>nepochybuji</i>	1
BE OBVIOUS	1	<i>nepochybně</i>	1
BE DOUBTLESS	1	<i>bylo mi jasný</i>	
BE SUPPOSED TO	5	<i>údajně</i>	4
		<i>rozkřiklo se</i>	1

MODAL ADVERB(IAL)S: 15

means	number	means	number
<i>certainly</i>	9	<i>nepochybně</i>	3
<i>surely</i>	3	<i>určitě</i>	2
<i>obviously</i>	1	<i>samosebou</i>	2
<i>unmistakably</i>	1	<i>bezpochyby</i>	1
<i>no doubt</i>	1	<i>rozhodně</i>	1
		<i>jistě</i>	1
		<i>přece musejí</i>	1
		lexical verb	3

Table 26: Different means used to express epistemic necessity (EN – CZ)

Table 27 illustrates the different means used to express deontic necessity found in the English translations of the Czech fiction and their corresponding means in Czech. Table 28 illustrates the different means used to express epistemic necessity found in the English translations of the Czech fiction and their corresponding means in Czech.

DIFFERENT MEANS – deontic (CZ – EN): 35			
means	number	translation	number
BE TO	5	MUSET	3
		MÍT	3
		lexical verb (imperative)	1
BE FORCED TO	5	MUSET	2
		NUTNO	1
		lexical verb	1
BE OBLIGED TO	9	MUSET	8
		přinucení	1
BE SUPPOSED TO - B	9	MÍT	7
		MOCI	1
		special	1
HAD BETTER	2	radši	1
		lexical verb	1
NEED	5	MUSET	3
		jen	1
		není nutný	1

Table 27: Different means used to express deontic necessity (CZ – EN)

DIFFERENT MEANS – epistemic (CZ – EN): 12			
means	number	translation	number
BE BOUND TO	1	lexical verb	1
BE OBVIOUS	1	<i>nepochybně</i>	1
BE DOUBTLESS	1	<i>bylo mi jasný</i>	
BE SURE TO	5	adverb	4
		special	1
BE SUPPOSED TO	4	<i>možná</i>	1
		MÍT	1
		PŘEDPOKLÁDAT	1
		lexical verb	1
MODAL ADVERB(IAL)S: 2			
means	number	means	number
<i>obviously</i>	1	<i>evidentně</i>	1
<i>necessarily</i>	1	<i>netvrdím</i>	1

Table 28: Different means used to express epistemic necessity (CZ – EN)

22 NO EXPLICIT EXPRESSIONS OF NECESSITY IN ENGLISH CORRESPONDING TO EXPLICIT MODAL MEANS IN CZECH

22.1 HAVE in other forms than HAVE (GOT) TO

As it has already been discussed, the verb HAVE in the form HAVE (GOT) TO is a common means used to express necessity in English, often called semi-modal to emphasise its function. It is, however, not the only form of HAVE used with this meaning.

In the English fiction there were found the following structures of HAVE expressing necessity (in all cases deontic): *have something to do*, *have no option/alternative but*, and *have somebody do something*. In four cases (IS: 3 – 48, 76, 118; RO: 1 – 91; DA: 1 - 170)

the *HAVE*-structures were translated into Czech as MUSET, in one case as *neměla jinou možnost*, and in one case as MÍT (RO: 1 -10)

Mr Stevens, I have something to tell you. – Rane Stevensi, musím vám něco říci. (IS: 224, 161 – 118)

...and he knew he had no option but obey ... - věděl, že musí poslechnout ... (RO: 108, 112 – 91)

...she would have us all mate with Muggles ...or no doubt, werevolves ... - ...takže podle toho, co napsala, bychom se všichni měli pářit s mudly ... nebo nepochybně i s vlkodlaky... (RO: 18, 18 – 10)

In the Czech fiction there appeared one example (VI: 1 - 107), and it corresponded to Czech MUSET:

...bud'to svému kolegovi ve spánku prostřelíte hlavu, nebo se s ním budete muset spřátelit ... - ... than you have no alternative but to blow the head off your companion or to make friends with him ... (VI: 187, 156 – 107)

22.2 Main verb in the indicative mood

In the English fiction there appeared four examples (RO: 2 – 33, 69; IS: 1 – 38; DA: 1 - 182) of a verb phrase in the indicative without a modal verb in English which were translated into Czech by means of a modal expression, namely by MUSET:

The Portkey is through here. – K přenášeđlu musíme tudy. (RO: 60, 61 – 69)

Cost me a tenner to old Feasey. – Musel jsem starýmu F. vypláznout pětku. (DA: 338, 209 – 182)

In the Czech fiction there were three such examples (HR: 2 – 46, 76; VI: 1 - 103) found and they all corresponded to Czech MUSET:

...naštěstí jsem právě v té době musel do Německa ... - it fortunately coincided with a visit to Germany (VI: 183, 153 – 103)

22.3 Other means

Once the imperative mood in English was translated into Czech as MUSET (DA: 1):

*And whatever you do, **keep calm**. – A stuj co stůj **musíš zachovat klid**. (DA: 143, 266 – 100)*

The infinitive of purpose (English fiction - RO: 1, Czech fiction – HR: 1) was also used with modal interpretation, in both cases corresponding to Czech MUSET:

*Dumbledore **left me stuff to do** ... Ron and H know about it ... - Brumbál **mi nechal nějakou práci, kterou musím** dokončit ... R a H vědí o co jde (RO: 77, 79 – 53)*

*...zabil svoji paní, vyřízl jí přirození a ten cestující pod hrozbou zabití tou sekyrou **musel to přirození sníst**. - ...killed her with an ax, then cut out her vaginand **told the salesman to eat it** or else be killed with the ax. (HR: 196, 84 – 68)*

In three cases (IS: 2, HR: 1) there were different structures used in English which always corresponded to Czech MUSET:

*These last few hours, **let me say it**, have proved unreasonably taxony ones. – **Musím přiznat**, že předchozích několik hodin mi dalo docela zabrat. (IS: 189, 136 – 98)*

*Then **may I offer you my congratulations** .- Pak vám tedy **musím blahopřát**. (IS: 229, 164 – 125)*

*... a dodal, takhle **musíš umět házet** drobný oknem, aby dveřmi přišli ti stovky, víš? - ...now, he went on, **if you can throw small change** out of the window like that, the C-notes will come waltzing in through the door... (HR: 161, 38 – 36)*

Table 29 illustrates the cases where there appeared no explicit means of modality in English while there was an explicit modal means in Czech as they were found in the English fiction.

NO MOD. EXPRESSION IN E. (EN – CZ): 10			
means	number	translation	number
HAVE STH. TO DO	1	MUSET	1
HAVE NO OPTION	1	MUSET	1
HAVE SB: DO	1	MUSET	1
lexical verb	4	MUSET	4
imperative	1	MUSET	1
infinitive of purpose	1	MUSET	1
special	1	MUSET	1

Table 29: No modal expressions in English (EN – CZ)

Table 30 illustrates the cases where there appeared no explicit means of modality in English while there was an explicit modal means in Czech as they were found in the Czech fiction.

NO MOD. EXPRESSION IN E. - (CZ – EN): 7			
means	number	translation	number
HAVE NO ALTERNATIVE	2	MUSET	2
lexical verb	3	MUSET	3
infinitive of purpose	1	MUSET	1
special	1	MUSET	1

Table 30: No modal expressions in English (CZ – EN)

In the Material, there was no example of epistemic modality where there would have been an explicit expression of modality in Czech and no explicit expression of modality in English. nfound in the Material.

CONCLUSION

23 THE SUMMARY OF THE THEORETICAL PART

Modality is a complex notion which can be expressed by various language means on a grammatical and lexical level. Moreover, modality is often perceived as a general feature of a language, so attempts have been made to provide a general definition applicable to all languages irrespective of the concrete means a particular language uses to express it. The keywords, repeatedly used in such definitions are: the 'speaker', 'action', and 'reality', referred to by a number of various terms. These terms used, such as *accessibility*, *potentiality*, *factuality*, *actualization*, *realization*, etc. can differ from one another in the shades of their meanings, but in their core meanings they include the already mentioned key concepts. Generally modality can be seen as a certain 'relation' between the key concepts.

Although building on the same bases which have just been described, there seem to be two different approaches to the general description of modality: modality is seen as functioning either on the level of semantics or of pragmatics, treating individual means of expression respectively either as polysemous or as monosemous (vague) with different interpretations according to the context.

Irrespective of the way in which modality is approached, it is generally classified into two basic kinds. One, referred to as deontic (intrinsic, primary etc.), is 'active' in its nature expressing the potentiality of an activity to be realized or not. The proposition thus results in action or non-action. The other, called epistemic (extrinsic, secondary, etc.), is comparatively more 'passive' commenting on the proposition from the viewpoint of its probability; possibility and certainty being the two ends of the scale. A third kind of modality, often called dynamic, can also be found in literature. However, it has been decided that a dichotomy approach will be applied with regard to the aims, objectives and desired outcomes of this paper. The discussion about a more privileged status of one of the two kinds of modality is also irrelevant, regarding the conception of this paper. Some linguists consider only epistemic modality as genuinely modal, others claim that deontic modality is historically older. They point out that epistemic readings gradually developed from deontic ones. What is, however, crucial is the fact that many modal expressions

(central modal verbs representing a typical example) are capable of being used with both deontic and epistemic readings depending on context. Moreover, the distinction between the two kinds of modality (deontic and epistemic) is not clear-cut and for certain modal expressions in a particular context it may not be possible to unambiguously determine their kinds of modality.

The comparison of the structures of the semantic field of necessity of English and Czech has revealed that the basic features are similar, but the semantic values of individual, theoretically corresponding means are often different. In both languages the key means used are modal verbs, but in English they are even more strictly formally delimited from the rest of the verbs. There are more significant differences between English and Czech in the way epistemic modality is expressed. While in English modal verbs are by far the most frequent in expressing even this kind of modality and, moreover, are distinguished grammatically, Czech does not apply any formal distinction between deontic and epistemic interpretation of modal expressions. Furthermore, Czech often expresses epistemic modality by means of adverbs, which is not non-existent, but much rarer in English.

24 THE SUMMARY OF THE PARTIAL RESULTS BASED ON THE STUDY OF THE MATERIAL

In the second, empirical part of the paper the findings and conclusions arrived at in the theoretical part are compared and contrasted with the reality represented by the excerpts from English and Czech fiction. The issue is studied in both directions: English original fiction and the corresponding published Czech translations and original Czech fiction and the corresponding published English translations. To minimize the influence of natural changes in languages, only post-war fiction dating to the 60s and later is included. For both directions four pieces of fiction have been selected; the number of items excerpted from each book was determined by the actual number of expressions of necessity contained in that book:

English fiction

- Amis, M. (1997) *Other People: Mysterious Story*, London: Vingeage.
- Amis, M. (1996) *Jiní lidé: Tajemný příběh*, Plzeň: Mustang. Translated by Jana and Andrew Tolletovi.
- Dahl, R. (1984) *The Best of Roald Dahl*, Penguin Books.
- Dahl, R. (1992) *Devětadvacet políbení*, Praha: Melantrich. Translated by Jaroslav Kořán.
- Ishiguro, K. (1989) *The Remains of the Day*, Faber and Faber.
- Ishiguro, K. (1997) *Soumrak dne*, Volvox Globator. Translated by Zdena Pošvicová.
- Rowling, J. (2007) *Harry Potter and the Deathly Hollows*, Bloomsbury Publishing Plc.
- Rowling, J. (2008) *Harry Potter a relikvie smrti*, Praha: Albatros. Translated by Pavel Medek.

Czech fiction

- Hrabal, B. (1989) *Tři novely – Obsluhoval jsem anglického krále*, Praha: Československý spisovatel.
- Hrabal, B. (1990) *I Served The King of England*, Picador. Translated by Paul Wilson.
- Klíma I. (1990) *Má veselá jitra*. Praha: Rozmluvy.
- Klíma, I. (1993) *My Merry Mornings*, Readers International. Translated by George Theiner.
- Kundera M. (2006) *Nesnesitelná lehkost bytí*, Brno: Atlantis.
- Kundera M. (1984) *The Unbearable Lightness of Being*, Harper and Row. Translated by Michael Henry Heim.
- Viewegh, M. (1997) *Výchova dívek v Čechách*, Brno: Petrov
- Viewegh, M. (1997) *Bringing up Girls in Bohemia*, Readers International. Translated by A. G. Brian.

In the direction from English to Czech six hundred items have been excerpted and their translations recorded. In the opposite direction five hundred original sentences and their translations have been analysed. Since the whole study is mainly qualitative and the final results are processed in the form of proportional parts in percents, the numerical disproportion does not have any distorting effects on the final conclusions. Although the main focus of the paper is semantic, the starting point of the analysis is always the

individual means (therefore a form), whose various interpretations are then discussed and compared first within one language and then between English and Czech.

24.1 Inescapable (strong) necessity

There are two basic means used to express strong necessity in English: MUST and HAVE TO, in contrast to one basic means in Czech: MUSET. English seems to differentiate more clearly between individual interpretations, at least in terms of deontic necessity where MUST is generally subjective and HAVE TO objective. The Material, however, demonstrates that this distinction is not strict, and both MUST and HAVE TO are used to refer to general requirements. Even within this single semantic value, however, there seems to be a difference in that MUST appears to be more 'active' while HAVE TO is more 'passive' in relation to obligation. This means that MUST is used to express obligation which can be actively responded to – in other words actually performed or fulfilled, while HAVE TO expresses necessity to face or endure something.

In Czech the whole area of strong necessity can be covered by MUSET and for the majority of cases by an imperative construction as well, without showing any significant difference in meaning between the two forms. This, however, does not mean that Czech is not able to differentiate between individual interpretations at all, and translators often use other than explicitly modal means to do so. Czech modal verb MUSET is more closely related with MUST (the reasons lie in its often deontic and more active function) while HAVE TO is translated into Czech by a wider range of forms often without explicitly expressed modality (e.g. *stačit (jen), mít, být donucen*, or lexical verbs in the present, past or future tenses).

*To support these ladies the men **must** work like slaves ... - Aby pak tyto dámy mohly žít na úrovni, **musí** dřít muži jako otroci ... (DA: 183, 277 - 109)*

*We've all **got to put** our feet up at some point - Všichni to **musíme** někdy **zabalit**. (IS: 256, 182 - 144)*

*...a **stačí přijít** a zatáhne za provázek a figurína jako dětský balónek se stáhne ... - and all you **have to** do is come and pull on the right string and the mannequin ... (HR: 155, 31 - 34)*

The difference in actuality and future reference of a lexical verb described in English grammars (HAVE TO can express actuality because the lexical verb it modifies has only a limited possibility to refer to the future and if it does then it refers only to the near future, while MUST cannot express actuality, but the lexical verb can refer and often does to the far away future) is also reflected in Czech translations. HAVE TO was often translated into Czech by an affirmative construction in the present tense while MUST, if no modal verb was used, was mainly translated by means of a lexical verb in the future tense.

*I am sorry, but I **must go on**. - Nezlobte se, ale **budu** ještě **pokračovat**. (Ishiguro: 62, 47 - 30)*

*Proč **musěj** moje děti zpívat ve sboru, když ve sboru zpívat nechtěj. – Why do all my kids **have to** sing in the choir(VI: 165, 138 – 92)*

*Of course you **will have to let** them go. - Samozřejmě je **budete muset propustit**. (IS: 155, 110 - 82)*

The difference in expressing logical necessity between English and Czech basically corresponds to Dušková's (1998: 186) claim about the higher frequency of modal verbs as the means of epistemic modality in English and modal adverbs and particles as the corresponding means in Czech. It is, however, very important to add one more possibility which often corresponds to a modal verb in English. In Czech often no explicit means of expressing necessity has been found, just a lexical verb in a particular tense. With regard to epistemic necessity a corresponding situation has not occurred in English.

*You **must be** so proud. – **Určitě jste** na ni nesmírně pyšní. (RO: 17, 16 – 7)*

*Amy's not been back here for, ooh it **must be** eight or nine years. - Amy už zde nebyla, no, to **bude** už osm nebo devět let. (AM: 96, 95 - 137)*

24.2 Escapable (weakened) necessity

The two basic means used to express weakened necessity in English are, in accordance with theory, SHOULD and OUGHT TO. OUGHT TO was, however, used only by one author. One possible difference between the two expressions, and thus a potential reason for the use of OUGHT TO might be the more objective character of OUGHT TO and therefore the possibility of its modification by *perhaps* or *maybe*. Since the necessity expressed by OUGHT TO is based on circumstances out of control of the speaker, it is perceived as less forceful.

The most common corresponding means for deontic modality in Czech is the verb MÍT (82 % in the translations of the English fiction and 81% in the Czech fiction). In comparison with inescapable necessity, its expression by means of modal verbs is more frequent, because MUST has corresponded to a modal verb in Czech only in 57% out of the cases, and HAVE TO in 68 %.

For epistemic modality, however, MÍT (especially in conditional mood) is rarely used in Czech. A probable explanation is that in comparison with English SHOULD/OUGHT TO, Czech MÍT in conditional mood is even more strongly connected with a deontic interpretation and therefore if epistemic modality is needed to be expressed clearly, other means such as modal adverbs, lexical verbs without any explicit expressions of modality or even MUSET are chosen. Although SHOULD/OUGHT TO in English express medium epistemic necessity, they sometimes correspond to Czech MUSET which normally expresses strong necessity. One of the reasons might be the fact that, in terms of modal verbs (apart from the alternative means already mentioned), MUSET is the only modal verb which can clearly express epistemic necessity.

*Shouldn't be any trouble anyway because I picked the others in the race myself. –
Musí to vyjít, protože ty druhý mrchy jsem pro závod vybíral já osobně. (DA: 338,
209 – 181)*

Another means that is used to express only deontic necessity is the verb NEED. According to the entries in English – Czech dictionaries, it should be closely related to the verb POTŘEBOVAT in Czech, but its modal interpretation often corresponds to Czech MUSET, and therefore might be seen as close to MUST and HAVE TO. The basic difference between the three expressions seems to be in the degree of

objectivity/subjectivity. While MUST is predominantly subjective, NEED is, on the contrary, predominantly objective, HAVE TO representing the most neutral option in this respect, nevertheless also mainly objective. Although both being objective, NEED and HAVE TO show a certain difference in their use. While the source of modality for both verbs is different from the speaker, in the case of HAVE TO the source of modality can be a concrete person or people, for NEED the source of modality is mainly a situation, outer circumstances.

Both English and Czech use other means to express strong and weak necessity apart from the basic means already mentioned. These are generally structures with the verb BE and adverbs in English and adverbs, verbs with modal meaning and no explicit modal expressions in Czech.

In English, strong deontic necessity is expressed by BE TO, BE FORCED TO, BE OBLIGED TO and strong epistemic necessity by BE BOUND TO, BE CERTAIN TO, BE SURE TO, BE OBVIOUS, BE DOUBTLESS and by adverbs such as *certainly, surely, obviously, unmistakably etc.* Weakened deontic necessity is expressed by BE SUPPOSED TO, *had better, would rather*, and weakened epistemic necessity by BE SUPPOSED TO.

In Czech, strong deontic necessity is further expressed by the verb NUTIT, and structures BÝT NUCEN, DONUCEN, NUTNO and strong epistemic modality is expressed by the verb NEPOCHYBOVAT, structures BÝT VIDĚT, JASNÝ, and adverbs, such as *určitě, rozhodně, nepochybně*, etc. Weakened deontic necessity is expressed by the verbs POTŘEBOVAT, ČEKAT, CHTÍT, DOSPĚT K, and weakened epistemic modality by adverbs such as *zřejmě, údajně, nejspíš*, etc.

English modal structures with the verb BE enlarge the variety of the means expressing modality on the lexical level even further. They are much more varied and frequent than in Czech where the most commonly found corresponding counterparts are modal verbs MUST and MÍT which represent 77% out of corresponding means in terms of deontic modality. Therefore, at least in the case of deontic modality, English seems to have a larger offer of means to choose from.

As far as epistemic necessity is concerned, the situation is opposite thanks to the large choice of adverbs frequently used in Czech. In the domain of epistemic necessity the

difference in the nature of the means used is much more visible than in the case of deontic necessity.

*You are saying Ruth and Sarah **are to be dismissed** on the grounds that they are Jewish? – Chcete říci, že **máme propustit** Ruth a Sáru proto, že jsou židovky? (IS: 157, 111 – 85)*

*It **is bound to be cancelled** now. – Let **musel být** už dávno **odložen**. (DA: 126, 250 – 83).*

*If by any chance it does go, you **will be certain** to miss it now. – Kdyby ovšem letadlo přece jen letělo, už bychom ho **určitě** nestihli. (DA: 127, 250 – 84)*

24.3 Necessity not to

The most common means to express **necessity not to** in English are MUST NOT, CANNOT, NOT ALLOWED TO, SHOULD NOT and OUGHT NOT TO. In Czech, the corresponding means are NESMĚT, NEMÍT, NEMÍT/NEBÝT PŘÁNO/DOVOLENO, the last two being only marginal.

SHOULD NOT TO and OUGHT NOT TO are interchangeable, basically expressing weakened modality and closely corresponding to NEMÍT. An interesting question is what the difference between MUST NOT, CANNOT AND NOT ALLOWED TO is, since they all can correspond to Czech NESMĚT. NOT ALLOWED TO is rather descriptive, expressing its meaning explicitly. It is used in situations when an action which can be permitted or not-permitted is being described. CANNOT, unless it expresses inability, is similar in its interpretations to NOT ALLOWED TO. MUST NOT on the other hand refers to actions which logically, by their nature, cannot be permitted or banned, but are considered morally inappropriate or bad.

*and I **must never** forget it: life is good. - a nikdy to **nesmím** zapomenout: život je dobrý (Amis: 77, 77- 114)*

*They **cannot keep** the objects longer than that unless they can prove they are dangerous.(= it is banned by the Ministry) – **Nesmějí si** věci z pozůstalosti **ponechávat** déle, neprokáží-li ... (RO: 105, 108 – 87)*

25 GENERAL SUMMARY AND CONCLUSIONS

The general discussion and the summary of the differences between English and Czech start with an overview of means of expression of necessity found in the Material. For this purpose tables are presented in which all means found in the Material are listed, including the occurrence frequency of these means. There are separate tables for each kind of modality and also for each direction of translation. The numbers in the legends to the tables express: the number in front of the backslash = the total number of deontic means found in the Material, the number after the backslash = the number of different means (the variety of means found). Then, all the means used are classified into more general categories putting together the means related by their form in order to achieve a clearer comparison of the two modal systems. Since there were no significant differences based on the direction of translation in the general values arrived at, the discussion of the results based on the tables and graphs is realized separately for each language, but jointly for both directions of translation.

25.1 Deontic modality

The two following tables illustrate the summaries of the means used to express deontic necessity found in the Material. Table 31 illustrates the means and their translations found in the English fiction. Table 32 illustrates the means and their translations found in the Czech fiction.

ENGLISH: 415/20			CZECH: 415/21		
MUST		126	MUSET		207
MUST NOT		16	MÍT		63
HAVE TO		149	imperative		7
CAN/COULD NOT		5	NESMĚT		14
SHOULD		34	NEMOCI		7
SHOULD NOT		5	NEMÍT		7
OUGHT TO		10	NEMUSET		1
OUGHT NOT TO		2	lexical verb		49
HAD BETTER		12	copak		1
NEED		8	stačit, jen		13
BE + (past partic.)	TO	37	BE +	třeba	19
	MEANT			nutno	
	FORCED			nucen	
	OBLIGED			donucen	
	SUPPOSED			potřeba	
WOULD RATHER		1	Verb with modal shade	potřebovat	18
HAVE / spec.		3		nutit	
lexical verb		4		dospět k	
imperative		1		čekat	
infinitive of purpose		1		chtít	
Special cases		1	Special cases		9

Table 31: Summary of the means used to express deontic necessity found in the English fiction

ENGLISH: 398/17			CZECH: 398/14		
MUST		33	MUSET		205
MUST NOT		8	MÍT		59
HAVE TO		231	NESMĚT		17
CAN/COULD NOT		2	NEMOCI		3
NOT ALLOWED		9	NEMÍT		10
SHOULD		44	MOCI		2
SHOULD NOT		11	lexical verb		69
OUGHT TO		14	verb with modal shade		7
BE (+ past participle)	BE TO	34	BÝT +	TŘEBA	11
	BE FORCED TO			NUTNO	
	BE OBLIGED TO			NEZBYTNÝ	
	BE SUPPOSED TO			PRÁNO	
<i>had better</i>		2	<i>stačit, jen</i>		7
lexical verb		3	special cases		8
need		5			
infinitive of purpose		1			
special cases		1			

Table 32: Summary of the means used to express deontic modality found in the Czech fiction

In terms of the means available to express deontic modality, there does not seem to be a big difference between English and Czech. At least as far as the variety of the means each of the two languages offers the situation is balanced. If we, however, compare the distribution of the means into the basic formal categories and primarily the frequency with which the means in the various categories were used, different tendencies can be observed. In English modal verbs are the main means used. The central modal verbs represent eight means out of the seventeen and if we include also semi-modal HAVE TO and modal phrases (which really are predominantly modal) HAD BETTER and WOULD RATHER and NEED, which can be both a modal and a full verb, then we get twelve means out of seventeen, which is an absolute majority. In Czech, however, modal verbs represent a smaller part of the means used: six out of fourteen. The difference is, however, much more visible if the distribution of the individual categories in the structure of the semantic field

of deontic necessity is studied. The semantic sub-field of deontic necessity has been divided into six categories according to formal similarities:

- **Modal verb**
- **Lexical verb** – for this category it has always been the case that in one language there has been a clear modal expression while in the other language it has been missing, but otherwise a similar construction (usually also similar main verb) has been used
- **BE+** - refers to the copular verb BE used with various complements to express modality (e.g. BE TO, BE OBLIGED TO ...)
- **Verb with a modal shade** – verbs which are not modal verbs – mainly for formal reasons or for semantic reasons, since they can have other than modal interpretation
- **Modal phrase/expression** – a category similar to the previous one, but including other parts of speech than just verbs – mainly fixed modal expressions. In English it basically includes *had better*, *would rather*, *would sooner*
- **Special cases**- the last category includes everything not assignable to the five previous categories. The number of the excerpts belonging to this category is, however, insignificant, so it can easily be omitted.

The distribution of the individual categories in the semantic fields of deontic necessity in English and in Czech is demonstrated by means of the graphs bellow. In Figure 1 the English means of expression found in the English fiction are presented while in Figure 2 the means found in the English translations of the Czech fiction are presented. Figures 3 and 4 illustrate Czech means found in the translations of the English fiction and in the Czech fiction respectively.

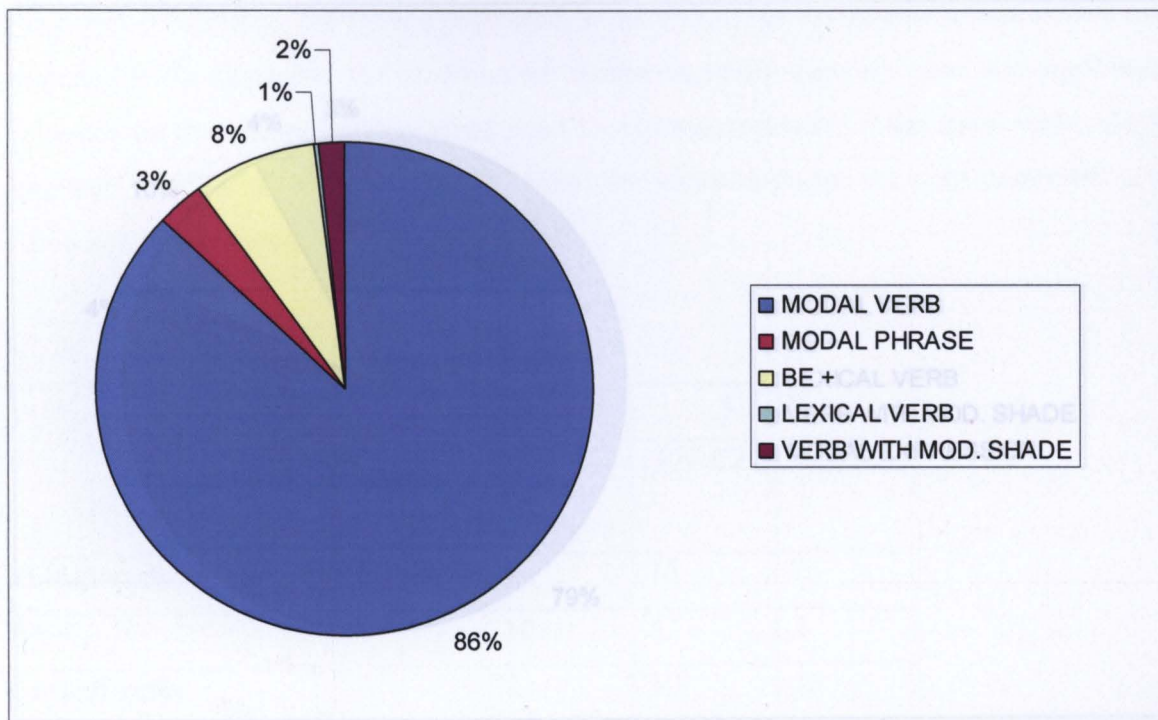


Figure 1: MODAL MEANS EN - DEONTIC NECESSITY: EN - CZ

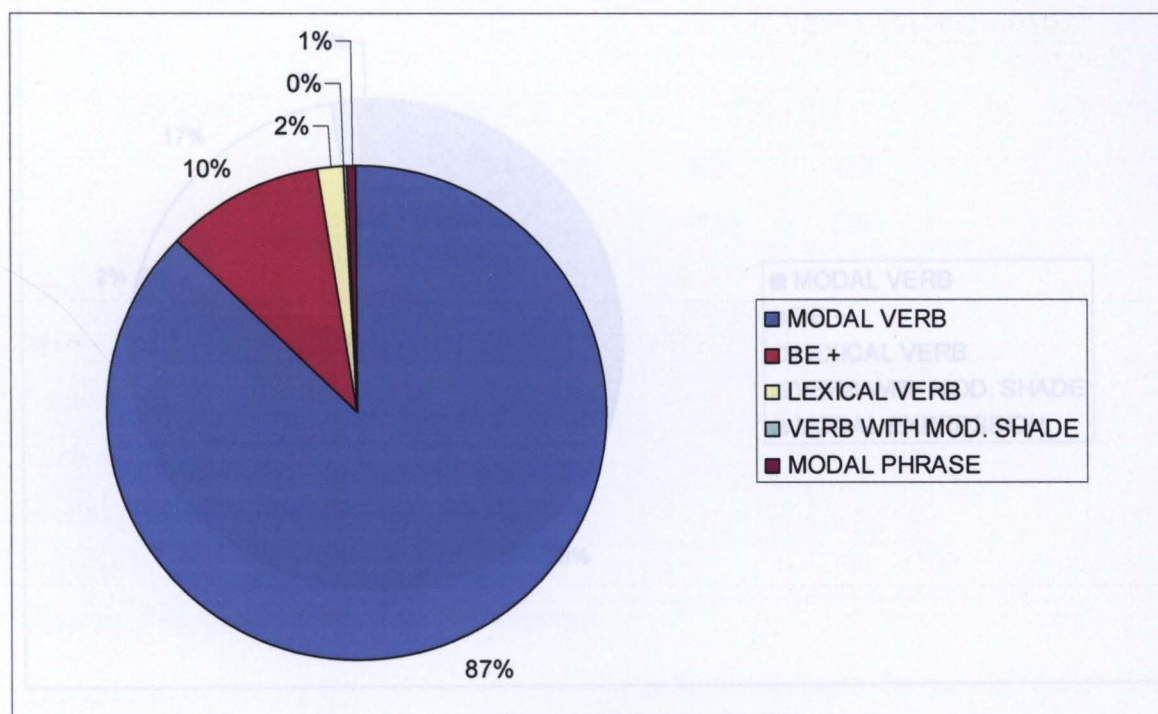


Figure 2: MODAL MEANS EN - DEONTIC NECESSITY: CZ - EN

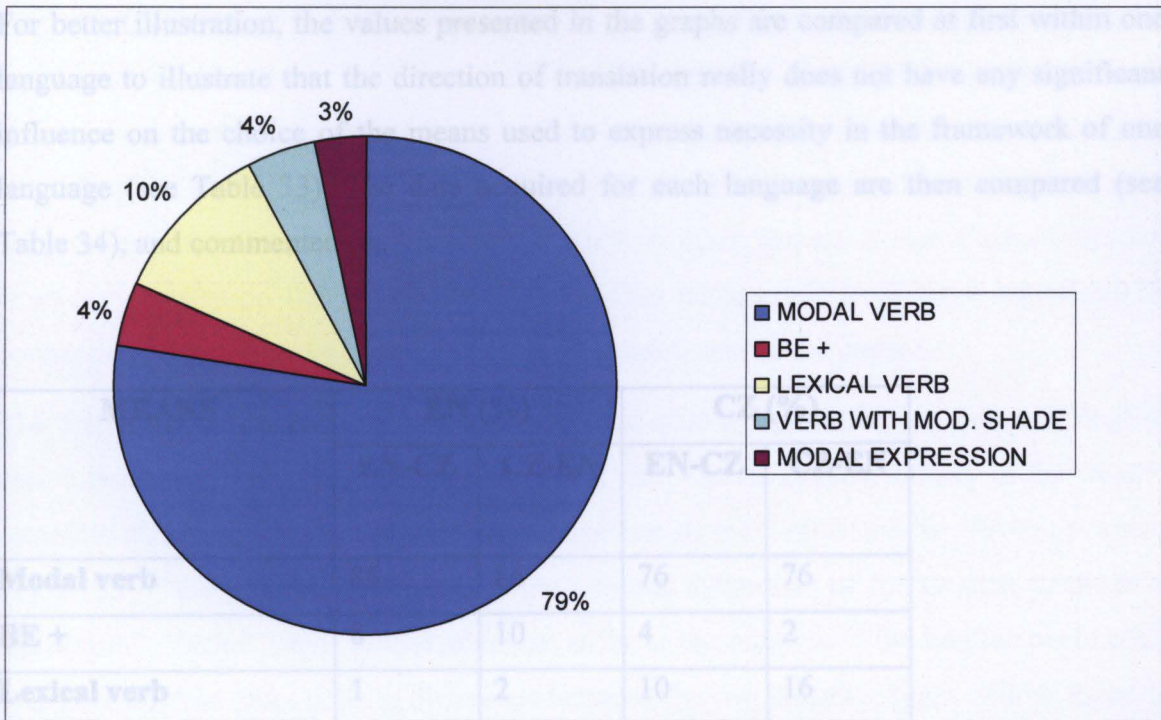


Figure 3: MODAL MEANS CZ - DEONTIC NECESSITY: EN - CZ

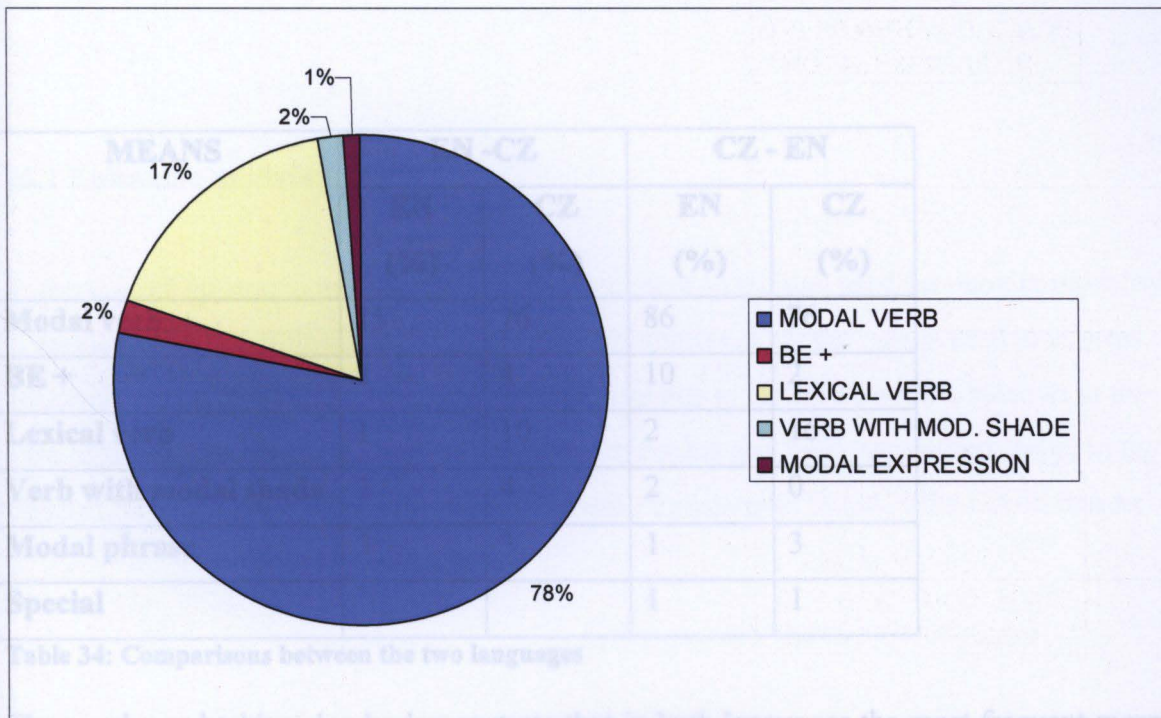


Figure 4: MODAL MEANS CZ - DEONTIC NECESSITY: CZ - EN

For better illustration, the values presented in the graphs are compared at first within one language to illustrate that the direction of translation really does not have any significant influence on the choice of the means used to express necessity in the framework of one language (see Table 33). The data acquired for each language are then compared (see Table 34), and commented on.

MEANS	EN (%)		CZ (%)	
	EN-CZ	CZ-EN	EN-CZ	CZ-EN
Modal verb	85	86	76	76
BE +	8	10	4	2
Lexical verb	1	2	10	16
Verb with modal shade	2	2	4	0
Modal phrase	3	1	3	3
Special				

Table 33: Comparisons within each individual language

MEANS	EN -CZ		CZ - EN	
	EN	CZ	EN	CZ
	(%)	(%)	(%)	(%)
Modal verb	85	76	86	76
BE +	8	4	10	2
Lexical verb	1	10	2	16
Verb with modal shade	2	4	2	0
Modal phrase	3	3	1	3
Special			1	1

Table 34: Comparisons between the two languages

The graphs and tables clearly demonstrate that in both languages the most frequent means to express deontic necessity are modal verbs. Their proportion to the total number of the means used is not exactly the same in the two languages. Modal verbs are more frequent in

English than in Czech in the ratio 1,2 to 1. The most significant difference between English and Czech can be found in category BE+. Although this category is less numerous in absolute values than the category of modal verbs, the means it includes are three times more frequent in English than in Czech. On the other hand category Lexical verb is more frequent in Czech than in English. Czech, therefore, more frequently than English does not express necessity on the lexical level at all. This tendency is even more significant in connection with epistemic necessity as it is illustrated later in the paper.

The tendencies discussed above might have their core in one difference between English and Czech described by e.g. Mathesius (1975) and Vachek (1990), namely in the weaker semantic status of the English verb in comparison to the Czech one. In Vachek's words (1990: 93) "the general weakening of the actional dynamism of the English predicative finite verb". Vachek (ibid) further adds that as far as the function of the English predication is concerned "the most striking difference between the two language types will be found in the strong English tendency towards the nominal expression of predication, where in corresponding Czech contexts predication will be found to be prevalingly verbal, with the finite verb form as its typical element".

25.2 Epistemic modality

In the case of epistemic modality, the same procedure as the one used for deontic modality is applied. The two following tables offer the summaries of all the means used to express epistemic necessity found in the Material. The legends to the tables are the same as in the case of deontic necessity. Table 35 illustrates the means and their translations found in the English fiction. Table 36 lists the means and their translations found in the Czech fiction.

ENGLISH: 185/16			CZECH: 185/20		
MUST		54	MUSET		49
HAD TO		2	MÍT		4
MUST HAVE		58	lexical verb		39
HAVE TO		1	MOCI		1
CAN/COULD NOT		2	BE +	<i>jasný</i> <i>vidět</i>	3
SHOULD		12			
OUGHT TO		5			
adverb	certainly surely unmistakably	17	verb with modal shade	NEPOCHYBOVA T	2
BE (+ past participle)	BE BOUND TO BE SURE TO BE CERTAIN TO BE OBVIOUS BE DOUBTLESS BE SUPPOSED TO	36	adverb	<i>určitě</i> <i>přece</i> <i>rozhodně</i> <i>samosebou</i> <i>nepochybně</i> <i>bezpochyby</i> <i>zjevně</i> <i>skutečně</i> <i>zřejmě</i> <i>asi</i> <i>údajně</i> <i>nejspíš</i> <i>možná</i> <i>snad</i> <i>podle všeho</i>	87

Table 35: Summary of the means used to express epistemic necessity found in the English fiction

ENGLISH: 102/13			CZECH: 102/17		
MUST		25	MUSET	29	
MUST NOT		1	MÍT	4	
MUST HAVE		49	lexical verb	16	
HAVE TO		3	NEMOCI	1	
CAN/COULD NOT		3	NEMUSET	1	
SHOULD		4	BE + <i>jasný</i>	1	
SHOULD NOT		3	special	3	
BE (+ past participle	BE BOUND TO	11	verb with modal shade	PŘEDPOKLÁDAT	6
	BE SURE TO			NETVRDIT	
	BE SUPPOSED TO			NEDÁT	
adverb	<i>obviously</i>		adverb	<i>určitě</i>	41
	<i>necessarily</i>			<i>jistě</i>	
SHOULD HAVE		1		<i>ovšem</i>	
				<i>nepochybně</i>	
				<i>evidentně</i>	
				<i>zjevně</i>	
				<i>samozřejmě</i>	
				<i>zřejmě</i>	
				<i>asi</i>	
				<i>patrně</i>	
				<i>snad</i>	
				<i>tak nějak</i>	

Tab. 36: Summary of the means used to express epistemic necessity found in the Czech fiction

As was the case of deontic modality also in the case of epistemic modality there were not any striking differences found between the means in relation to the direction of translation. In terms of available means used to express epistemic necessity, the ratio was 4:5 in favour of Czech. For the purpose of the clearer comparison of the structures of the sub-field of epistemic necessity in English and in Czech, the means are again divided into several categories according to their forms. Similar categories as those used for deontic necessity are introduced. However, not all categories used for deontic necessity also appear in the

Material with epistemic interpretation, and on the other hand, one extra category needs to be added – the category of adverbs. Once the means are divided into the general categories the less variable choice in English becomes even more clearly visible.

The distribution of the individual categories in the semantic sub-field of epistemic necessity in English and in Czech is demonstrated in the graphs bellow. In Figure 5 the English means of expression found in the English fiction are presented while in Figure 6 the means found in the English translations of the Czech fiction are presented. Figures 7 and 8 illustrate Czech means found in the translations of the English fiction and in the Czech fiction respectively.

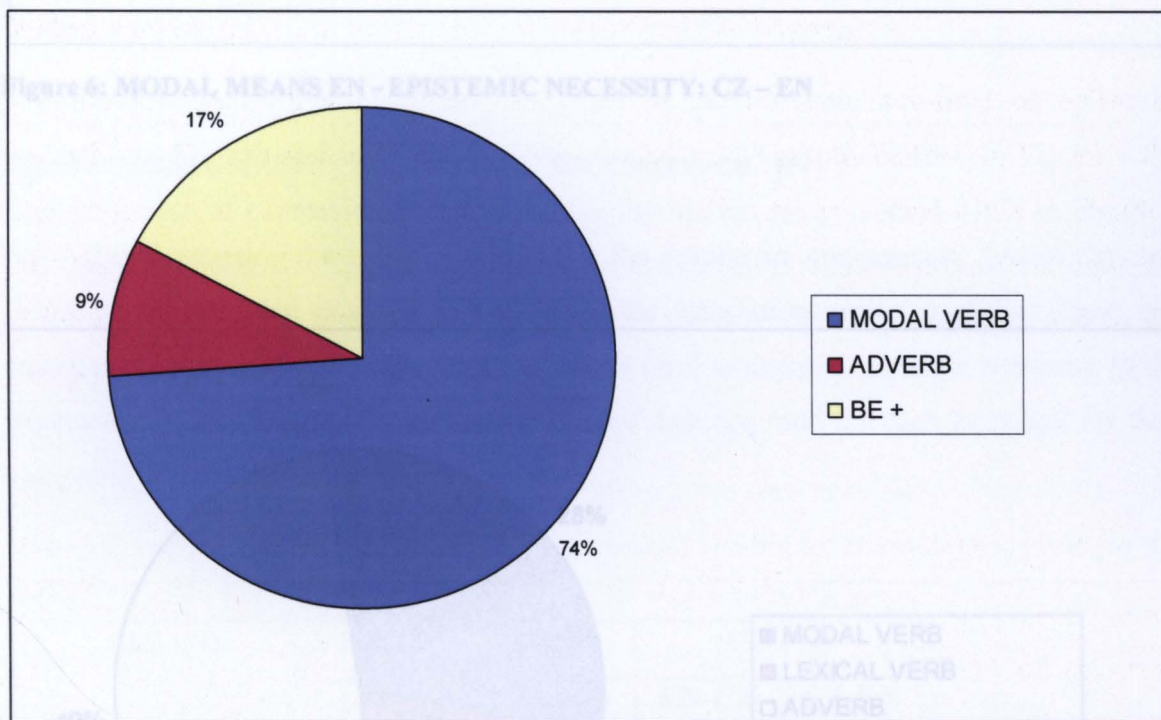


Figure 5: MODAL MEANS EN – EPISTEMIC NECESSITY: EN - CZ

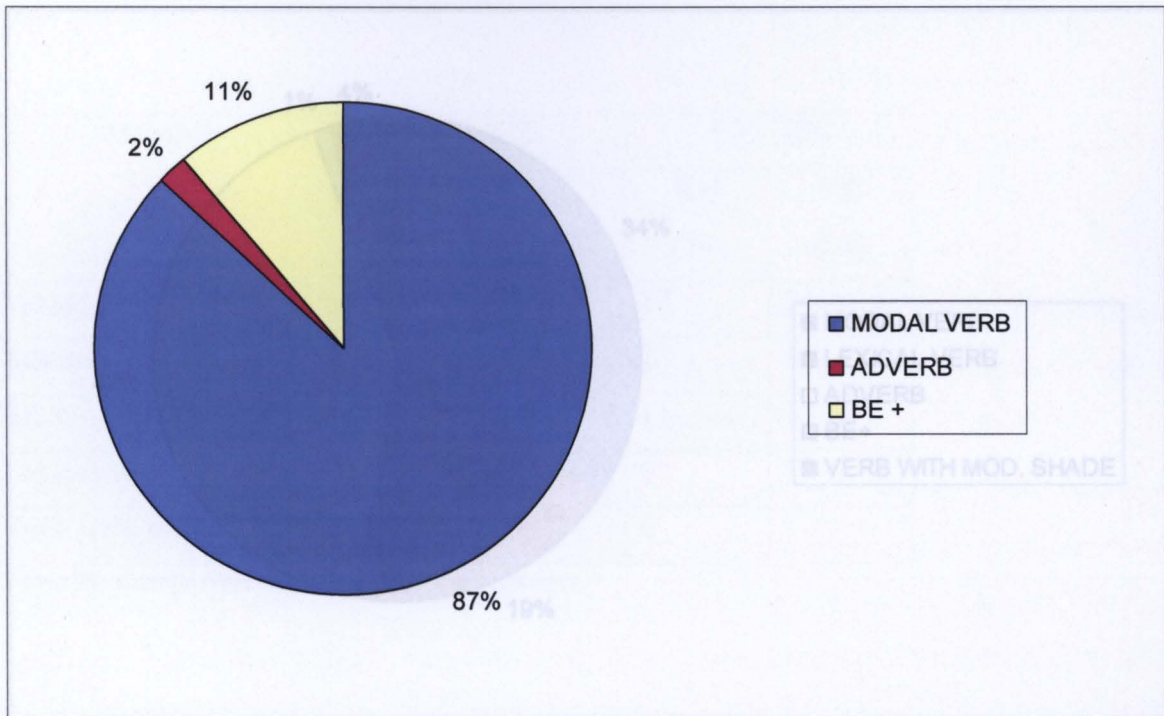


Figure 6: MODAL MEANS EN - EPISTEMIC NECESSITY: CZ - EN

Figure 8: MODAL MEANS CZ - EPISTEMIC NECESSITY: CZ - EN

For better illustration the values presented in the graphs are compared at first within one language to illustrate that the direction of the translation really does not have any significant influence on the choice of the means used to express epistemic necessity in the framework of one language (see Table 37). The data acquired for each language are then compared (see Table 38) presented on.

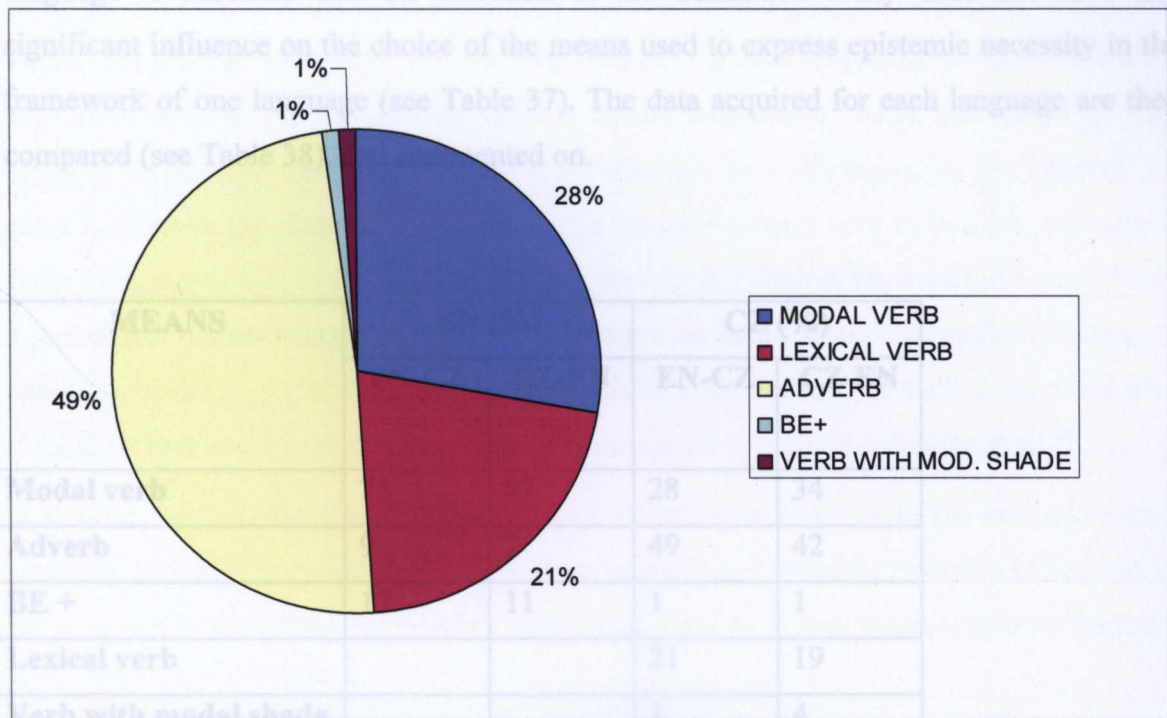


Figure 7: MODAL MEANS CZ - EPISTEMIC NECESSITY: EN - CZ

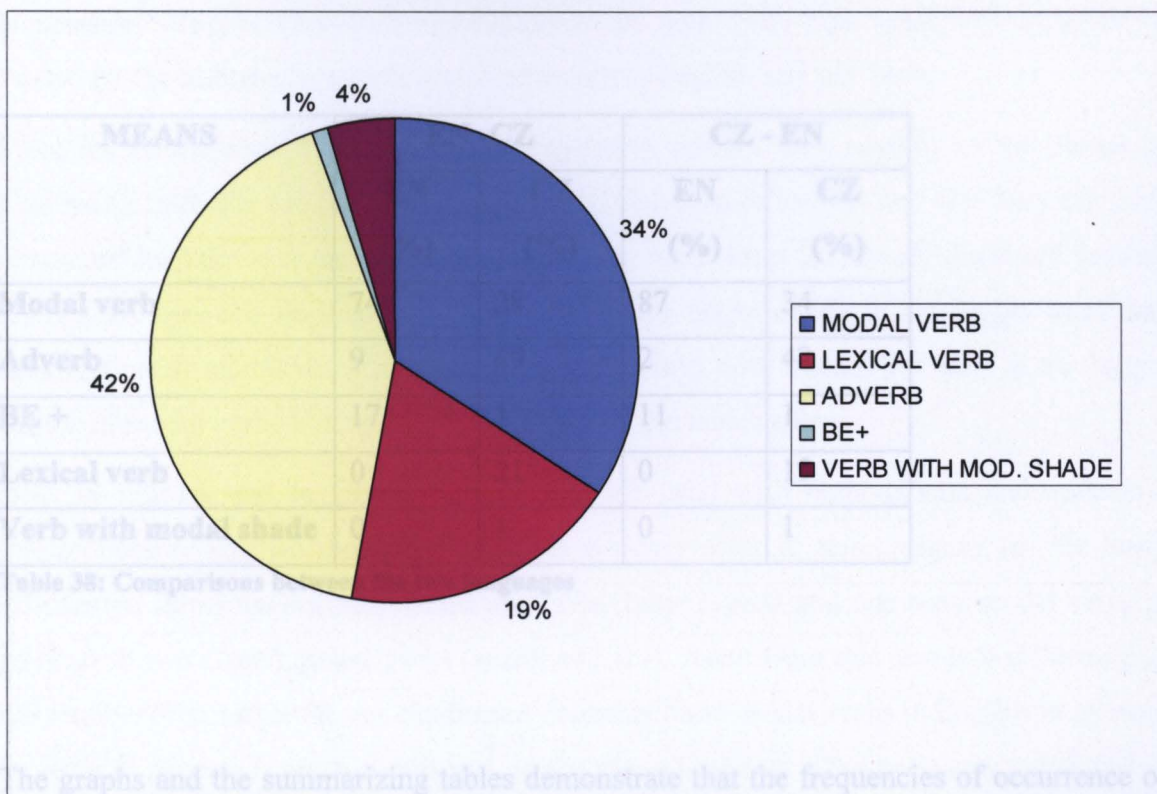


Figure 8: MODAL MEANS CZ - EPISTEMIC NECESSITY: CZ - EN

For better illustration the values presented in the graphs are compared at first within one language to illustrate that the direction of the translation really does not have any significant influence on the choice of the means used to express epistemic necessity in the framework of one language (see Table 37). The data acquired for each language are then compared (see Table 38), and commented on.

MEANS	EN (%)		CZ (%)	
	EN-CZ	CZ-EN	EN-CZ	CZ-EN
Modal verb	75	87	28	34
Adverb	9	2	49	42
BE +	17	11	1	1
Lexical verb			21	19
Verb with modal shade			1	4

Table 37: Comparisons within each individual language

⁴⁴ The possible view of some linguists that modality is an essential feature of any sentence is not considered here, because in such a view structural (sentence) modality is also included, while in this thesis we deal with modality not on the structural but mainly on lexical level.

MEANS	EN -CZ		CZ - EN	
	EN (%)	CZ (%)	EN (%)	CZ (%)
Modal verb	74	28	87	34
Adverb	9	49	2	42
BE +	17	1	11	1
Lexical verb	0	21	0	19
Verb with modal shade	0	1	0	1

Table 38: Comparisons between the two languages

The graphs and the summarizing tables demonstrate that the frequencies of occurrence of the individual categories are more significant in the area of epistemic than deontic necessity. While in English modal verbs are the chief means used also in expressing epistemic necessity, in Czech this role is played by adverbs. The second most frequent category in Czech are modal verbs, closely followed by category Lexical verb, or in other words expressing modality without any explicit modal expression. The 'modality expressed without the use of any explicit modal expression' label was given to this category to indicate the clear distinction between the two languages. In the majority of cases it refers to the situation when there is a modal + a main verb in English, but only a finite main verb (usually the same as the one used in the English sentence) in Czech. Such a sentence in Czech was excerpted and therefore considered to express modal meaning of necessity usually on the basis of the comparison with English. If such a sentence was studied on its own, it probably would not be considered to express modality at all.⁴⁴

In English, on the other hand, category Lexical verb appeared only in the area of deontic necessity and with very low frequency. The second most frequent category in English is BE +, which is more frequent than in Czech in the ratio 14:1, and, moreover, more frequent

⁴⁴ The possible view of some linguists that modality is an essential feature of any sentence is not considered here, because in such a view structural (sentence) modality is also included, while in this thesis we deal with modality not on the structural but mainly on lexical level.

in epistemic than in deontic interpretation in the ratio 14:9. This tendency can again be caused by the different semantic status of a verb in English and in Czech.

From the conclusions discussed above a question arises - why adverbs as the means of expressing necessity are far more frequent in Czech than in English and why they are used almost exclusively to express epistemic modality. Apart from the already discussed general differences between English and Czech, the cause might reside in the bigger structural delimitation of modal verbs in English in comparison with Czech, and also in the bigger choice of modal verbs in English as illustrated by the tables above.

Both in English and in Czech modal verbs are used with both deontic and epistemic interpretations. English, however, provides a richer offer in this category (in the basic affirmative form) having four means available (three central and one semi modal verb) in contrast to two Czech modal verbs (*muset* and *mit*). Apart from this absolute difference in the number of possible means, the formal delimitation of modal verbs in English in relation to verbs in general is more significant. In the theoretical part it has been concluded that in addition to the formal features found in Czech which all also apply to English, there are special formal features found only in English.

- They form questions and negative statements in a different way than full verbs (since they are auxiliary verbs – this criterion applies to auxiliary verbs in general).
- When a verb phrase containing a modal verb is negated either the modality or an event can be negated.
- One form of a modal verb can express both past reference and conditionality.
- They are followed by bare infinitive while the majority of other verbs take full infinitive.
- They have “abnormal time reference” (Quirk 1985: 137).
- The grammar that a particular modal verb abides by can be different depending on the kind of modality a modal verb expresses in a particular situation.

These additional formal features make it possible in certain formal contexts to distinguish between deontic and epistemic interpretation of a modal verb. By the formal contexts we

mean mainly negative sentences and also sentences with other than present time reference.

MUST can serve as an example:

- MUST NOT (the negative form) is almost exclusively deontic
- MUST + perfect infinitive (the form with past reference): *He must have been at home yesterday because ...* - epistemic, deontic form being HAD TO
- MUST (as the basic form)
 - - with present reference: *He must be at home now.* – epistemic interpretation, because MUST with deontic meaning usually refers to the future. If we wanted to say that somebody ordered him to be at home the sentence would be *He has to be at home.*
 - - with future reference: *He must be at home tomorrow.* – deontic interpretation for the reasons discussed in the previous point

If we, however, take the same sentences in Czech: *Včera musel být doma, Dnes musí být doma*, they are both ambiguous. Once the sentence becomes a concrete utterance, the ambiguity will be resolved by context. In general, however, sentences with modal verbs are more likely to be ambiguous than sentences with other modal means. Czech, therefore, employs additional means to distinguish between deontic and epistemic modality more clearly.

Apart from the concrete similarities and differences in expressing necessity in English and in Czech discussed above, one more general tendency can be seen. Both in the area of deontic and more markedly in the area of epistemic necessity Czech seems to express modality without the use of any explicit semantic means more often than English.

The aim of this dissertation has been to compare the structures of the semantic field of necessity in English and in Czech based on the excerpts from contemporary English and Czech fiction. On the basis of the Material it can be concluded that the two structures are strictly speaking similar. Nevertheless, in addition to the non-numerous differences well described in literature, also other, unexpected distinctions, have been found. Since, however, these distinctions are predominantly connected with the means not so frequently

used, which might be the reason why they have not been described yet in detail, their occurrence in the Material was not frequent enough to infer any well-founded conclusions about their use.

Although the general validity of the conclusions is limited by the scope and the selected approach of the thesis new approaches to the issue of modality were discovered and new subtle shades of meaning of modal expressions and differences between them learned. The majority of these new things even if described in literature become visible only if the contrastive approach is being applied. New interesting findings might be acquired if the results of this paper were compared with a larger corpus. It might also be of interest to investigate to what extent the personal style (usage) of a particular translator influences the choice of the means of expression used.

26 SHRNUÍ

Předložená disertační práce zkoumá rozčlenění sémantického pole nutnosti v angličtině a češtině na základě jazykových prostředků použitých v osmi dílech současné krásné literatury. Cílem práce je nejprve popsat rozčlenění tohoto pole v obou jazycích, určit a porovnat významy a použití jednotlivých prostředků vyjádření nutnosti uvnitř jednoho jazyka a následně data, získaná pro každý jazyk jednotlivě, porovnat. Na základě porovnání jsou potom stanoveny základní podobnosti a rozdíly, diskutovány možné příčiny popsaných rozdílů a jejich důsledky z hlediska správného vyjadřování jednotlivých sémantických hodnot nutnosti v obou jazycích.

Práce sestává ze tří hlavních částí: části teoretické, empirické a závěru. Teoretická část je pojata jako poměrně široký obecný úvod do problematiky modalit a dále pak konkrétně nutnosti. Vedle vytyčení a pojetí obecného konceptu modalit se věnuje způsobům vyjádření nutnosti v angličtině a v češtině a jejich porovnáním. V empirické části jsou diskutovány a porovnávány jednotlivé prostředky vyjádření nutnosti jak uvnitř jednoho jazyka tak mezi jazyky a prezentovány dílčí výsledky těchto porovnání. Závěrečná část nabízí shrnutí výstupů teoretické a empirické části a na jejich základě zobecňuje a systematizuje shodnosti a rozdíly ve struktuře sémantického pole nutnosti v angličtině a češtině.

Kapitola 1 se věnuje modalitě obecně. Diskuse a porovnání několika definic modalit vyúsťuje ve zjištění, že ačkoli se mohou lišit východiska jednotlivých definic i terminologie v nich užitá, u všech je možno vysledovat jako základní tři elementy – **mluvčí, děj a skutečnost**, vždy propojené v určitém **vztahu**. Většina autorů dále rozlišuje různou sílu a druh modalit.

Druhem modalit se podrobně zabývá podkapitola 1.2. Pro jeho určení je zásadní rozdíl mezi modalitou modifikující propozici z pohledu faktu a modalitou vázanou na děj, jež fakticky vypovídá o jeho potenciální realizaci či nerealizaci. Z termínů používaných v odborné literatuře při odkazování na tyto dva druhy modalit byly v této práci zvoleny termíny 'epistemic' a 'deontic'. V odborné literatuře je možno se setkat ještě s takzvanou 'dynamickou' modalitou, ovšem vzhledem k cílům této práce nebyla tato podrobnější klasifikace uplatněna. V podkapitole 1.2 jsou dále zmíněny alternativní přístupy, které

považují jeden nebo druhý druh modality za primární, či jediné modální, a přístupy, které jednotlivé druhy modality nerozlišují vůbec a považují jeden za přirozeně či vývojově vyplývající z druhého.

Podkapitola 1.3. uvádí různá pojetí popisu modality jako obecného rysu jazyka a především rozlišuje dva základní přístupy k tomuto popisu: polysémantický (např. Palmer 1979, 1986, 1989; Coates 1983; Quirk et al. 1985, Leech 2004) pracující s modálním výrazem (především v podobě modálního slovesa) jako s víceznačným, a monosémantický (např. Ehrman 1966; Kratzer 1977; Perkins 1983; Walton 1988; Klinge 1993) pracující s hypotézou jednoho základního významu modálního výrazu, který může nabývat různých interpretací v závislosti na kontextu.

Podkapitola 1.4. se zabývá charakteristikou modálních výrazů zejména z hlediska jejich formy a gramatiky. Nejzřetelněji vydělená v tomto směru jsou vlastní modální slovesa.

Předmětem kapitoly 2 je vlastní téma práce, tedy nutnost. Po obecné definici nutnosti, založené kromě jiného na základě kontrastu s možností, a výčtu jejích jak deontických tak epistemických interpretací jsou popsány jazykové prostředky, kterých k vyjádření nutnosti používá angličtina: slovesa (především vlastní modální slovesa), přídavná jména a trpná přičestí, příslovce⁴⁵ a podstatná jména.

Kapitola 3 je věnována modalitě v češtině. Nejprve je představen český modální systém obecně. Jako výchozí teoretické zdroje slouží především *Akademická mluvnice češtiny* editovaná Petrem a práce Benešové. Následující části kapitoly 3 se věnují konkrétně vyjadřování nutnosti.

V kapitole 4 jsou rozčlenění sémantického pole nutnosti v obou jazycích porovnána a stanoveny teoretické shodnosti a rozdíly. Většina pozornosti je obrácena k vlastním modálním slovesům, jelikož ostatní prostředky vyjádření nutnosti jsou v literatuře většinou diskutovány jen okrajově.

⁴⁵ ⁴⁵ Termín 'příslovce' v sobě zahrnuje i termín 'modální částice'. Důvody takového použití terminologie jsou následující: 1) v angličtině se v mnohé literatuře termín modální částice vůbec nepoužívá (např. Huddleston and Pullum 2002, Kai von Fintel, 2005), nebo je použit společně s termínem příslovce (Quirk 1985); 2) i v češtině, kde se rozdíl mezi oběma termíny zdá být uplatňován přísněji, je nanačována úzká souvislost a nejasná hranice mezi nimi "Modální částice se někdy nazývají větná příslovce" (Petr 1987: 357)

Podle Benešové disponuje čeština, stejně jako angličtina dvěma modálními slovesy k vyjádření 'silné deontické nutnosti' (dále jen "nutnost"): *muset* a *být nucen*. Dušková (1994: 198) naopak tvrdí, že: "pro vyjadřování nutnosti má angličtina proti jednomu českému slovesu slovesa dvě", konkrétně *must* a *have to*, což může českým mluvčím působit problémy. Další studium zmíněného problému ukazuje, že ani v případě přístupu Benešové není mezi dvěma modálními slovesy v obou jazycích přímá korelace a navíc frekvence užití modálního slovesa *být nucen* je v porovnání s *muset* velmi nízká. Správné pochopení rozdílu mezi *must* a *have to* je tedy velice důležité a je mu v empirické části věnována patřičná pozornost.

V oblasti 'slabé deontické nutnosti' (dále "záhodnost") stojí proti českému *mít* anglická slovesa *should* a *ought to*. Vedle těsné korespondence *should* především s kondicionálem slovesa *mít* a s tím spojeným možných problémů při překladech *mít* v jiných formách se práce zabývá i porovnáním funkcí *mít* a *have to*. Obě slovesa totiž primárně vyjadřují vlastnictví.

Největší rozdíl mezi angličtinou a češtinou je předpokládán u epistemické nutnosti. Tento předpoklad vychází z Duškové (1994: 185, 186).

Srovnání způsobů vyjadřování nutnosti v angličtině a češtině ukázalo, že jejich základní rysy jsou podobné, ale významy jednotlivých teoreticky korespondujících výrazů se plně nepřekrývají. V obou jazycích jsou základním vyjadřovacím prostředkem modální slovesa, v angličtině je však tato kategorie výrazněji formálně vydělena od ostatních sloves. V obou jazycích vedle sloves existují i další prostředky vyjadřování modality, jejich škála je v zásadě podobná, ale jejich frekvence a preference v užití k vyjadřování jednotlivých významů nutnosti se liší.

V druhé, empirické části práce jsou fakta a závěry teoretické části porovnávány a konfrontovány s konkrétním jazykovým materiálem reprezentovaným příklady (dále 'excerpty') z anglické a české krásné literatury (dále 'Materiál'). Předmět práce je zkoumán v obou směrech: anglický originál a jeho oficiálně publikovaný překlad a naopak. Aby byl minimalizován vliv přirozeného vývoje a s ním spojených změn v jazyce, byla do studie zahrnuta jen poválečná literatura. V obou směrech byla vybrána čtyři díla; počet excerpt z každého jednotlivého díla byl dán vlastním počtem modálních výrazů v díle obsaženém:

Ve směru z angličtiny do češtiny bylo excerptováno 600 dokladů, ve směru z češtiny do angličtiny 500 dokladů. Data jsou však zpracovávána především kvalitativně, tedy nezávisle na počtu výskytů a závěrečná kvantitativní analýza je zpracována formou poměrných částí z celku v procentech. Zmíněná disproporce by tedy na prezentované výsledky neměla mít žádný vliv. Materiál je zpracováván ve směru od formy k funkci, jednotlivé prostředky vyjadřování nutnosti jsou nejprve porovnány v rámci jednoho jazyka a potom mezi oběma jazyky.

Po výše popsaném metodickém úvodu následuje vlastní diskuse jednotlivých prostředků vyjadřování nutnosti. Z toho vyplývající poznatky týkající se jednotlivých prostředků lze shrnout následujícím způsobem:

Nutnost

V angličtině se užívají k vyjádření nutnosti především dva základní prostředky: *must* a *have to*. V češtině je jejich základním protějškem sloveso *muset*. Na základě toho lze usuzovat, že angličtina přísněji rozlišuje mezi subjektivní (zde chápána jako vycházející z mluvčího) a objektivní (vznikající mimo vůli mluvčího) modalitou. Na základě Materiálu se ale ukazuje, že situace není tak jednoznačná. Za první rozdíl mezi subjektivním *must* a objektivním *have to* není ostrý a za druhé i čeština může vyjádřit a vyjadřuje subjektivní a objektivní modalitu odlišně; *muset* sice funguje jako základní a neutrální prostředek vyjádření nutnosti, ale častěji slouží jako protějšek *must*, zatímco jako protějšky *have to* se používají jiné, často ne explicitně modální výrazy, jako je např. pouze lexikální sloveso bez explicitně modálního výrazu, výrazy *stačit, jen, být donucen ...*atd.

Vedle již v teorii popsaných rozdílů mezi *must* a *have to* Materiál naznačuje ještě „aktivnější“ povahu *must* oproti „pasivnější“ povaze *have to*. *Must* častěji vyjadřuje nutnost, na kterou je třeba aktivně reagovat, aktivně ji realizovat, zatímco *have to* častěji popisuje děje, které je třeba pasivně vydržet.

*To support these ladies the men **must** work like slaves ... - Aby pak tyto dámy mohly žít na úrovni, **musí** dřít muži jako otroci ... (DA: 183, 277 - 109)*

*We've all **got to put** our feet up at some point - Všichni to **musíme** někdy **zabalit**. (IS: 256, 182 - 144)*

Materiál potvrdil i rozdíl v základní časové referenci dějů vyjádřeným pomocí *must* a *have to* a tyto rozdíly se promítly i do překladů těchto dvou sloves. *Must* častěji vyjadřuje děj budoucí a byl-li tento děj vyjádřen v češtině bez modálního slovesa, bylo lexikální sloveso převážně v budoucím čase, zatímco za stejných podmínek slovesu *have to* odpovídal čas přítomný a pro budoucí referenci byl nejčastěji použit explicitní tvar *will/shall have to*.

*I am sorry, but I **must go on**. - Nezlobte se, ale **budu** ještě **pokračovat**. (Ishiguro: 62, 47 - 30)*

*Proč **muzej** moje děti zpívat ve sboru, když ve sboru zpívat nechtěj. – Why do all my kids **have to** sing in the choir(VI: 165, 138 – 92)*

*Of course you **will have to let** them go. - Samozřejmě je **budete muset propustit**. (IS: 155, 110 - 82)*

Rozdíl ve vyjadřování epistemické nutnosti v zásadě odpovídá závěru Duškové (1998: 186): “Sémantický systém anglických modálních sloves se od českého značně liší, zejména pokud jde o vyjadřování modality jistotní kde pozorujeme rozdíly v modální výstavbě věty. Modální slovesa jako prostředek vyjadřování jistotní modality jsou v angličtině častější než v češtině (často odpovídají českým modálním adverbiiám nebo částicím) a nadto v této funkci disponují zvláštními prostředky odkazování na minulost, které v češtině nemají strukturní obdobu”. Je ovšem třeba doplnit ještě jeden prostředek, který v češtině představoval zhruba 20%, a to jest vyjádření jistotní nutnosti nikoli explicitně, ale jen pomocí oznamovací konstrukce – tedy jako faktu.

*The man **must be mad**, she cried. - Ten chlap se **zbláznil**, vybuchla. (DA: 187, 281 - 112)*

*Amy's not been back here for, ooh it **must be** eight or nine years. - Amy už zde nebyla, no, to **bude** už osm nebo devět let. (AM: 96, 95 - 137)*

Záhodnost

Podobně jako u nutnosti i u záhodnosti stojí proti dvěma základním prostředkům v angličtině: *should* a *ought to* jeden český: *mít*. Vzhledem k faktu, že *ought to* bylo použito jen jedním autorem (Rowlingová) a že až na ne všobecně přijímaný rozdíl mezi *should* a *ought to* v jejich subjektivnosti/objektivnosti jsou oba výrazy vnímány jako zaměnitelné, měla by tedy být výchozí situace v češtině a angličtině obdobná. Fakticky si však *should/ought to* a *mít* odpovídají jen v oblasti deontické modality, kde shoda

představovala 81% případů. V porovnání s nutností se v češtině záhodnost vyjadřuje pomocí modálního slovesa častěji.

K vyjádření epistemické záhodnosti se naopak *mít* v češtině, především ve formě podmiňovacího způsobu, používá jen zřídka. Možné vysvětlení tohoto rozdílu může spočívat v tom, že podmiňovací *mít* je těsně spojeno s deontickou interpretací a k jasnému vyjádření epistemické záhodnosti se tedy používají jiné prostředky. Ačkoli *should/ought* to obecně vyjadřují nižší stupeň kategoričnosti, ve své epistemické interpretaci někdy korespondují s českým *muset*. Důvodem může být právě fakt, že v oblasti vlastních modálních sloves je *muset* jediné, které může jasně vyjádřit epistemickou nutnost (bez ohledu na stupeň její kategoričnosti).

Shouldn't be any trouble anyway because I picked the others in the race myself. – ***Musí to vyjít***, protože ty druhý mrchy jsem pro závod vybíral já osobně. (DA: 338, 209 – 181)

Dalším prostředkem v angličtině, který vyjadřuje záhodnost, ovšem pouze deontickou je sloveso *need*, které je významově nejbliže českému *potřebovat*, ale které v Materiálu nejčastěji odpovídalo českému *muset*. Práce tedy prezentuje jeho porovnání především se slovesy *must* a *have to*.

Jak čeština tak angličtina dále používají k vyjádření jak nutnosti tak záhodnosti spektrum dalších prostředků. V angličtině jsou to především vazby se slovesem *být* a řidčeji příslovce, v češtině pak především oznamovací konstrukce bez explicitního vyjádření modality a ještě řidčeji než v angličtině také příslovce.

Angličtina díky konstrukcím se slovesem *být* vykazuje větší rozmanitost ve vyjadřování deontické modality, zatímco čeština díky repertoáru příslovcí se zdá být variabilnější v oblasti epistemické modality.

Záporná nutnost

Základními prostředky v angličtině jsou *must not*, *cannot*, *not allowed to*, *should not*, *ought not to* a *need not*, v češtině pak *nesmět*, *nemít*, *nemít/nebýt přáno/dovoleno*. *Nemít/nebýt přáno/dovoleno* se používají pouze okrajově. *Should not* a *ought not to* jsou většinou zaměnitelné a odpovídají českému *nemít*. Zajímavá je otázka rozdílu mezi *must not*, *cannot*

and *not allowed to*, jelikož všechny nejčastěji odpovídají českému *nesmět*. *Not allowed to* explicitně vystihuje svůj význam a odkazuje k situacím, které mohou být povoleny nebo zakázány. *Cannot*, pokud nevyjadřuje neschopnost, má význam blízký *not allowed to*, tedy se vztahuje k aktivitám, které je možné povolit nebo zakázat. *Must not* na druhé straně popisuje aktivity/děje, které jsou vnímány jako nežádoucí/nesprávné morálně.

and I must never forget it: life is good. - a nikdy to nesmím zapomenout: život je dobrý (Amis: 77, 77-114)

Závěrečná část práce, vedle dílčích výsledků pro jednotlivé prostředky, prezentuje i srovnání způsobů vyjadřování nutnosti v češtině a angličtině na obecnější úrovni. Toto srovnání vychází vždy z přehledu všech prostředků nalezených v Materiálu, včetně četnosti jejich výskytu shrnutých do tabulek zvlášť pro každý jazyk a také pro každý druh modality: deontickou a epistemickou a pro každý směr překladu.

Deontická modalita

V oblasti deontické modality má sémantické pole nutnosti v obou jazycích v zásadě podobnou strukturu, alespoň co se základních používaných prostředků a jejich kvantitativní tíže týče. Pokud se ale pokusíme prostředky sloučit do obecnějších kategorií a porovnáme frekvence jejich výskytu, je možné pozorovat určité rozdíly. Pro zmíněné porovnání bylo ustanoveno šest kategorií:

- **Modální sloveso**
- **Lexikální sloveso** – tato kategorie vždy odráží situaci, kdy v jednom jazyce byl použit explicitní modální prostředek, zatímco ve druhém mu korespondovala oznamovací konstrukce bez explicitního vyjádření modality (většinou podobně formovaná, se shodným lexikálním slovesem)
- **BE+** - tato kategorie v sobě zahrnuje vždy sponové sloveso *být* s různými doplňky (např. *be to, be obliged to ...*)
- **Sloveso s modálním nádechem** – slovesa, která nejsou ryze modálními slovesy, která se jim ale významově přibližují (např. *order, potřebovat*)
- **Modální slovní spojení** – kategorie podobná té předchozí, ale zahrnující místo sloves většinou delší a ustálená slovní spojení s modálním významem (např. *had better, would rather, would sooner*)

- **Nezařaditelný případ**- poslední kategorie zahrnuje prostředky, které nebylo možno zařadit do žádné z předchozích kategorií.

Počet prostředků v poslední kategorii se ukázal být zanedbatelný a s těmito prostředky nebylo tedy v konečné analýze dále počítáno.

Kategorizace ukázala, že v obou jazycích nejfrekventovanější prostředky používané k vyjádření deontické nutnosti jsou vlastní modální slovesa. Jejich poměrný podíl na vyjadřování nutnosti ale není úplně stejný. V angličtině mají modální slovesa ve vyjadřování deontické nutnosti vyšší zastoupení než v češtině, a to v poměru 1,2 : 1. Nejmarkantnější rozdíl mezi angličtinou a češtinou lze pozorovat v kategorii BE+. Ačkoli v absolutních hodnotách je tato kategorie méně početná než kategorie modálních sloves, prostředky v ní obsažené jsou častější pro angličtinu než pro češtinu a to v poměru 3:1. Na druhé straně kategorie Lexikální sloveso je početnější v češtině než v angličtině. Čeština tedy častěji než angličtina nutnost na lexikální rovině vůbec nevyjadřuje. Tato tendence češtiny je ještě zřetelnější v oblasti epistemické modality (viz níže).

Výše zmíněné tendence ve vyjadřování deontické modality mohou vycházet z např. Mathesiem a Vachkem popsaného rozdílu mezi angličtinou a češtinou v sémantickém postavení slovesa, kterou Vachek (1990: 93) nazývá “the general weakening of the actional dynamism of the English predicative finite verb”⁴⁶.

Epistemická modalita

Stejně jako pro deontickou modalitu i shrnutí výsledků v oblasti epistemické modality je uvedeno tabulkami, nabízejícími přehled všech prostředků, které se s touto modální interpretací v Materiálu vyskytly.

Pokud jde o počet různých používaných prostředků ani v oblasti epistemické nutnosti se angličtina a čeština zásadně neliší. V absolutním porovnání počtu použitých prostředků byl poměr 4:5 ve prospěch češtiny. Pro zřetelnější porovnání byly i v případě epistemické modality použity obecnější kategorie – podobné jako pro modalitu deontickou. K vyjadřování epistemické modality se však používají jen některé z kategorií definovaných pro deontickou modalitu a navíc bylo třeba přidat kategorii **Příslovce**, která jak je v práci vysvětleno, zahrnuje jak modální příslovce, tak modální částice.

⁴⁶ Překlad autor: obecné oslabení akčního dynamismu anglického přísudku

V četnosti výskytu jednotlivých kategorií jsou v oblasti epistemické modality rozdíly mezi angličtinou a češtinou markantnější než v oblasti modality deontické. Zatímco v angličtině jsou i v oblasti epistemické modality základním prostředkem modální slovesa, v češtině jsou to příslovce. Druhou nejfrekventovanější kategorií v češtině představují modální slovesa, těsně následovaná na třetím místě kategorií Lexikální sloveso.

V angličtině se naopak kategorie Lexikální sloveso objevila pouze v oblasti nutnosti deontické a to s velmi nízkou četností. Druhou nejpočetnější kategorií v angličtině je kategorie BE +, která je četnější než v češtině v poměru 14: 1, a dále četnější v oblasti epistemické než deontické modality v poměru 14:9. Tato tendence může být opět přičtena rozdílnému sémantickému postavení slovesa v angličtině a češtině.

Ze získaných hodnot dále vyplývá otázka, proč jsou příslovce jako kategorie vyjadřování nutnosti daleko frekventovanější v češtině než v angličtině a proč jsou téměř výhradně omezena na oblast epistemické modality. Jako možné vysvětlení se zde nabízí jednak větší formální odlišnost modálních sloves od sloves ostatních a dále fakt, že jejich použití ve funkci deontické a epistemické je do jisté míry formálně diferencováno.

Vedle výše popsaných podobností a rozdílů ve volbě prostředků k vyjádření nutnosti v angličtině a češtině lze pozorovat ještě jednu obecnou tendenci. Jak v oblasti deontické tak ještě zřetelněji v oblasti epistemické modality se čeština zdá vyjadřovat nutnost explicitně na lexikální rovině méně často než angličtina.

REFERENCES

- Alexander, L. G. (1994) *Longman English Grammar*, London: Longman
- Auvera, J. van der (2001) 'On the Typology of Negative Modals', in *Perspectives on Negation and Polarity Items*, edd Hoeksema, J., H. Rullman, V. Sanchez – Valencia and T. van der Wouden, 23 – 48, Amsterdam: Benjamins
- Benešová, E., J. Panevová, and P. Sgall. (1971) *Čas a modalita v češtině*, Praha: Universita Karlova
- Biber, D., S. Johansson, G. Leech, S. Conrad, and E. Finegan (1999) *Longman Grammar of Spoken and Written English*, London: Longman
- Coates, J. (1983) *The Semantics of the Modal Auxiliaries*, London: Croom Helm
- Cruse, A. (2004) *Meaning in Language – An Introduction to Semantics and Pragmatics*, Oxford: Oxford University Press
- Dokulil, M. (1947) 'K modální výstavbě věty', *Studie a práce lingvistické* I, 255 – 262
- Dokulil, M. (1967) 'K pojetí morfologické kategorie', *Jazykovědný časopis* XVIII/1, 13 – 36
- Dušková, L. (1972) 'A contrastive Study of can, may, must and their Czech equivalents', *Studies in Modern Philology* 1, 5 -77
- Dušková, L. at al (1994) *Mluvnice současné angličtiny na pozadí češtiny*, Praha: Academia
- Ehrman, M. (1966) *The Meanings of the Modals in Present-Day American English*, Mouton and Company
- Fintel, K. von (2005) 'Modality and Language', in *Encyclopedia of Philosophy*, ed D. M. Borchert, 1 - 16
- Foley, M. and D. Hall. (2003) *Longman Advanced Learners' Grammar*, London: Longman
- Gailor, D. (1983) 'Reflections on 'should', 'ought to', and 'must'', *ELT Journal* 37/4, 346 – 349
- Groefsema, M (1985) 'Can, may, must and should: A Relevance theoretic account', *Journal of Linguistics* 31, 53 - 79
- Halliday, M., A., K. (1991) *An Introduction to Functional Grammar*, London: Arnold
- Hladký, J. (1976) 'A brief comment on some previous works on modality', *Brno Studies in English* 12, 85 – 92
- Hladký, J. (1983) 'Parts of speech and spheres of modality in English and Czech', *Brno Studies in English* 15, 87 – 109

- Huddleson, R. and G. K. Pullum (2002) *The Cambridge Grammar of the English Language*, Cambridge: Cambridge University Press
- Chalker, S. (1990) *Current English Grammar*, London: Mcmillan
- Kiefer, F. (1987), 'On Defining Modality', *Folia Linguistica* 21/1, 67 -94
- Kiefer, F. (1994) 'Modality', in *The Encyclopedia of Language and Linguistics*, ed Ronald E. Asher, 2515 - 2520, Oxford: Pergamon Press
- Klinge, A. (1993) 'The English modal auxiliaries: from lexical semantics to utterance interpretation', *Journal of Linguistics* 29, 315 – 357
- Kopečný, F. (1962) *Základy české skladby*. Praha
- Leech, G. (2004) *Meaning and the English Verb*, London: Longman
- Kratzer, A. (1991) 'Modality', in *Semantics: An introduction Handbook of Contemporary Research*, ed Arnim von Stechow and Dieter Wunderlich, 639 - 650, Berlin: de Gruyter.
- Lyons, J. *Semantics*, Vol. 2, Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Mathesius V. (1975) *A Functional Analysis of Present Day English on a General Linguistic Basis*, Praha: Academia.
- Ninan, D. (2005) 'Two Puzzles About Deontic Necessity', in *New Work on Modality, MIT Working Papers in Linguistics* 51, edd by J. Gajewski, V. Hacquard, B. Nickel, S. Yalcin, 1 – 26
- Palmer, F., R. (1979) *Modality and the English Verb*, London: Longman
- Palmer, F., R. (1986) *Mood and Modality*, Cambridge: Cambridge University Press
- Palmer, F., R. (1995) Negation and the modals of possibility and necessity, in *Modality in Grammar and Discourse*, edd Bybee J. and S. Fleischman, Amsterdam/Philadelphia: John Benjamins, 454 – 471
- Petr, J. (1986) (ed) *Mluvnice češtiny, díl 1 Fonetika Fonologie Morfologie a morfemika Tvoření slov*, Praha: Academia
- Petr, J. (1986 b) (ed) *Mluvnice češtiny, díl 2*, Praha: Academia
- Petr, J. 1987) (ed) *Mluvnice češtiny, díl 3 Skladba*, Praha: Academia
- Perkins, M., R. (1983) *Modal expressions in English*, London: Francis Pinter
- Plantiga, A. (1974) *The Nature of Necessity*. Oxford: Oxford University Press
- Pollock C., W. (1997) *Communicate What You Mean*. New York: Pearson Education
- Quirk, R., S. Greenbaum, G. Leech and J. Svartvik (1985) *A Comprehensive Grammar of the English Language*, London: Longman

- Salkie, R. (1996) 'Modality in English and French: a Corpus Based Approach', *Language Sciences* 18, 381 – 392, Elsevier Science Ltd
- Swan, M. (1996) *Practical English Usage*. Oxford: Oxford University Press
- Šmilauer, V. (1966) *Novočeská skladba*, Praha: Státní pedagogické nakladatelství
- Tárnyiková, J. (1985 a) *Modalita v angličtině* (part 1), Olomouc: Univerzita Palackého
- Tárnyiková, J. (1985 b) *Modalita v angličtině* (part 2), Olomouc: Univerzita Palackého
- Vachek, J. (1990) *A Linguistic Characterology of Modern English*. Praha: Státní pedagogické nakladatelství
- Winter, S., P. Gärdenforth (1995) 'Linguistic Modality as Expressions of Social Power', in *Nordic Journal of Linguistics* 18/2, 137 -166
- Žaža, S. (1972) 'K výrazovým prostředkům tzv. jistotní modality', *Slavica Slovaca*. 7/1, 54 - 57

Internet sources:

- <http://www.sil.org/linguistics/GlossaryOfLinguisticTerms/>
- http://www.rozhlas.cz/plzen/jazykovykoutek/_zprava/219082

Fiction for the excerpts:

- Amis, M. (1997) *Other People: Mysterious Story*, London: Vingeage.
- Amis, M. (1996) *Jiní lidé: Tajemný příběh*, Plzeň: Mustang. Translated by Jana and Andrew Tolletovi.
- Dahl, R. (1984) *The Best of Roald Dahl*, Penguin Books.
- Dahl, R. (1992) *Devětadvacet políbení*, Praha: Melantrich. Translated by Jaroslav Kořán.
- Hrabal, B. (1989) *Tři novely – Obsluhoval jsem anglického krále*, Praha: Československý spisovatel.
- Hrabal, B (1990) *I Served The King of England*, Picador. Translated by Paul Wilson.
- Ishiguro, K. (1989) *The Remains of the Day*, Faber and Faber.
- Ishiguro, K. (1997) *Soumrak dne*, Volvox Globator. Translated by Zdena Pošvicová
- Klíma I. (1990) *Má veselá jitra*. Praha: Rozmluvy.
- Klíma, I. (1993) *My Merry Mornings*, Readers International. Translated by George Theiner.
- Kundera M. (2006) *Nesnesitelná lehkost bytí*, Brno: Atlantis.
- Kundera M. (1984) *The Unbearable Lightness of Being*, Harper and Row. Translated by Michael Henry Heim.

Rowling, J. (2007) *Harry Potter and the Deathly Hollows*, Bloomsbury Publishing Plc.

Rowling, J. (2008) *Harry Potter a relikvie smrti*, Praha: Albatros. Translated by Pavel Medek.

Viewegh, M. (1997) *Výchova dívek v Čechách*, Brno: Petrov

Viewegh, M. (1997) *Bringing up Girls in Bohemia*, Readers International. Translated by A. G. Brian.

LIST OF APPENDICES

THE LIST OF APPENDICES

Appendix 1

Excerpts from:

Amis, M. (1997) *Other People: Mysterious Story*, London: Vingage.

Amis, M. (1996) *Jiní lidé: Tajemný příběh*, Plzeň: Mustang. Translated by Jana and Andrew Tolletovi.

Appendix 2

Excerpt from:

Dahl, R. (1984) *The Best of Roald Dahl*, Penguin Books

Dahl, R. (1992) *Devětadvacet políbení*, Praha: Melantrich. Translated by Jaroslav Kořán.

Appendix 3

Excerpt from:

Ishiguro, K. (1989) *The Remains of the Day*, Faber and Faber.

Ishiguro, K. (1997) *Soumrak dne*, Volvox Globator. Translated by Zdena Pošvicová

Appendix 4

Excerpt from:

Rowling, J. (2007) *Harry Potter and the Deathly Hollows*, Bloomsbury Publishing Plc.

Rowling, J. *Harry Potter a relikvie smrti*, Praha: Albatros. Translated by Pavel Medek.

Appendix 5

Excerpt from:

Hrabal, B. (1989) *Tři novely – Obsluhoval jsem anglického krále*, Praha:

Československý spisovatel.

Hrabal, B. (1990) *I Served The King of England*, Picador. Translated by Paul Wilson.

Appendix 6

Excerpt from:

Klíma I. (1990) *Má veselá jitra*, Praha: Rozmluvy.

Klíma, I. (1993) *My Merry Mornings*, Readers International. Translated by George Theiner.

Appendix 7

Excerpt from:

Kundera M. (2006) *Nesnesitelná lehkost bytí*, Brno: Atlantis.

Kundera M. (1984) *The Unbearable Lightness of Being*, Harper and Row. Translated by Michael Henry Heim.

Appendix 2

Excerpt from:

Viewegh, M. (1997) *Výchova dívek v Čechách*, Brno: Petrov

Viewegh, M. (1997) *Bringing up Girls in Bohemia*, Readers International. Translated by A. G. Brian.

APPENDICES

APPENDIX 1– AM

Amis, M. (1997) *Other People: Mysterious Story*, London: Vingage.

Amis, M. (1996) *Jiní lidé: Tajemný příběh*, Plzeň: Mustang. Translated by Jana and Andrew Tolletovi.

1	How kind they must be, she thought, how kind they are to do all that.	13	Je to od nich moc hezké, pomyslela si, když tohle všechno dělají kvůli mně.	13
2	I must be one them she thought as the man urged her down the passage and pointed to the door.	14	Určitě taky tak vypadám, pomyslela si.	14
3	Some went where they had to go in an effaced and gingery shuffle;	16	Některí se nesměle až bázlivě šourali svým směrem...	16
4	Some were so bad now that they had to wheeled round in covered boxes;	16	Několik jich na tom bylo tak špatně, že museli sedět na vozících	16
5	I must be one of them she thought remembering the narrow room and lifting a hand to her hair.	16	Tihle jsou na tom stejně jako já, napadlo ji, a vzápětí se jí vybavil úzký pokoj.	16
6	She thought they must be mad.	17	Napadlo ji, že jsou to určitě blázni.	17
7	She wasn't sure how things worked, or what they had to do with each other .	21	Nebyla si jistá, jak věci fungují a jaká je mezi nimi vzájemná souvislost.	21
8,9	It was obviously a very bad thing if it was to be so vigilantly shunned even here	22	Očividně to bylo něco špatného, když ani tihle lidé s tím nechtěli mít nic společného	22
10	I am obliged to deal with these sort of people fairly frequently.	23	Jsem nucen zabývat se těmito lidmi velmi často.	23
11	...and what little she knew she would have to keep to herself.	23	... a to málo co věděla, si musí nechat pro sebe.	23
12	She would have to learn fast and other people would have to show her how.	23	Bude se muset rychle učit a ti druzí jí budou muset ukázat jak nato.	23
13	Otherwise he's bound to get a complex about it or something.	25	Jinak z toho bude mít kupu mindráků.	25
14	You must have been in somewhere.	26	Že sis to s někým rozdala?	26
15	You must be fucking freezing.	27	Musí ti bejt děsná klandra.	27
16	You must have had a skinful last night.	29	Tak se podíváme ... včera večer jsi jich měla určitě habaděj.	29
17	Whoever drew up the signs kept getting the numbers wrong and was repeatedly obliged to cross them out	29	Ať už psal číslice kdokoli, měl s tím potíže, protože všechny byly přeškrtnuty	29
18	... and so she felt mouth must be very important.	30	Cítila, že právě proto jsou naše ústa převelice důležitá.	29
19	I must be pretty amazing, she thought	33	Pohled na dívku ... musí být asi dost nezvyklý, napadlo ji.	33
20	Jock hate the way he had to fidget through the leathery crevices ...	40	Jock přímo nenáviděl to, jak se musel přehrabovat v kožených taštičkách ...	40
21	Marry was getting the idea now, but she still wasn't sure about the kind of harm Trev intended.	42	Mary začínala pomalu chápat, ale stále si nebyla jistá, jak jí chce trev ublížit.	41
59	She had to hold her hand over her eyes before she could see his – greenly glinting in the negative shadow.	44	Musela si rukou zaclonit čelo, aby vůbec viděla ty jeho – zelené záblesky v tmavém stínu.	44
63	A lot of people assume that he must be a man of spectacularly low intelligence.	53	Spousta lidí je přesvědčena, že tento muž musí mít úžasně nízkou inteligenci.	53
64	She can do some things that you can't do.	53	Přestože žije v čase, není ještě mocna vnímat sled jednotlivých událostí. Může	53

			dělat některé věci, jež vy nemůžete.	
65	But she assumed he must know what he was talking about.	54	Přesto ale tušila, že určitě ví, o čem mluví.	54
67	And it was very hard to read, because the words could never come to an agreement about the size or shape they wanted to be.	54	To se četlo moc těžce, protože slova jako by se nemohla dohodnout ohledně velikosti nebo tvaru.	55
71	It couldn't be that bad, Mary thought, if people did it all the time.	56	Přece to nemůže být tak hrozné, napadlo Mary, když lidé pořád umírají.	56
79	And then the dreams came and she must suffer them without will.	58	A pak přicházely sny a ona si je chtě nechtě musela prožívat.	58
80	She did the next day: she had to – there was no choice.	61	Pohnula se až druhý den. Musela – neměla jinou možnost.	61
86	She knew, she shouldn't have said it.	64	Bylo jí jasné, že to neměla říct.	64
88	...some were so bad at talking that they couldn't have told her anyway.	64	...někteří mluvili tak špatně, že jí stejně ani nemohli nic říct.	64
92	You can't leave yourself alone, can you?	67	Ty si prostě nedáš pokoj, vid'?	67
96	Were things changeable? They had to be.	67	Daly se vůbec věci změnit? Určitě ano.	68
98	You had to be out by nine. You couldn't come back until twelve.	68	Úderem deváté musely být pryč a nesměly se vrátit před dvanáctou hodinou.	68
103	She thought: I mustn't go out too deep in life. I must stay in the shallows.	70	Nesmím klesnout v životě tak hluboko, pomyslela si. Musím se držet v mělčinách.	70
109	But you shouldn't worry. God would handle everything.	74	Neměli bychom se tím ale trápit, on to totiž bůh všechno zvládne.	74
110	You say you want a job. First you must do all this.	74	Ty tady tvrdíš, že sháníš práci. Nejprve musíš všechno tohle vyplnit.	74
113	In time, you always have to hand it to the past.	76	Stejně přijde čas, kdy člověk musí brát na vědomí minulost.	76
114	...and I must never forget it: life is good	77	...a nikdy to nesmím zapomenout: život je dobrý.	77
116	No, no, he said. I mustn't get your hopes up.	80	Ne, ne, vykřikl. Jenom žádný falešný naděje.	80
119	I must have your solemn promise: You're not going to get me drunk, are you?	82	Musíš mi svatosvatě slíbit, že se mě nebudeš snažit opít.	82
120	Mary didn't have to look around to know it was Alan.	82	Mary se ani nemusela otočit, aby poznala, že je to Alan.	82
126	I can't risk it.	91	Nemůžu riskovat.	90
133	Mary had to say goodbye to Mrs Pilkington and give her a fixed address.	101	Mary se musela rozloučit s paní Pilkingtonovou a také jí musela dát svoji novou adresu.	100
134	... but honourable striving in a cause that would now have to wait until dawn ...	105	... ale čestného snažení, jež bude muset vyčkat dalšího rána	104
135	I am afraid I've got to insist about this.	106	Obávám se však, že mě budeš muset teď poslechnout.	105
136	Oh I think I must have been some time ...	112	Já myslím, že někdy už ano ...	111
137	Amy's not been back here for, ooh it must be eight or nine years.	96	Amy už zde nebyla, no, to bude už osm nebo devět let.	95
138	On the four walls the romping sprites and goblins of the paper pattern must have once provided food for tenacious nightmares but they held no message for her now.	96	Skotačící mužící a skřítkové na všech čtyřech zdech určitě bývali kořistí pro zavilé noční můry, ale Mary neřkaly dočista nic.	95

140	She thought it must be the Hostel.	98	Asi to bude tím, kde bydlím.	97
141	How vile you must be when even the flies shun you.	98	Musím být asi hodně zlá, když i mouchy se mě bojí.	97
143	He must have been a very bad boy to be born the son of a sweeper-woman.	112	Určitě strašně zlobil, že se narodil uklízečce.	112
146	Usually we find a body and have to look for a murderer.	113	Obvykle najdeme tělo a pak hledáme vraha.	112
147	No, you needn't know that yet.	113	Ne, to ještě nemusíš vědět.	113
148	Trudy would have to be moving to: any trouble and the girls were out.	101	Trudy bude muset taky odejít.	100
149	I'm afraid there's one more thing you must see tonight.	114	Musíš bohužel vidět ještě něco dneska večer.	113
150	Everywhere had to let Prince in.	115	... všude musel být vpuštěn dovnitř.	114
151	There will have to be many versions of death, to answer all the versions of life.	119	Bude muset nepochybně existovat mnoho podob smrti, jež by odpovídaly všem těm podobám života.	113
152	There will have to be a hell for each of us.	119	Pro každého z nás bude muset existovat peklo.	118
153	But you don't have to die for me, do you?	121	Ty ale nemusíš kvůli mně obětovat život, ne?	120
154	Mary knew that Alan would soon make his bid ... But he would have to try it, his mind made up by love.	122	Jenže on se o to bude muset pokusit, neboť jeho mysl je ovládaná láskou.	122
155	It was comfortable there, she had to admit, and Alan didn't appear to mind.	123	Musela připustit, že to bylo pohodlné, a ani se nezdálo, že	122
156	Perhaps if she had to sleep with anyone, she could sleep with Russ, who ...	125	Jestli už Mary musí s někým spát, mohla by spát s Rusem, který ...	124
157	Everyone had been very hot, scared and angry, what with all the fire about. And there was an authentically bad moment when Michael had had to go down on his knees while a black soldier approached...	130	... kdy byl Michael donucen padnout na kolena ...	129
158	Times of year must take you back, she thought – if there are times for you to go back to.	132	Napadlo ji, že roční období vracejí člověka zpět, je-li kam se vracet.	131
159	She must have known that play by heart. She must have hated it by heart.	137	Ona musela znát tu hru z paměti. Musela ji celou svou duší nenávidět.	136
160	Do you swear on your mother's life? – I can't do that.	142	Přisáháš na život své matky? – To nemohu.	142
161	You must have a pretty high opinion of yourself, young lady.	147	Ty si asi myslíš, mladá dámo, že jsi něco lepšího.	146
162	... they are all together freely, and seldom have to do things that they aren't already quite keen on doing.	149	... všichni jsou spolu ze svobodné vůle, zřídka kdy dělají to, co se jim zrovna moc dělat nechce.	149
163	Like if your stomach hurts you know you must have been laughing a lot.	150	... jako třeba když mě bolí břicho, tak vím, že jsem se hodně chechtal.	149
164	Young Alan must have had a lot of nerve up there that afternoon.	155	Mladý Alan musel v sobě sebrat hodně odvahy toho odpoledne.	135
165	The first thing Mary had to do about his suicide was make a statement about it, too.	156	První, co musela Mary udělat ohledně Alanovy sebevraždy, bylo učinit prohlášení.	154
166	„Course, you are not <i>obliged</i> to say anything at all, but in my experience ...	156	Samozřejmě to není vaše <i>povinnost</i> cokoli říkat, ale podle mých zkušeností ...	154
167	It is not likely that your hair could break your neck. It must have been Mary again.	157	... Určitě za to mohla ona, Mary.	155
168	She rode in a van to a place where you	157	Jela autem na místo, kde musela	155

	had to empty your pockets and your bag and submit to the far-flung presence.		vyprázdnit kapsy a tašku a podřídít se odměřeným přítomným.	
169	Mary knew that already; she didn't have to tell her.	157	To už Mary věděla, ta žena jí to nemusela stále opakovat.	155
170	They had to let him in, of course. They have to let him in and let him let her out.	158	Museli jej vpustit dovnitř samozřejmě. Museli jej nechat, aby si ji mohl odvést.	155
171	I've got to hand it to him.	158	.....	156
172	It's true. Why should you mind?	161	Vždyť je to tak. A co je vám do toho?	159
173	Mary was sure there must be.	166	Mary byla přesvědčená, že ano.	163
174	... and the rich have special terrors. Mary will have to watch herself here.	166	Mary si bude muset dát pozor.	164
175	It's good, she thought. It must be good: it's all I've got.	170	Je to dobré. Je to určitě dobré. ...	168
177	If you don't feel a little mad sometimes, then I think you must be out of your mind.	173	Jestli sami někdy nemáte pocit, že jste se zbláznili, pak si myslím, že to skutečně nemáte v hlavě v pořádku.	171
178	I suppose, you have to read the whole thing to understand.	174	Asi by sis to musela přečíst celý.	172
179	As he did so Mary imagined that her face must be rather delicious.	179	Mary si představovala, že její rozpálené tváře zalité slzami mají určitě lahodnou chuť.	177
180	Now you will have to cope with all the shit.	181	Ted' si s tím, hergot, budeš muset poradit sama.	179
181	You must promise not to cry too much, while you are alone like this.	182	Slib mi, že nebudeš tolik brečet, když jsme tady sami.	180
182	She wouldn't want to have to deal with anyone who could make sounds like these.	185	Nikdy by nechtěla mít nic s někým, kdo by vydával takové zvuky.	182
183	How's Mr Smythe? Oh, mustn't complain. He has his good days and his bad days ...	190	No, nemůžu si stěžovat.	188
184	I'd better hurry or they'll be shut.	190	Budu si muset pospíšet nebo mi zavřou.	188
185	You must worry about him sometimes, though.	190	Asi s ním máš často starosti.	188
186	She thought that everyone's heart must hurt slightly when they began to feel all right about themselves.	195	Myslela si, že srdce každého zabolí, když začne mít sám ze sebe dobrý pocit.	193
187	It's just the next thing, like leaving home. You have to do it eventually. You wait.	198	Taky to časem uděláš. Jen počkej.	196
188	Amy was not yet quite whole, and she would have to fill up the time herself, waste the time, kill it.	200	Sama si musela svůj čas vyplnit, plýtvat svým časem i jej třeba zabít.	198
189	I'm so happy, I think I must be going to die.	203	Jsem tak šťastná, že si myslím, že už mě brzy čeká smrt.	201
190	I don't know what come over you sometimes. You just <i>have</i> to have your own way, don't you.	206	Ty však <i>musíš</i> mít vždycky svoji hlavu, vid'?	204
191	She must have been crying for a long time.	206	Určitě dloho brečela.	204

APPENDIX 2 – DA

Dahl, R. (1984) *The Best of Roald Dahl*, Penguin Books.

Dahl, R. (1992) *Devětadvacet polibení*, Praha: Melantrich. Translated by Jaroslav Kořán.

1	Shall we not perhaps make a little bet on that? Shall we not make a little bet on whether your lighter lights?	33	Nescete se stavit? Nemohli bysme se stavit, estli ten vař zapalovač chitne?	28
2	The man paused and examined his cigar, and I must say I did not much like the way he was behaving.	33	Muřík se odmłcel a prohlížel si doutník a musím přiznat, že se mi jeho chování příliš nezamlouvalo.	28
4	Sure, I would like to have a Cadillac.	33	To je jasný, že by se mi zmlouval.	28
5	That would be no good. What I should do I should tie one of your hands to de table before we started and I should stand there with a knife ready to go chop de moment your lighter missed.	35	Udělal bych to tak, že bych vam přivazal jedno ruko ke stolo... a čekal bych s připraveným nožem...	30
6	What if the boy lost? Then we would have to rush him to the hospital in the Cadillac that he had no won.	36	Pak se s ním poženeme do nemocnice v cadillaku, který nevyhrál.	31
7	So why should not I bet him.	36	Proč bych se tedy o něj nevsadil.	32
8	And now de nails. I must put in de nails.	37	Včil musime zabit' řebiky.	32
9	You must leave de little finger out, lying on de table.	37	Maliček musi zustať na stole.	33
10	Mister referee, you must say to begin.	37	Pane řjedku, musite nam vydat povel, že mužem začít.	33
13	I must fly, goodbye. I must call again sometime and find out what happened.	43	Musím letět. Musím se někdy stavit a zeptat se jak to dopadlo.	123
14	I certainly did not know that.	45	To jsem rozhodně nevěděla.	125
15	Dr Scott, you must come at once – quickly please.	47	Pane doktore, musite okamžitě přijet – ale rychle, prosím vás	127
16	The doctor certainly seemed nervous.	49	Lékař byl poněkud nervózní.	129
17	He decided that his only alternative was to run away fast, and he certainly was not going to do that.	50	Usoudil, že jedinou alternativou je útěk, ale ten se mu taky nemusel podařit.	130
18	Come on, we must go now.	51	Pojďte, musime už jít.	130
19	He replied that it should not be difficult provided it was one of the great years.	53	Odpověděl, že by to nemělo být nic těžkého, pokud jde o některý ze slavných ročníků.	5
20	I must go and fetch the claret, if you will excuse me.	54	Omluvte mne , prosím, dojdu pro klaret.	6
21	Certainly I will, if that is the way you want it.	57	Samosebou, proč ne?	9
23	I must say he did it well.	59	Musím přiznat, že to dělal znamenitě.	13
24	But this time – I must cautiously this time – must I not?	59	Ale – tentokrát musím postupovat obezřetně, že ano?	13
25	Unmistakably it is a St Julien.	60	Neomylně je to St Julian.	13
26	I must be careful.	60	Musím si dát pozor.	14
27	He had figured that there must be at least five hundred dollars in his account at his bank at home.	68	Odhadoval, že má na svém bankovním kontě přinejmenším pět set dolarů.	60
28	One of the higher numbers was certain to win it after this.	69	Takhle určitě vyhraje jedno z vyšších čísel.	61
29	They would have to put her in reverse if he was to have any chance of winning it	69	Museli by loď uvést do zpětného chodu, měl-li mít ještě aspoň špetku naděje na	61

	now.		výhru.	
30	Maybe he should ask captain to do just that.	69	Možná by to měl kapitánovi navrhnout.	61
31	Have to do it soon because the time limit was midday.	69	Musí sebou hodit, protože časový limit končí v poledne.	61
32	The ship would have to stop.	69	Loď by musela zastavit.	61
33	Low field would be sure to win it then	69	Potom by určitě vyhrálo dolní pole.	61
34	And he had better wear light clothes, something easy to swim in.	69	A musel by se nalehko obléct.	61
35	He was by no means satisfied that this woman was absolutely certain to give the alarm when he made his jump.	70	Stále ještě neměl stoprocentní jistotu, že tato žena skutečně spustí pokřik ...	62
36	Got to go and get my exercise now.	71	Musím si dát ranní rozcvičku.	63
37	Almost certainly it would.	71	Ale bezpochyby ano.	63
38	He must jump straight and land feet first.	71	Musí skočit zpřímá a rozrazit hladinu nohama.	63
40	You better come down now.	72	Pojďte raději dolů.	64
41	You know quite well you are meant to wait for me.	72	Dobře víte, že na mě máte počkat.	64
42	Drioly knew he only had to mention his wife and the boy's thick brown lips would lose and begin to quiver.	77	Drioly věděl, že stačí, aby se zmínil o své ženě, a chlapcovy plné hnědé rty povolí a rozechvějí se.	82
43	What idea? That he should make a picture of you upon my back.	78	Jaká nápad? Aby mi vytetoval na záda tvoji podobiznu.	83
44	Am I not permitted to look at the pictures?	82	Nemůžu se snad podívat na obrazy?	87
45	Your only duty – shall I call it your pleasure – will be to spend your time on my branch in bathing trunks...	85	Jedinou vaší povinností – anebo lépe řečeno potěšením – by bylo trávit většinu času na mé pláži ...	89
46	You better be careful you do not overdo it, Edward.	87	Musíš si dát pozor, aby ses moc neuhonil, Edwarde.	339
47	You must go home. Be a good cat and go on home.	88	Musíš jít domů. Ukaž, že jsi hodná kočička a běž domů.	340
48	And if it is still trying to hang around this afternoon, you had better take it to the police.	89	A jestli se tady bude potloukat ještě odpoledne, uděleš nejlíp, když ji odneseš na policii.	340
49	You have bumps on your beautiful face. You must be getting old.	89	Dělají se ti na tvé hezounké tvářičce bradavice. Je vidět, že stárneš.	341
50	She never liked to break her enjoyment by having to stop while she wondered what to play next.	89	Nechtěla si kazit radost tím že by musela přestat a přemýšlet, co hrát dál.	341
51	All right I will let you stay, but you must keep still and not to jump about.	92	Tak dobře, nechám tě tady, ale nesmíš se vrtět a skákat.	345
52	... it must have been an extremely swift and silent movement.	92	... ale přesto se to muselo stát nesmírně rychle a tiše.	344
53	...then it is certainly nor right or even very kind to put him through of silly tests.	94	... tak by nebylo správné, ani příliš vhodné, kdybychom s ním dělali pokusy.	349
54	You need not tell me – I happen to knot you adore Chopin.	95	Nic mi neříkej – já vím, že Chopina zbožňuješ.	347
56	Therefore, according to Mr Willis, he would have to have been an unskilled labourer to come back so soon.	97	Podle pana Willise by tudíž musel být nekvalifikovaným dělníkem, aby se vrátil tak brzy.	348
58	I must say it was quite amusing.	98	Uznávám, že je to docela zajímavé.	351
60	He must be absolutely famished.	101	Vždyť musí být úplně vyhladovělý.	352
61	I must go at once and cook something really special.	101	Musím mu jít okamžitě schystat něco dobrého.	353
62	But you <i>must</i> have supper.	104	Ale miláčku, musíš přece jíst.	18
63	Listen, I have got something to tell you.	105	Poslyš, musím ti něco říct.	19

64	But there need not really be any fuss.	105	Žádné scény kolem toho být nemusí.	19
65	...and she must cook it good, and make it as tasty as possible	107	... a musím ji uvařit co nejlepší, protože je chudák tak unavený...	21
66	Why do you not have one yourself. You must be awfully tired.	109	Pročpak si také nenaležete? Musíte být už strašně unavený.	23
67	I better turn it off for you, had not I.	109	Raději vám tu troubu vypnu, co říkáte?	23
68	You must be terribly hungry by now because it is long past your supper-time...	110	Musíte mít strašný hlad, protože jste už dávno měli večeřet...	24
69	That's a hell of a big club the guy must've used to hit poor Patrick.	110	Ten pacholek musel vzít chudáka Patrika pořádnou palicí.	24
70	How long ago was that? It must be nearly fifty years.	115	Jak je tomu dlouho? Určitě dobrých padesát let.	69
71	- when you have to dust a room you get to knot and to hate all objects in it.	115	Kdybyste v té místnosti museli utírat prach, také byste znali a nenáviděli všechny předměty.	69
72	So Chat should I do?	121	Tak co bych měl udělat?	76
73	... she would flutter and fidget about from room to room until her husband who must have been well aware of her state, finally emerged from his privacy and suggested that they better get gong now.	123	... a neměla nikde stání, dokud se manžel, který si musel být dobře vědom jejího stavu, nevynořil ze svého soukromí a nenavrhl, že by snad už mohli jít.	246
74	Mind you, it is by no means certain that this is what he did...	123	Připomínám, že si to možná ani neuvědomoval ...	246
75	And one thing he must have known ...	123	A určitě musel vědět ...	246
76	He must also have known...	123	Musel také vědět ..	246
77	I have to be there half an hour beforehand for the formalities.	124	Měla bych tam být o půl hodiny dříve, abych vyřídila všechny formality.	247
78	I warned Mr Foster that you must leave at nine fifteen.	124	Upozornil jsem pana Fostera, že musíte odjet ve čtvrt na deset.	247
79	This, she kept telling herself, was the one plane she must not miss.	124	Musím to letadlo stihnout, opakovala si neustále.	247
80	I suppose perhaps we had better get gong if you want to catch that plane...	125	Měli bychom snad už jít, jestli chceš stihnout to letadlo...	248
81	I would have to pay him full Wales.	126	Musel bych mu dávat plný plat.	249
82	...the fog began to thicken and the car had to slow down.	126	...mlha počala houstnout a vůz musel zpomalit.	249
83	It is bound to be cancelled now.	126	Let musel být už dávno odložen.	250
84	If by any chance it does go, you will be certain to miss it now.	127	Kdyby ovšem letadlo přece jen letělo, teď už bychom ho určitě nestihli.	250
85	She always received the same answer -- that she must continue to wait.	128	Pokaždé dostala stejnou odpověď -- že musí čekat.	251
86	You must have had an anxious day.	128	Měla jsi jistě strašný den.	251
87	I am sure I had it in my hand as I came down.	130	Určitě jsem to měl v ruce, když jsem šel dolů.	253
88	It's too late. I can't wait for him.	131	Už je moc pozdě, nemůžu na něj čekat ..	254
89	Is not your husband travelling with you? Certainly not.	131	Váš manžel s námi nepojede? Samosebou, že ne.	254
90	And that must be the village of Brill.	134	A tamhleto musí být vesnička Brill.	257
91	... and it seemed that all he had to do was to drive out to it once a week ...	135	... a podle všeho stačilo, aby do něho jednou týdně zajel ...	258
92	He could no be sure but two chairs like that must be worth at lest a thousand pounds.	136	Nebyl si zcela jistý, ale dvě takováhle křesla by musela mít cenu přinejmenším tisíc liber.	259
93	Why shouldn't he search for it?	136	Co kdyby po něm začal pátrat?	261
94	He guessed that they must all still be in church...	139	Vytušil, že všichni budou nejspíš ještě v kostele...	262
95	...and in order to keep his car out of	140	...a aby jeho vůz nebyl na očích, musel	263

	sight, Mr Borgis had to leave it on the road...		ho pan Borgis ponechat na cestě...	
96	I must say I have never been greyhound-racing myself, but...	141	Musím se přiznat, že jsem na závodech chrtů nikdy nebyl ...	264
97	... and they must have seen his face turning red ...	142	... a jistě jim neuniklo, že celý zrudnul ...	265
98	He <i>must</i> have time to think, he told himself.	143	Musíš získat čas na rozmyšlenou, řekl si.	266
99	He must have time to compose himself thoroughly before he said another word.	143	Musíš získat čas, aby ses naprosto uklidnil.	266
100	And whatever you do, keep calm.	143	A stůj co stůj musíš zachovat klid.	266
101	... and had proved that all three must have come from the same workshop ...	143	... a dokázal, že všechny tři musely vyjít z téže dílny ...	266
102	Well, I must say that is a trifle difficult to explain.	147	Inu, musím přiznat, že se to vysvětluje dost těžko.	271
103	You cannot back out now, Pardon. A deal is a deal.	150	Teď z toho vycouvat nemůžete důstojně pane.	274
104	... and then at once – it must have been at once because he did not have time to ...	154	... a vzápětí – muselo to být vzápětí, protože neměl ani čas ...	217
105	I was beginning to get worried. - You must not worry about me.	156	Už jsem začínala mít starost. O mě starosti mít nemusíte.	219
106	You really should not bother.	156	S tím jste se neměla obtěžovat.	221
107	... in fact I am sure he was shorter ...	159	... vlastně určitě byl menší ...	222
108	It must be awfully difficult to do a thing like that.	160	To musí být strašně těžké dělat takové věci ...	223
109	To support these ladies the men must work like slaves ...	183	Aby pak tyto dámy mohly žít na úrovni, musí dřít muži jako otroci ...	277
110	Must he be a cuckold for the rest of his life?	183	Copak bude nosit parohy až do smrti?	277
111	... and certainly it would be unreasonable to deny either of them the pleasure of monthly meeting.	184	... a že by bylo nerozumné upírat jim oboustranné potěšení ...	278
112	The man must be mad, she cried.	187	Ten chlap se zbláznil, vybuchla.	281
113	I've got to have this coat!	187	Musím ho mít.	281
114	... the banks are closed until Monday and I've simply got to have some money for the weekend.	188	... a nutně potřebuji peníze na víkend.	282
116	You'd better not lose this ticket, then.	189	Pak si tedy dejte pozor, abyste lístek neztratila.	283
119	I really must try to make him change the way he dresses.	190	Opravdu ho musím přimět, aby se oblékal jinak ...	284
120	You had to have a special sort of face to wear things like that.	190	Takové oblečení se hodí jen k zvlášť vybranému obličejí.	284
121	We shall just have to wait and see.	192	Počkáme si a uvidíme.	286
122	I think, I'd better do that.	192	Zajdu tam radši sám.	286
123	Also you have to have fifty dollars.	192	A musela bys mít těch padesát dolarů.	286
124	You have to pay out fifty dollars in cash before they give it to you.	192	Nedostaneš to dřív, dokud jim na ruku nevyzásíš padesát dolarů.	287
125	Now I must run.	194	Ale musím už běžet.	288
126	I'd rather you didn't do that.	194	Měla by sis počkat.	288
127	So you should be.	195	Ani se ti nedivím.	289
128	It would cost you two or three hundred dollars if you had to buy it in a shop.	195	Takovýhle kousek by tě v obchodě přišel alespoň na dvě, tři stovky.	289
129	I'm afraid you mustn't expect anything else for Christmas.	196	Obávám se ovšem, že už ode mne nic jiného k vánocům čekat nemůžeš.	290
130	Alas I had to spend my life avoiding them instead.	220	Běda, já místo toho trávil čas tím, že jsem se jim vyhýbal.	314

131	That's enough. He only has to know what it tastes like.	221	To stačí. Stačí, když se doví, jak to chutná.	315
132	If you must have a religion I suppose Mohammedanism is as good as any of them.	221	Když už musíš mít nějaké náboženství, řekla bych	315
133	You have got lots of Aires and you must not ever smoke or drink.	221	Máš spoustu žen, ale nesmíš vůbec kouřit a pít alkohol.	315
134	Why mustn't you smoke and drink?	221	Proč nesmíš kouřit a pít alkohol?	315
135	I think it must have been a week after this that my mother was killed.	222	Asi tak týden nato maminka zahynula.	316
136	You must understand that it was only when they touched me that I became alarmed.	227	Musíte pochopit, že jsem propadal jen tehdy, když se mě dotýkaly.	321
137	I simply had to find out who was really the guilty party in this case.	228	Musel jsem prostě zjistit, kdo je v tomto případě skutečným viníkem.	322
138	This must have frustrated Miss Elphinstone beyond measure.	230	To muselo slečnu E. nesmírně znechutit.	324
139	Chat I must actually do now was to	230	Co teď opravdu musíš udělat, je že ...	325
140	I'm sure you must be tired after cycling all that distance.	232	Určitě jste po té dlouhé jízdě na kole znavený.	326
141	...the upper teeth came down on my knuckles and started chopping away at them so fierily I had to let go.	235	... a začaly se mi divoce zařezávat do zápěstí, že jsem se musel pustit.	329
142	... and then three inches further on I saw what must have been uvula above me.	235	... jsem nad sebou spatřil cosi, co musel být čípek...	329
143	The man must be mad.	236	Ten chlap musel zešítet.	330
145	As you might guess, I am having to keep entirely to myself ...	236	Jak jste patrně vytyšili, žiji sám pro sebe.	331
146	You are certain he is all right?	239	Víte určitě, že mu nic není.	333
147	We are giving him a little wash, that is all. You must spear us a moment or two for that.	239	Musíme ho přece trochu omýt, to je všechno. Mějte ještě chvilku strpení.	333
148	In the last eighteen months I have lost all three of my children, so you mustn't blame me for being anxious.	240	Za posledních osmnáct měsíců jsem přišla o všechny tři děti, tak se nesmíte divit, že mám takový strach.	334
149	I am certain there is something inherited that cause my children to die in this way. There must be.	241	Určitě je v tom něco dědičného, že všechny moje děti takhle zemřely.	335
150	Why do all my children have to be small and weak?	241	Proč jen jsou všechny moje děti tak mrňavé a slabé.	335
151	You must stop thinking like that.	241	Přestaňte myslet na takové věci.	335
152	You must forget about the others.	244	Na ty ostatní musíte zapomenout.	337
153	Darling, now you must take me to a most marvellous restaurant for dinner so we can celebrate the arrival of our son.	245	A teď mě, miláčku, musíš vzít do toho nejlepšího restaurantu na večeři, abychom...	354
154	After a while, he announced that he must have left in the pocket of the other suit.	254	Po chvíli oznámil, že je musel nechat v kapse druhých šatů.	354
155	An infant nurse at twenty dollars a day must expect to be hauled out of bed occasionally.	254	Dětská ošetřovatelka za dvacet dolarů denně musí přece počítat s tím, že ...	354
156	Whether you like it or not, you are going to have to learn some time...	249	Ať se ti to bude líbit nebo ne, jednou se to naučit musíš.	358
157	... and therefore they must learn to be doubly expert with what they have.	249	... a proto se musí hodně učit, aby ...	358
159	... but as soon as I die, you must put on a pair of shoes and walk down to the village ...	252	... ale až umřu, obuj si boty, sejdi dolů do vesnice ...	360
160	The funeral parlour is one of our great	254	Musí být chráněny za každou cenu.	362

	national institutions. It must be protected at all cost.			
161	You've got to pay the funeral parlour.	254	Musíš zaplatit pohřebnímu ústavu.	362
162	I must get out of this place before my nose is ruined altogether.	255	Musím odtud co nejdřív vypadnout, než si dočista zničím nos.	362
163	... I have tasted only the cooking of two people – unless one counts Nurse McPottle, who must have heated my bottle a few times when I was an infant.	255	... - ledaže bych počítal ošetřovatelku M., která mi několikrát ohřála láhev.	364
164	In that case we shall have to assume that you are right.	258	V tom případě musíme mít za to, že máte pravdu.	366
165	... but there must have been some power in the ratman's eyes that prevented it from doing this.	307	... ale oči musely mít nějakou zvláštní moc, která jí v tom zabránila.	177
166	The string put it back with a jerk that must have almost dislocated its leg.	307	Motouz ji prudce strhl zpátky, jen taktak že jí nevyhodil nohu z kloubů.	178
167	Something unpleasant was about to happen. But I had to see it now.	307	Ale teď už jsem to vidět musel.	178
169	Take it. – I must pay you.	314	Jen si ji vem. – Musím Vám ji zaplatit.	185
170	... that after a while the Council had had no alternative but to give the old man back his job.	314	... neměla obecní rada jinou možnost, než dědovi jeho práci vrátit.	184
171	... a nice clean tin of maggots arrives by post and all you've got to do is slip it in the fishing bag ...	321	... přinese pěknou čist'ounkou pikslu s červama a vy jí jenom strčíte do ruksaku ...	192
172	Just so long as you make sure your maggots is alive – they've got to be wiggling.	322	Musej se pěkně kroutit.	193
173	I simply won't have you talking to Claud like that.	323	Takhle s Claudem nesmíš mluvit.	193
174	Claud said we mustn't run the double any more of Mr Feasey might get tired of him ...	326	Claud řekl, že dvojníka už víckrát postavit nemůžeme.	197
175	So all I had to do this morning was to go to the bank ..	327	Na mě bylo jen zajít toho rána do banky ...	197
176	... which were indeed terrible things because they had to do with physical injury	330	... a byly opravdu hrozné, protože se týkaly rychle způsobeného zranění ...	200
177	What you've got to remember is this.	331	Hlavně si ale musíš dobře zapamatovat tohle.	201
179	There's thousands of people know this dog, so you've got to be careful.	337	Tohohle psa znají tisíce lidí, takže musíte bejt opatrný.	208
180	All you got to do is miss the vain and it do not work.	338	Stačí abyste se netrefili do žíly a doping nezabere.	208
181	Shoudn't be any trouble anyway because I picked the others in the race myself.	338	Musí to vyjít, protože ty druhý mrchy jsem pro závod vybíral já osobně.	209
182	Cost me a tenner to old Feasey.	338	Musel jsem za to starýmu F. vypláznout pětku.	209

APPENDIX 3 - IS

Ishiguro, K. (1989) *The Remains of the Day*, Faber and Faber.

Ishiguro, K. (1997) *Soumrak dne*, Volvox Globator. Translated by Zdena Pošvicová.

1	Although I did my best not to, something of my scepticism must have betrayed itself...	7	Snažil jsem se sice nedat svou skepsi najevo, ale zřejmě neúspěšně ...	10
2	I have, I should make clear, reread Miss Kenton's letter several times ...	10	Měl bych dodat, že jsem nedávný dopis slečny K. několikrát přečetl ...	12
3	What I should have said was that there was no serious dispute among professionals of quality	30	Snad jsem měl říci, že to vědí zkušení profesionálové ...	26
4	And most frustrating of all would be having to witness at the conclusion otherwise decent employees shaking their heads ...	30	A nejhorší bylo, když jsem sledoval, jak na závěr všech těch historek jindy vcelku rozumní kolegové potřásali hlavou ...	26
5	...so that I and the likes of Mr Graham would have to share the frustrating experience	30	Takže mne i třeba pana Grahama dosti otravovalo, když jsme o něm museli poslouchat jednu historku za druhou ...	26
6	One had to be guided by the judgement of the true ladies and gentleman, argued the Society.	33	Je nutno řídit se úsudkem oněch skutečných urozených dam a ...	28
7	Furthermore, it must be remembered that my father was a butler of an earlier generation	35	Nelze ovšem opomenout, že otec byl majordomem předchozí generace ...	30
8	Thought we must be careful not to attempt to deny the responsibility which ultimately lies with ourselves...	35	Je sice třeba dát pozor, aby se člověk nepokoušel vyhnout odpovědnosti ...	30
9	...it has to be said that certain employers have done much to encourage these sorts of trends.	35	... ale je nutno říci, že někteří zaměstnavatelé ...	30
10	... I can see in with hindsight that he must have striven throughout his years somehow to become that butler ...	37	... vidím, že na sobě neustále pracoval, aby se stal ...	31
11	... and no doubt rather bored with what the view outsider had to offer, they proceeded to amuse themselves by shouting ...	39	Oba pány nepochybně nudila vyhlídka na okolní krajinu, a tah se bavili ...	33
12	I can well imagine how he must have looked that day...	40	Dovedu si představit, jak asi tehdy vypadal...	33
13	...dignity has to do crucially with a butler's ability not to ...	43	... důstojnost majordoma v zásadě znamená umění neopustit ...	35
14	I have to admit Mr Graham has a point here	44	Musím dát v tomto panu Grahamovi za pravdu	36
15	... one is able to judge intuitively without having to see under pressure	45	... můžete intuitivně posoudit něčí přístup, aniž byste jej nutně musel vidět ve vyhocené situaci ..	37
16	But I believe we have a duty not to be so defeatist in this matter.	45	Já se ale domnívám, že bychom se s takovým názorem neměli smířovat.	37
17	...it was still so dark that I was obliged to turn on the electric light ...	49	Byla ještě taková tma, že jsem musel rozsvítit ...	38
18	I will have point out how different things are now ...	50	Budu jí musit zdůraznit, že dnes je všechno jiné ...	39
19	I have not though I must say it rather amused me to remember that exasperating housemaid ...	51	Abych řekl pravdu, nevím, i když musím přiznat, že ...	39

21	Indeed, it must have occurred on just one of those summer evenings she mentions ...	52	Opravdu se to zřejmě přihodilo některý z oněch letních večerů ...	40
22	Of course, one has to expect such things to occur amongst maids and footmen ...	53	Musíte přirozeně počítat s tím, že se podobné věci mezi služkami a sluhy stávají ...	41
23	...and a good butler should always take it into account ...	53	... a dobrý majordom by na to neměl při plánování práce zapomínat ...	41
24	It seemed such a pity your room should be so dark and cold ...	54	Vždyť je to škoda, že máte tak tmavý a studený pokoj...	42
25	Why, Mr Stevens, I should think I was addressing your father.	55	Jistěže, pane Stevensi, volala jsem totiž na vašeho otce.	42
26	It must have been most galling for him to be so addressed by one such as I.	56	Asi to bylo pod jeho důstojnost, když mu někdo jako já takto říkal.	43
27	I would return it myself, but I have to go upstairs just now.	58	Já bych ji uklidila, ale musím teď nahoru.	45
28	I must say I a mat some loss as to why you should be so concerned with these most trivia of errors.	61	Ale musím říci, že nechápu, proč vás tak nepodstatný omyl vyvádí z míry.	47
29	These errors may be trivial in themselves, but you must yourself realize their larger significance.	62	Ten omyl možná nepodstatný je, ale musíte si uvědomit, jaký může mít dopad.	47
30	I am sorry, but I must go on.	62	Nezlobte se, ale budu ještě pokračovat.	47
31	I believe there are many duties your father should be now relieved of.	62	Myslím, že řady povinností by váš otec měl být zbaven.	47
32	He must not be asked to perform tasks in any area where an error might jeopardize the success.	65	Nesmíme na něm v žádném směru požadovat nic, co by mohlo ohrozit úspěch ...	50
33	Seamus should be told to put those steps right.	69	Mělo by se říci Seamusovi, aby ty schody srovnal.	52
35	I notice I have yet to record here anything of my journey to this city...	70	Vlastně vidím, že mnohé zážitky z cesty do Salisbury musím ještě vylíčit.	53
36	It must have been towards the end of 1920 that Lord Darlington made the first trip to Berlin.	74	Muselo to být koncem roku 1920, kdy lord Darlington vykonal první cestu do Berlína.	56
37	...who, because they came „off the record“, I should not name here ...	77	...a dalších, jež zde nemohu jmenovat, protože přijeli nazapřenou.	58
38	However – and I say this with some pride and gratitude – Lord Darlington never made ...	77	Musím však s pýchou a vděčností prohlásit, že Lord D. ...	58
39	To be worthwhile, any such conference would have to be of sufficient weight so that it could have a decisive effect on the official international conferences.	78	Celá věc mohla být smysluplná jen tehdy, pokud by konference podobného charakteru měla patřičnou váhu ...	59
40	And to think we have to be seen by the world to be arm in arm with them. (Frenchmen)	79	Když si pomyslím, že jsme s nimi jedna ruka a svět se na to dívá.	60
42	Mustn't speak ill of our dear allies.	79	Nesmím špatně mluvit o drahých spojencích.	60
43 44	However, this option, quite aside from the misgivings his lordship was bound to have as regards gossip travelling, entailed my having to rely on unknown quantities just when a mistake could prove most costly.	80	Takové řešení by ovšem znamenalo, navíc k problémům s vynášením pomluv a řečí, které nutně vzniknou, že bych se musel spolehnout na neznámé lidi právě v nejnevhodnější chvíli.	61
45	... that, for all their having to work at an exhausting rate, they could feel great pride..	81	... že práce bude sice vyčerpávající, ale zato budou hrdí ...	61

46	Now I must return to my work and leave you to your wanderings.	84	Já teď musím jít něco dělat a vy se klidně procházejte dál.	63
47	I know you must be awfully busy yourself.	85	Chápu, že sám máte hodně práce.	64
48	It's just that one has so much of importance on one's mind just now.	85	Já jenom, že teď musím myslet na tolik důležitých věcí.	64
49	Sir Donald should know that, but he has asked me none the less.	86	Sir David to dobře ví, ale přesto se na mě obrátil.	65
50	It must be most trying under the present pressure.	86	V tak tíživé situaci by to pro vás bylo velice náročné.	65
51	I must have pause a little to form my next phrase, for Mr Cardinal gave a sigh and said ...	87	Asi jsem se na chvíli odmlčel, neboť pan Cardinal si povzdychl a řekl ...	66
54	... and in order to accomplish matters as quickly as possible I was actually obliged to write a note and ...	92	Chtěl jsem záležitost vyřídit co nejdříve, a byl jsem proto doslova nucen napsat jí vzkaz ...	69
55	Excuse me, sir. I must attend to him straight away.	94	Omluvte mě, pane. Musím se mu věnovat.	71
56	I had a word or two more to say on the topic of ...	94	Vlastně jsem vám chtěl říct ještě několik slov o těch ...	71
57	But I am afraid this will have to wait for another occasion.	94	Ale obávám se, že to budeme muset odložit na jindy.	
58	However, you must now please excuse me.	94	Ale teď mě musíte omluvit.	71
59	...so that his lordship soon found himself having to listen to some more of ...	95	... a tak se jeho lordstvo rázem ocitlo v situaci, kdy muselo vyslechnout ...	72
60	I was obliged in the course of that first morning to go constantly in and out of the room..	96	Onoho dopoledne jsem byl nucen neustále přicházet a odcházet ...	72
61	... but I was obliged to leave the room for an extended period...	96	... ale já jsem zrovna, již si nevzpomínám proč, musel na delší dobu odejít ...	73
62	I did not linger long enough – as I was obliged to explain to his lordship shortly afterwards – to hear anything ...	100	... jsem tam nepostával dlouho – jak jsem musel krátce poté jeho lordstvu vysvětlit -, a tak jsem neslyšel ...	75
63	He said I had to, sir.	101	Řekl, že ho mám vzbudit ...	76
64	I must have looked a little confused, for ...	108	Vypadal jsem asi trochu zmateně, protože ...	81
65	You had better come and see him.	108	Měl byste za ním zajít.	81
66	Of course. But you must come at once.	108	Jistě. Ale musíte jít teď.	81
67	Nevertheless, I must now return downstairs. (duty)	108	Ale nedá se nic dělat, musím se teď vrátit dolů.	82
68	I really should come back here in the spring.	109	...měl bych sem vážně přijet na jaře.	82
69	Darlington Hall must be rather lovely then.	109	To musí být na Darlingtonském panství krásně.	82
70	Must be a really posh place, it rings a bell even to an idiot like yours truly.	126	To musí být hodně nóbl místo, když to říká něco i starému bláznovi, jako jsem já.	93
71	You really must be top-notch working in a place like that.	126	To musíte být vážně něco extra, když děláte v takovém místě.	93
72	I told the man that I would have to be on my way...	126	Řekl jsem mu, že už musím jet ...	93
73	At this point I can see a dozen or so such figures and I have had to forgo the small game ...	128	Těch postavíček jsem napočítal asi tucet, a tak jsem se musel vzdát zábavy ...	94
74	Presumably you must have worked for him.	130	Vy jste u něho snad pracoval.	95

76	But when one has so much else to think about ...	132	Člověk ale musí myslet na spoustu jiných věcí ..	97
77	... there are many people these days who have a lot of foolish things to say about lord D. ...	132	... dnes řada lidí říká o lordu D. různé hlouposti ...	97
78	It is rather irksome to have to hear people talking today as though ...	144	Dost mi ale vadí, když dnes poslouchám lidi, kteří se tváří ...	104
79	It is, as I say, irksome to have to hear the way these same people now talk of those times ...	145	Jak říkám, protiví se mi poslouchat, jak titíž lidé o oné době hovoří dnes ...	104
80	In fact, one has to accept the distinct possibility that one may have previously ...	149	Vlastně je třeba připustit i možnost , že jsem snad původně ...	108
81	... that those entirely untypical incidents took place which must have provided what flimsy basis exists for these absurd allegations.	154	Proto v té době došlo ke zcela netypickým incidentům, které podle všeho poskytly chatrnou záminku onoho absurdního obvinění.	110
82	Of course, you will have to let them go.	155	Samozřejmě je budete muset propustit.	110
83	However, we must not allow sentiment to crawl into our judgement.	157	Nesmíme však podléhat citům.	111
84	Now really, I must bid you good night	157	A teď už vám vážně musím popřát dobrou noc ...	111
85	You are saying Ruth and Sarah are to be dismissed on the grounds that they are Jewish?	157	Chcete říct, že máme propustit Ruth a Sáru proto, že jsou židovky?	111
87	And the girl is bound to be let down.	166	Určitě se zklame.	119
88	If ... it is surely obvious that the butler's pantry must be one place in the house where	174	Pokud ... je jistě samozřejmé, že pracovna majordoma musí být tím místem v domě, kde ...	124
89	A Hitler of any duality must be seen to inhabit his role ...	178	Pravý majordom musí navenek plně a bezrezbytku zaujímat svoji roli ...	127
91	Furthermore, I was obliged to recognize certain other little signs which tended to support this theory.	180	Navíc jsem chtěl nechtěl musel vidět jisté drobné náznaky , které tuto teorii spíše potvrdily.	129
92	It occurs to me you must be a well-contented man.	182	Myslím, že musíte být velmi spokojený člověk.	130
94	No doubt, it has to do with the late hour.	189	Jistě to souvisí pokročilou hodinou ...	135
95	... and the trying nature I of the events I have had to endure this evening.	189	... a s tíhou událostí, jež jsem dnes večer musel snášet.	135
96	One would have thought that having to abandon the Ford on some lonely hill ...	189	Člověk by si pomyslel, že když nechá auto někde na samotě na kopci ...	136
97	... having to walk down to this village ...	190	... a musí skoro potmě sejít do vesnice ...	136
98	These last few hours, let me say it, have proved unreasonably hard ones.	189	Musím přiznat, že předchozích několik hodin mi dalo docela zabrat.	136
99	It must be quite something, sir, to be discussing matters with his like.	197	To musí být úžasné, pane, moci s takovým člověkem diskutovat.	142
100	Of course, sir, you must be very tired.	200	Máte pravdu, pane, jste jistě dost unavený.	143
102	But I am sure this is the doctor now, sir.	200	Ale to je určitě doktor, pane.	144
103	... and he's having to endure Harry's speeches as a result.	200	... a teď musí snášet Harryho řečnění.-	144
104	... tall enough, in fact, that he was obliged to stoop to enter the doorway ...	200	... dokonce tak velký, že se musel ve dveřích sehnout.	144
105	Such a pity you have to retire already	202	Škoda, že už chcete jít ...	145
107	A pity, but we must let the gentleman go to bed.	202	Škoda, ale nemůžu hosta zdržovat.	145
108	Of course, one has to allow that Mr Harry Smith was employing the word	204	Samozřejmě připouštím, že pan H. S. užil slova důstojnost ve zcela jiném	146

	<i>dignity</i> in a quite different sense ...		smyslu ...	
109	... those who wish to make our mark must realize that we best do so by concentrating on what is within our realm...	209	... kteří chceme zanechat trvalou stopu, si musíme uvědomit, že nejlépe uděláme, když se soustředíme na věci ...	151
110	That this should happen is not in the least surprising.	210	Ani v nejmenším mě nepřekvapuje, že to došlo tak daleko.	151
111	If ... there must surely come a time when he must to say to himself...	210	Má-li ..., musí nutně dospět k momentu, kdy přestane posuzovat, k momentu, kdy si řekne ...	152
112	It must do one good to be mistaken for a lord every now and then.	218	To člověka potěší, když ho čas od času považují za lorda.	155
116	... though I was obliged to follow the back of his Rover along the twisting hill road for a further mile or so ...	221	... přestože jsem by nucen jet ještě notný kus po klikaté silnici za jeho Roverem...	158
117	... examining objects he must long ago have become familiar with.	224	... a prohlíží se předměty, které nepochybně velmi dobře znal.	160
118	Mr Stevens, I have something to tell you.	224	Pane Stevensi, musím vám něco říci.	161
119	It must have been twenty minutes that I encountered Miss Kenton again.	226	Asi po dvaceti minutách jsem slečnu Kentonovou potkal znovu.	161
120	Afraid, I can't tell you my boy. Strictly confidential.	227	Bohužel ti nemohu nic říci chlapče. Přísně tajné.	162
121	I suppose this means I shouldn't sit on it.	227	To asi znamená, že bych vás neměl rušit.	162
123	I was obliged to walk repeatedly past the smoking room doors.	227	...byl jsem nucen neustále přecházet kolem dveří kuřárny.	162
124	I do not mean to be rude but I really must return upstairs.	229	Nechci být nezdvořilý, ale musím se opravdu vrátit nahoru.	163
125	Then may I offer you my congratulations.	229	Pak vám tedy musím blahopřát.	164
126	She had not moved , and consequently she was obliged to raise her voice slightly in addressing me, so that it resonated rather oddly ...	229	Nepohnula se a když na mě mluvila, musela proto o něco zvýšit hlas ...	164
127	... there are matters of global significance taking place upstairs and I must return to my post.	230	...že nahoře se dějí věci světového významu, a já se tam musím okamžitě vrátit.	164
129	I hardly need to tell you, do I, what I feel towards his lordship.	232	Nemusím Vám říkat, co pro mě ...	166
130	And you must have seen it, Stevens.	234	Musel jste to vidět, Stevensi.	167
131	Well, I have to say, that American chap was quite right.	234	No, musím říct, že ten Američan měl úplnou pravdu.	168
132	I am sorry but I have to say that I have every trust in his good judgement.	236	Lituji, ale musím říci, že úsudku jeho lordstva bezmezně důvěřuji.	169
133	Mr Stevens you mustn't take anything I said earlier to heart.	237	Pane Stevensi, nesmíte si to, co jsem předtím řekla brát k srdci.	169
134	... I decided to stay a second night ... And I must say it has been something of a relief ...	243	... A musím říci ...	172
135	On establishing that she would have to walk in the rain to the bus stop, I insisted on running her there in the Ford ...	248	Když jsem si uvědomil, že bude muset jít na zastávku v dešti, trval jsem	175
136	You must excuse me, but I ...	248	No... nezlobte se , ale ...	176
137	We must each of us be grateful for what we do have.	252	Všichni musíme být vděční za to, co máme.	178
138	You really mustn't let any more foolish ideas come between yourself and the	252	Opravdu nesmíte dopustit, aby vám ...	178

	happiness ...			
139	Now, you must take good care of yourself.	252	A teď, buďte na sebe opatrná.	179
140	Yes, I am sure it does.	253	No, to máte jistě pravdu.	180
142	You must have been very attached to this Lord whatever.	255	Asi jste měl toho vašeho lorda hodně rád.	181
143	Don't keep looking back all the time, you are bound to get depressed.	256	Nehrabte se pořád v minulosti, nebo vás to zničí.	182
144	We've all got to put our feet up at some point.	256	Všichni to musíme někdy zabalit.	182
145	You've got to enjoy yourself.	256	Musíte mít radost ze života.	182

APPENDIX 4 – RO

Rowling, J. (2007) *Harry Potter and the Deathly Hollows*, Bloomsburry Publishing Plc.

Rowling, J. *Harry* (2008) *Harry Potter a relikvie smrti*, Praha: Albatros. Translated by

Pavel Medek.

1	My source told me that there are plans to lay a false trail; this must be it.	11	Můj zdroj mi prozradil, že mají v plánu vypustit nějakou falešnou zprávu, a to je nepochybně ona.	11
2	No doubt a Confundus Charm has been placed by Dawlish.	11	Davlish je určitě pod vlivem matoucího kouzla.	11
3	If we cannot ... then it must be done while he travels.	13	...musíme se ho zmocnit cestou.	13
4	Scrimgeour must be surrounded by our people before I act.	12	...musí být brousek našimi lidmi obklíčen	13
5	All the better, he will have to move in the open.	13	...bude muset cestovat normálně ...	13
6	I must be the one to kill Harry Potter and I shall be.	13	Musím to být já, kdo zabije Pottera, a tak se také stane.	14
7	You must be so proud.	17	Určitě jste na ni nesmírně pyšní.	16
8	You must prune yours, must you not to keep it healthy.	17	Musíš svou rodinu pročistit, abys zajistila její další zdravý vývoj, nemám pravdu?	17
9	Wizards, she says, must accept these thieves of their knowledge and magic.	18	Podle jejího mínění je třeba, aby čarodějové takové lupiče svých znalostí a kouzel přijali mezi sebe.	18
10	...she would have us all mate with Muggles ...or no doubt, werevolves...	18	...takže podle toho, co napsala, bychom se všichni měli pářit s mudly ...nebo nepochybně i s vlkodlaky ...	18
11	...but he had to admit to himself that ...	19	Na druhou stranu si ale musel přiznat ...	19
12	In fairness to A. it must be admitted that living in his shadow cannot have been a comfortable experience	22	Je ovšem třeba přiznat, že život v Albusově stínu pro něj určitě nebyl ničím radostným ...	23
13	...you will have to wait for chapters nine to twelve ...	28	...na všechny podrobnosti si budete muset počkat 29	29
14	I am afraid those who go dewy-eyed over Dumbledores spectacular victory must brace themselves for a bombshell..	28	...lidé, jimž se při vzpomínce na Brumbálovo okázalé vítězství zamlží oči dojetím by se měli připravit na bombu ...	29
15	Again, your readers will have to buy my book ...	28	Vaši čtenáři si opět budou muset koupit moji knihu ...	29
16	After they have read my book, people may be forced to conclude that Grindelwald simply ...	28	Až lidé přečtou moji knihu, dospějí pravděpodobně k přesvědčení, že G. ...	29
17	Very dirty business indeed.	28	To byla skutečně špinavá záležitost.	29
18	He had imagined it, he must have done.	30	Určitě se mu to jen zdálo, nic jiného nebylo možné.	31
19	Harry had to admit, however	33	Harry ovšem musel uznat ...	35
20	You have got to go into hiding...	33	Musíte se někde schovat ...	35
21	Perhaps we should wait outside in the hall ...	37	Možná bychom raději měli počkat v předsíni ...	39
22	We really must be off.	40	Vážně už musíme jít...	41
23	... who had to repress an urge to threaten him with magic ...	40	...který měl co dělat, aby bratránkovi nepohrozil nějakým kouzlem ...	41
24	As Dedalus probably told you we had to abandon plan A.	44	...od plánu A jsme museli upustit ...	45

25	...he is bound to have a couple of Deathaters patrolling the skies ...	46	Nepochybně tu pro všechny případy nechává pár smrtijedů ...	47
26	If it has to come to force, then it will ...	47	Pokud to budeme muset udělat násilím, uděláme to ...	49
27	It is certainly only to be used in emergencies...	51	... a rozhodně by se to mělo používat jen nejnaléhavějších situacích ...	52
28	We have got to go back ...	52	Musíme se vrátit, Hagride ...	53
29	...and Harry had to sink low into the sidecar ...	52	...a Hary se musel ve vozíku přikrčit co nejniž ...	54
30	...he had to duck below the rim of the car ...	54	A přinutila ho schovat se pod okraj vozíku tak prudce ...	54
31	They should not be able to get within a hundred yards.	59	Neměli by se z žádné strany dostat k domu blíže než na sto metrů ...	61
32	We have got to bet to the Burrow to find out ...	60	Musíme se dostat do Doupěte a zjistit, co se stalo ...	62
33	The Portkey is through here	60	K přenásedlu musíme tudy ...	61
34	It is supposed to leave in three minutes ..	60	Mělo by odletět za tři minuty...	61
35	They were supposed to be second ...	62	Byli druzí na řadě ...	62
36	George and Lupin ought to be back within a minute ...	62	Geore s Lupinem by se měli vrátit asi za minutu ...	62
37	...how they must have summoned Valdermotd	63	...a jak museli přivolat Voldemorta ..	64
38	I am sorry but I had to check ...	63	Promiň, ale musel jsem se přesvědčit ...	64
39	He must be Imperiused.	63	Určitě je pod kletbou Imperius.	64
40	So you think I should have killed Stan	64	Vy si tedy myslíte, že jsem, měl Stana zabít ...	64
41	He is supposed to be inside, too ..	65	...a přitom by také měl být v Azkabanu ...	65
42	I am going to have to get back to downing street. I should have been there an hour ago.	69	Budu se muset vrátit do Downing Street, měl jsem tam být už před hodinou .	69
43	Somebody must have been careless . Somebody let slip the date to the outsider.	71	Někdo musel být neopatrný. Někdo musel to datum prozradit někomu jinému ...	71
44	We have got to trust each other.	71	Musíme si navzájem věřit.	71
45	I have got to go, too.	73	Také musím jít.	73
46	But why should he?	73	Proč by to ale měl zjistit?	73
47	You have got to stay, mate.	74	Jo, musíš tady zůstat, kamaráde.	74
48	But it was supposed to have stopped.	74	Vždyť už to přece mělo přestat.	76
49	You must not let that connection open up again.	75	Nesmíš připustit, aby se spojení mezi vámi obnovilo	76
50	...and that he ought to set out on his mission ...	76	...a že by se měl co nejrychleji vydat za svým posláním ...	78
51	We have got to stay for the wedding.	76	Musíme tady počkat na svatbu.	78
53	Dumbledore left me ...stuff to do ...Ron and H know about it ..	77	Brumbál mi nechal ...nějakou práci, kterou musím dokončit ...R a H vědí o co jde	79
54	I do not see that you have to go either ...	77	Podle mého názoru nemusíš nic dělat ani ty ...	79
55	Harry, you must have misunderstood him.	77	Určitě jsi mu špatně rozuměl, Harry.	80
56	It has got to be me.	78	Musím to udělat já.	80
57	He handed there back the sock he was supposed to be identifying..	78	...kterou měl údajně identifikovat ...	80
58	I should have realized.	78	No vidíš, samozřejmě ...	80
59	I must not tell lies.	80	Nemám vykládat lži.	82
60	We must decide how you will be disguised...	80	Musíme rozhodnout za co se přestrojíš ...	82
61	Why does my room have to be cleaned	81	Proč se má v mém pokoji uklízet...	83

	out.			
62	Will we need to translate runes?	83	...budeme muset překládat runy?	85
63	Are you sure you have thought it through?	84	A určitě jste si to důkladně promysleli?	85
64	...everyone is going to thing that Hermione and I must be with you, right?	86	...všichni si budou myslet, že jsme já i Hermiona určitě s tebou...	88
65	I do not know why D have got to come two days before the wedding.	86	Nechápu proč musí D přijet už dva dny před svatbou ...	89
66	F. sister is a bridesmaid, she needs to be here for the rehearsal ...	87	Fleuřina sestra jde za družičku, takže tady musí být na zkoušky ..	89
67	What we really need to decide is where we are going ...	87	První věc, kterou doopravdy musíme rozhodnout je ..	89
68	...should not we make H. our priority ?	87	Neměli bychom se v první řadě zaměřit na viteály?	89
69	...now that he was facing the challenge of repeating the feat , Harry was drawn to the pace ...	87	Teď, když musel počítat s tím, že si ten zážitek zopakuje ...	89
70	...but we are still going to have to try ..	88	...ale stejně se budeme muset pokusit ten pravý najít ...	90
71	If ...I am sure, he would have made it much harder ..	88	Kdyby doopravdy nechtěl, určitě by je byl zabezpečil ...	90
72	Why did he have to ask S how to make H?	89	Proč by se ale musel vyptávat Křiklana, jak Viteál vytvořit?	90
73	You have got to really feel what you have done.	89	Musíte na vlastní kůži zakusit všechno, čeho jste se dopustili.	90
75	That is a problem that we are going to have to solve ...	90	Je to problém, který budeme muset vyřešit ...	91
76	...he was thinking of all the things he should have asked ..	91	Proč jsem se ho jen nezeptal?	92
77	I am sure you all need your rest ..	91	Nepochybuji, že si všichni potřebujete ...	94
78	I must say it does complicate organising the wedding ..	94	Musím říct, že všechna ta bezpečnostní kouzla kolem...	97
79	Explains everything you need to know about witches.	97	Vysvětluje se v ní úplně všechno, co potřebuješ vědět o holkách ...	101
80	He had to leave early for work ...	97	Musel brzy po ránu do práce ...	101
81	...but you must tell it clearly what you want ...	98	...musíš jí ale přesně říct co od ní chceš ...	101
83	I think we had better start without Author ...	102	Myslím, že bychom měli začít bez Artura ...	106
84	He must have been held up at ...	102	Něco ho muselo zdržet v ...	106
85	Scrimgeour must have learned that the three of them were planning ...	104	Brousek se musel nějak dozvědět, že mají všichni tři v úmyslu ...	107
86	That law was created to ...and the ministry is supposed to have powerful evidence that the possessions are illegal before seizing them	105	... a ministerstvo podle něj musí předložit přesvědčivé důkazy ...	108
87	They cannot keep the objects longer than that unless they can prove they are dangerous.	105	Nesmějí si věci z pozůstalosti ponechávat déle, neprokáží-li ...	108
88	Dumbledore must have taught thousands of students ...	106	Brumbál musel za ta léta učit tisícovky studentů ...	110
89	He must have thought I would enjoy it.	107	Nejspíš si myslel, že se mi bude líbit.	111
90	There must be a secret message from Dumbledore in the icing.	108	V polevě je nepochybně schované nějaké tajné poselství...	112
91	...and knew he had no option but obey...	108	...věděl, že musí poslechnout ...	112
92	We ought to be working together ...	108	Měli bychom spolupracovat.	113
93	...sitting in an examination with a	113	...na kterou by za normálních okolností	118

	question he ought to have been able to answer ...		měl být schopen odpovědět ...	
94	Ought he to know what it All meant?	113	Měl by snad vědět, co to všechno znamená?	118
95	All the kid stories are supposed to be by Breedle..	114	Breedle je přece údajný autor všech dětských pohádek ...	118
96	You must have heard of Babitty Rabitty ...	114	Přece musíte znát králíčka Šmudlíčka ...?	118
97	But I wonder why Dumbledore thought you should read them...	114	...proč si myslel, že bych si je měla přečíst ...	118
98	We should go to bed.	114	Stejně bychom už měli jít spát ...	115
99	Are you sure you do not want to anything on that bite?	118	A určitě nechceš, abych ti na to kousnutí něco dal?	122
100	...but he believes you ought to wear sun colours to a WEDDING .	118	...je přesvědčený, že na svatbě by se měly nosit barvy slunce ...	122
101	...and I ought not to be on my feet too long ...	118	Je mi sto sedm let a neměla BYCH TU TAK DLOUHO POSTÁVAT	122
102	But I must say the dress is far too low cut...	121	Musím ale říct, že ta šaty ...	126
103	We should go and congratulate them.	122	Měli bychom jim jít poblahopřát.	127
105	.. it was surely because of Harry's wand had done.	125	...důvodem bylo nepochybně to, co udělala Harryho hůlka onoho večera ..	130
106	I must remember to set an order at Flourish ..	128	...nesmím si ho zapomenout v Krucánkách objednat...	133
107	...where they always must be second class...	130	...kde by až do smrti hráli druhé housle ...	135
108	I think we ought to keep moving.	136	Myslím , že bychom raději měli být v neustálém pohybu ...	142
109	I should have recognize him	138	Měl jsem ho poznat ...	144
111	That must have been the Tongue Tying Curse ...	142	To musela být jazykolomná kletba.	148
112	Before we go any further I think we had better check.	143	Než půjdeme dál myslím, že bychom to tu měli prověřit.	148
113	...he had to succumb.	145	Nemohl už s bolestí dále bojovat. Musel se jí podvolit.	151
114	You have got to close your mind.	145	V tom případě ale musíš svoji mysl uzavřít.	151
115	The room was spacious and must, once, have been handsome.	147	Ložnice byla prostorná ... a bývala zjevně i pohodlná a útulná ..	155
116	...and also (Harry had to admire Sirius nerve) several posters of bikini-clad Muggle girls ...	148	(Harry se musel obdivovat Siriusově odvěze)	155
117	James says he is going to be a great Quidditch player, but we have had to pack away all the ornaments ...	149	..museli jsme ale dát pryč veškerou výzdobu ...	157
118	...and a pair of legs that must have belonged to James were chasing after him...	151	...když je pronásledoval pár nohou, který musel patřit jeho otci ...	158
119	After another quarter of an hour he was forced to conclude that the rest of the letter was gone.	151	Po další čtvrt hodině byl ovšem nucen připustit ...	159
120	... so as not to have to look at her and give himself away.	152	...aby se jí nemusel podívat do očí a neprozradit se...	160
121	It just makes me feel more than ever that we ought to avoid the place where your parents are buried.	153	...že bychom se měli místu ... zdaleka vyhýbat..	161

122	Why was everybody so determined that he should not get it ...	153	Jenže on chtěl pravdu. Proč všichni usilují o to, aby se jí nedobral.	161
123	They combed every inch of the room but were forced to conclude that the locket was not there.	156	...nakonec však museli přiznat, že v ní medailonek není...	162
124	Remember all those awful things we had to get rid of when we were here last time.	156	Vzpomínáte si, jaké odporné spousty haraburdí jsme se museli zbavit ..	165
125	...and he was going to cling to it until forced to let go ...	157	...dokud ho něco nepřinutí aby se jí vzdal ...	165
126	I order you to answer it truthfully...	158	...a nařizuji ti abys na ni pravdivě odpověděl ...	165
127	order		Přikazuji, nařizuji,	
128	Creature must be sure to do whatever the Dark Lord ordered him to do ...	159	...že musí udělat všechno, co mu Pán zla nařídí ...	167
129	What did Regulus have to do with it? ...and everything Regulus had to do with it	159	Co s ním měl Regulus společného ... co s ním měl společného Regulus?	166
130	...how sick it is., the way they have got to obey ...	162	...jak je to ponižující, když musí takhle poslouchat ...	170
131	Harry had to concentrate hard to understand him.	162	A Harry se musel plně soustředit, aby mu rozuměl.	170
132	He is loyal to people who are kind to him, and Mrs Black must have been and Regulus certainly was.	163	Je věrný lidem, kteří se k němu chovají laskavě, jako se k němu zřejmě chovala paní Blacková a nepochybně i Regulus.	171
133	...maybe I am supposed to use it.	167	...takže se ode mne třeba čeká, že ho budu používat.	175
134	...but I had to check, did not I.	168	Přesvědčit jsem se ale musel, ne?	176
135	I quite agree that you had to check.	168	.. že ses přesvědčit musel.	176
136	You should not be quite so quick to lower your defences.	168	Vy dva byste příště v ostražitosti neměli polevovat tak rychle.	176
137	I had to apperate very precisely on the top step...	168	...takže jsem se musel přemístit absolutně přesně	177
138	...but I needed to shake off the Death Eater tailing me.	169	...ale musel jsem nejdřív setřást toho Smrtijeda ...	177
139	Apart from anything else they would know for sure he is here.	169	...věděli by jistě, že je tady ...	177
140	What you have got to realize is that Deathaters now have ..	170	Musíš si uvědomit, Harry ...	179
141	But surely people realize what is going on?	171	Lidé si ale přece musejí uvědomovat, co se děje?	179
142	...but why should he sit behind the desk at the Ministry	171	...proč by ale měl vysedávat na ministerstvu za stolem	179
143	...and many are whispering that Vald. must be behind it	171	Mnozí si šeptají, že za tím určitě stojí Vald.	180
144	That is certainly part of it	172	To je nepochybně součástí jejich strategie.	180
145	Now that Dumb. Is dead you were sure to be the symbol ...	172	Teď když je B mrtvý jsi se musel stát symbolem	180
146	...you are now deemed to have obtained your magical powers illegally and must suffer the punishment	173	...a musíš být příslušně potrestán	181
147	And it is another way of ..., because students must be given Blood Status	173	...protože každý student si musí nechat vystavit tak zvané potvrzení o krevní čistotě	182
148	I should have never married her	175	Vůbec jsem si ji neměl brát.	184
149	...much better off without a father of	176	...za kterého by se muselo do smrti	185

	whom it must always be ashamed...		stydět	
150	No we must not fight.	177	Ne nesmíme se hádat	185
151	I know I should not have called him a coward.	177	Vím, že jsem mu neměl říkat, že je zbabělec..	186
152	He is wandering whether he should have asked more money for it.	182	...jen chce vědět jestli si za něj neměl říct víc	191
153	That would not have been difficult. Bleeding gave it away. No choice	182	...musel jsem ho totiž dát úplně zadarmo...	191
154	... they had not given a moment thought to what they would do if they were forced to separate ...	204	... co by měli dělat, kdyby je okolnosti donutily se rozdělit ...	214
155	Her office must be up here, Harry thought...	204	Určitě má kancelář tady nahoře ...	214
156	The priority now had to be to leave the Ministry before they were exposed ...	209	Nejdůležitější teď bylo zmizet z ministerstva, dřív než budou odhaleni ...	220
166	The first thing to do was to find Ron...	209	Ze všeho nejdřív musel najít Rona ...	221
167	She had to go down to the courtrooms with Umbridge, she could not refuse ...	209	Musela jít s Umbridgovou dolů do soudní síně ...	221
168	And if he survives the Azkaban you will have to answer to him ...	210	...budete se muset zodpovídat nejen jemu, ale i jeho manželce ...	121
169	... but he forced himself to think about R and H who needed him...	212	...přinutil se myslet na Rona a Hermionu, kteří ho potřebují	222
170	I do not know where he is, he was supposed to meet me here ...	213	...měl se tady se mnou sejít ...	224
171	There ... that should fool her ..	216	To je ono ... to by ji mělo zmást ..	227
172	It has been decided that you all should go home and go into hiding ..	217	Bylo rozhodnuto, že se všichni máte vrátit domů ...	228
173	...I am not your husband, you have got to go home...	919	... musíte honem domů ...	231
174	And what is that supposed to mean?	235	A co chceš říct tím...	246
175	Maybe we ought not to wear it.	236	Myslím, že bychom ho neměli nosit na těle.	247
176	Lets go to Albania. Should not take more than an afternoon to search the country.	237	Na to, abychom prohledali celou zemi by nám mělo stačit jedno odpoledne.	248
177	No, because you are supposed to be the best at magic.	241	Ne, protože z nás tří umíš údajně nejlíp kouzlit.	252
178	They should not be able to hear or see us.	241	...neměli by nás vidět ani slyšet ...	253
179	The enchantments they had cast around themselves ought to be sufficient ...	242	...doufali, že kouzelné ochrany budou dostačující ..	253
180	There ought to be a few salmon in here..	242	Tady by snad mohlo být pár lososů ...	253
181	...knew I would have to leave in the end ...	243	Bylo mi jasné, že dřív nebo později budu muset utéct ...	254
182	I have got to say, Dirk...	243	Musím říct, Dirku...	255
183	Good man – goblin, I should say.	244	Výborně člověče, totiž chci říct, skřete ...	256
184	...any wizard who is against W ought to make helping H. Potter their no 1 priority ..	246	...by měli za svoji prvořadou povinnost považovat pomoc Harry Potrovi ..	258
185	...it was to discuss whether they ought to sleep on the bank or ...	247	...zda by měli přespat na břehu nebo ...	258
186	...and he must have realized they would not have you have it ...	250	.. a určitě si uvědomoval, že ti ho nedají ...	263
187	You have obviously got a problem..	251	No, ta očividně nějaký problém máš ..	263
188	...because there is some damn thing we have got to find.	251	..další zatracený krám, který musíme najít ..	263
189	...plenty of people must have seen that	253	...spousta lidí si už musela všimnout, že	265

	George has lost an ear ..		George přišel o ucho ...	
190	... and you are supposed to be on your death bed	253	....a o tobě se rozkřiklo, že ležíš na smrtelné posteli ...	265
191	I am sure that is all he meant...	253	Určitě neměl na mysli nic jiného ..	265
192	He could see it. The Fidelius Charm must have died with James and Lily.	271	Harry to viděl jasně – Fideliovo zaklínadlo zřejmě přestalo fungovat ve chvíli, kdy J a L zemřeli	285
193	He and Herm. stood at the gate gazing up at the wreck which once must have been ...	271	...který kdysi musel být právě tak hezký jako sousední stavení ..	285
194	They should not have written on the sign.	272	Nemají na tu desku co čmárat.	285
195	...she was standing there staring at a house which ought to have been completely invisible to her ...	273	...a zírala na dům, který pro ni musel být absolutně neviditelný	286
196	I think we could overpower her if we had to.	274	...myslím, že bychom si sní poradili, kdyby bylo třeba,,	287
197	...he was nothing, nothing but pain and terror and he must get away ...	282	Nezbylo z něj nic než bolest a děs a potřeboval se někde ukrýt ...	295
198	I had to use a Hover Charm to get you into your bunk ...	282	Musela jsem použít vznášecí kouzlo ...	295
199	I had to use a Severing Charm ...	283	Musela jsem použít oddělovací kouzlo ...	295
200	I think we should keep it off for a while ..	283	Myslím, že bychom ho nějakou chvíli neměli nosit	295
201	We should not have gone to Gordic Hollow	283	Neměli jsme do Gordikova dolu chodit.	295
202	Bathilda must have been dead a while.	283	Batylda je už nejspíš pěkně dlouho mrtvá.	297
203	It was not surprised to kill me, just keep me there ...	284	Neměl mě zabít, měl mě tam jen udržet ...	297
204	Harry no, I am sure you ought to rest.	284	Ne Harry, určitě si potřebuješ odpočinout.	298
205	You are the one who needs sleep.	284	Naopak, ty se musíš vyspat..	298
206	...I cast a blasting curse and it must have hit ...	285	..použila jsem výbušnou kletbu a nejspíš trefila ...	298
207	..he had to get a new one	285	Musel si opatřit novou ..	289
208	How he was supposed to get a new one.	285	Jak si má teď sehnat novou?	289
209	...to watch the sun rise over the sparkling snowy hillside ought to have been the greatest treasure on earth ...	286	...považoval za největší poklad na světě ...	300
210	... and for a moment he had to fight the temptation to pull it out and throw it away	287	A chvíli se musel bránit pokušení vytáhnout ji a zahodit ..	300
211	Out of sheer desperation they convinced themselves that they were supposed to go back ..	287	...sami sebe přesvědčili, že se tam musejí vrátit...	301
212	An idea would have struck him and he would have to let Gellert know immediately.	291	Něco ho prostě napadlo a musel se okamžitě se svým nápadem světit.	307
222	We must stress this point, it will be the foundation stone	291	Tuto skutečnost musíme zdůrazňovat	306
223	Where we are opposed as we surely will be, this must be the basis of all our arguments.	291	Musí být právě toto základem všech našich...	306
224	..we must use only the force that is necessary.	291	Musíme použít jen absolutně nezbytnou sílu	306
225	...that he must have suffered a change of heart, that he came to his senses.	292	...že zjevně přišel k rozumu a dospěl k jinému přesvědčení ..	307

226	...but perhaps we ought to dissaperate under Invisibility cloak ..	296	Nebylo by ale lepší, kdybychom se pro všechny případy přemístili ...	312
227	Harry knew that it must be full of living creatures ...	297	Harry nepochyboval o tom, že les plný živých tvorů ..	312
228	They enchantments had worked for weeks, why should they break now?	297	...tak proč by měla právě teď selhat..	313
229	He put off the moment of ...until he told himself that it must be done ..	301	...až si řekl, že nezbývá nic jiného, než to udělat ...	317
230	...he had to be real: he had just dived into the pool ...	302	...ale věděl, že musí být skutečně tady ...	318
231	...I was just thinking I would have to kip under a tree and wait for morning ...	303	.. že si budu muset zalézt někam pod strom...	318
232	Whoever cast the Patronus must have put it there	304	Musel ho tam dát ten, kdo vypustil patrona	319
233	No, you should do it.	304	Ne, měl bys to udělat ty.	319
234	I think it is supposed to be you.304	304	Myslím, že se to čeká od tebe..	319
235	I know it is supposed to be you who uses it.	305	..vím, že to musíš udělat ty	321
236	All we have got to do is find the tent again	308	..už nám jen zbývá najít stan...	325
237	I had to talk fast to get out of being dragged to the Ministry.	311	Dalo mi dost dřinu, než jsem jim domluvil, aby mě neodvlekli na ministerstvo..	326
238	You must have been simply terrified.	311	To musela být opravdu hrůza.	326
239	She had to look at Ron to see what he was showing them.	312	Musela se na Rona podívat..	328
240	Sorry, said Harry sure that he not heard correctly..	313	...zeptal se Harry v přesvědčení, že špatně slyšel...	328
241	I knew what I was supposed to do...	313	Věděl jste, co musím udělat	329

APPENDIX 5 – HR

Hrabal, B. (1989) *Tři novely – Obsluhoval jsem anglického krále*, Praha:

Československý spisovatel.

Hrabal, B (1990) *I Served The King of England*, Picador. Translated by Paul Wilson.

1	A pamatuj si ale taky, že všechno musíš vidět a všechno slyšet..	133	You've got to see everything and hear everything. But remember, too	1
2	... už začal pracovat na place, ach, ten se něco naprosil, aby mohl roznášet dál párky!	133	...he had started waiting on tables, and you should have heard him beg and plead to be allowed to go on selling frankfurters	2
3	... shora se některý vyklonili tak, že je někdo musel v kupé držet za nohy, ..	134	And sometimes he would be leaning out so far that someone inside would have to hang on to his legs	2
4	a už ve dvanáct jsem musel být v posteli	134	and I had to be in bed by twelve	3
5	Každý den jsem musel čistit sklenice štangastů	134	And every day I had to polish their glasses	3
6	musela každá sklenice jít k rukám toho, komu patřila	134	the proper glass had to go into the proper hand	3
7	a bylo všechno v pořádku, to křičeli jen proto, aby jim líp chutnalo pivo	135	...everything was all right, and you could see they'd only been yelling at one another like that to make the beer taste better.	4
8	... a křičeli jen proto, aby se něco dělo, aby nějak zabili ten večerní čas	135	...and only shouted like that to make the evening eventful, to help kill the time	4
9	...musela to být hrozně zajímavá knížka, protože když se pan ředitel zvedl, aby šel o tři stoly dál, tak pořád četl tu knížku..	136	...which must have been pretty good because he kept his nose buried in it when he got up to move three tables over	5
10	... a už asi na chodbě vytáhli nože	136	... and I suppose they must have pulled their knives out in the hallway	6
11	... a to okénko bylo tak vysoko, že jsem se musel za prsty zvednout ...	137	There was a wicket in the hallway so high I had to pull myself up by my fingers	8
12	... ale ten penzista asi špatně viděl, a tak dlaní ťapal v prachu	141	But the pensioner must have had poor eyesight because he was groping around---	12
13	... a já jsem se rozesmál a hned jsem věděl, co s lidma hejbá	141	... and U had to laugh because I saw at once what moved people	12
14	... když nebylo co děla a já jsem musel dělat, jako že něco dělám	141	.. when there was nothing to do and I had to pretend to be busy	13
15	... že jsem byl maličký a tak jsem musel nosit vysoký kaučukový límec	142	... because I was small and had to wear a high, stiff collar	13
16	... slečna musela pít se mnou originál	143	.... and the girl had to be served champagne from the same bottle	15
17	... že by bylo, a to se musí zařídít, aby nad kanapem na stropě viselo zrcadlo		But best of all, and she must arrange it would be to hang a mirror from the ceiling ...	15
18	... a zjistil jsem, že ani jedna by si nenechala ovinout břicho ani kopretinami ani pivoňkami ...	144	... and I realized that neither of them would let her lap be wrapped in daisies and peonies ..	16
19	A tak jsem se dostal až na poslední květiny ze zahrad a lučin a zesmutněl jsem, co budu dělat v zimě?	145	... until finally I ran out of garden flowers, field flowers. And this made me feel sad, because what would I do in winter?	17

20	... anebo se vůbec odstěhuju do Prahy, tam je místo v restauracích taky , a tam celou zimu budu mít květin ...	145	Or maybe I'd just move to Prague, for there must be restaurant jobs there, too.	17
21	A šéf: Polil a zničil Vám šaty, já to budu muset platit ...	146	The boss said He's ruined your dress and now I will have to pay for it.	18
22	... šéf mne vzal za ucho a zatočil mi jím, a to neměl dělat, protože ta blondýnka zakřičela	145	The boss grabbed me by my ear which she shouldn't have done, because the blond cried out ..	18
23	... a že je bude muset strhávat ze sebe jako starý plakát ...	145	... so tightly to her body that she would have to tear it off like an old poster ..	19
24	Ten večer mi pan šéf řekl, že v přízemí bude potřebovat můj pokoj na prádelnu , že si musím svoje věci odnést do prvního patra.	146	That evening the boss told me they'd be needing my room on the ground floor for the laundry and that I'd have to move ...	19
25	A ten agent řekl, proč bych nemohl rozhazovat drobný na ulici, když vy, jako majitel tohoto podniku, rozhazujete denně ...	147	The salesman answered: Why shouldn't I when you're the owner of this establishment and you throw away ...	21
26	... ale co s tím mají dělat moje desetikoruny	147	...but I don't see what that has to do with my ten crowns	21
27	Dovolit se /když se napřed dovolil	148	The beauty of the machine is this, if you will allow me to demonstrate.	23
28	A tenhle agent mě měl asi rád , tak nějak jsem mu připomínal jeho mládí ...	148	The sales man must have liked me – perhaps I reminded him of his youth..	23
29	... tak se na mne dívala, a tak těsně, že jsem sklopil oči	150	She looked at me so intensely that I had to look away	24
30	... ale jdi už spát, ráno musíš tak brzy vstávat synáčku	151	Ah, but go to bed now, you've got to be up early boy.	25
31	... a tak pan Šlosar pracoval celé dny a celé noci, aby ty zuby spravil ...	152	... and Mr Šlosear would have to work day and night to repair them	28
32	... a tak každé jí zase nafukoval svým dechem znovu ...	154	... and the air would go out of her, so that each man would have to blow it up himself	29
33	... a vzal zálohu a řekl, že už se nemusí o nic starat, že jedině může očekávat dobírkou ten frak, na žádnou zkoušku že nemusí jít ...	154	... and said that all he had to do now was wait for the finished jacket, he would not have to go for fitting ..	30
34	... a stačí přijít a zatáhne se za provázek a figurína jako dětský balónek se stáhne ...	155	... and all you have to do is come and pull on the right string and the mannequin ...	31
35	... a já jsem věděl, že to musí být krásný pocit vidět na každé té dlaždičce vytištěno svoje jméno ...	160	... and I knew it must be wonderful to see your own name printed on every cobblestone.	37
36	... a dodal, takhle musíš umět házet drobný oknem, aby dveřmi přišli ti stovky, víš?	161	... now, he went on, if you can throw small change out of the window like that, the C-notes will come waltzing in through the door ...	38
37	... to babička se pro ně sehnula a vytáhla je hákem, musel jsem babičku držet za nohy, aby nespadla do té hloubky	162	... and grandma would have to lean down and fish them out with a hook and I had to hang on to her legs to keep her ...	40
38	... že stačilo natáhnout ruku a tu košili vzít	162	... when all she had to do was reach out and pick it off	40
39	... a babičku voda a déšť lískala do tváře tak, že se někdy musela s tím průvanem servat o tu košili..	162	...and the rain would whip Grandma's face so hard that she would have to wrestle the wind for the possession of the shirt	40
41	... tady muselo pršet ne celou noc, ale několik dní ...	165	It must have been for several days because ...	44

43	...aby si protáhla prstama chřípí, musela tady chodit pořád jako na divadle, jako v nějakým zaskleným obchodě ..	169	... could not allow herself the pleasure of scratching her nose. Wherever she went, she was on stage, like in a big shop window..	49
44	...aby za měsíc to začalo nanovo ... to muselo být krásné, to bych chtěl vidět ...	171	It must have been wonderful. I wish I had seen it.	53
45	...a pořád obnovujeme kupky sena, každých čtrnáct dní, za staré kupky se odvezou a místo nich se přiveze čerstvě posečené...	172	We were always having to replace the haystacks, because every two weeks the old ones were taken away...	53
46	... podle předem stanoveného plánu musíme dát na to místo, kde byly ty kupky staré.	172	...and bundles of freshly cut grass were brought in, or else we set out ready made haystacks exactly where the old ones had been.	53
47	...jako by za mnou stál ten šéf, a já jsem musel nejkratší cestou běžet, a v trapu jsem si odvazoval zástěru ...	173	... as if the boss were standing right behind me, and I'd have to take a shortcut and undo my apron...	55
48	... když přijdou horka, tak se skoro roztéká, nemůže jezdit, kde by chtěl, tak pořád musí být v pokoji ...	176	...but during the heat wave he'd practically melt and couldn't go wherever he wanted but had to stay in a room with lower temperature ...	58
49	... tak se musel odstěhovat do sklepa, aby se neroztekla ...	176	... and when the weather turned hot, he had to move to the basement, otherwise he would have melted ...	58
50	... a dveře na kliku jako do sklepa. Kdybychom tam chtěli vejít, tak i já bych se musel sehnout, ale dveře byly zamčené ...	176	... and if we'd tried to go in even I would have had to duck, but the door was locked...	59
51	A nesměli jsme si ani sednout, ani spoolehnout, buďto něco urovnávat nebo stát lehce opření ...	177	We aren't allowed to sit down or relax, we had to keep busy straightening things out or leaning gently against the station table.	60
52	A vstoupil generál v generálském plášti s červenou podšívkou, ten jistě šije tuhle uniformu u té samé firmy jako já frak	178	In walked a general wearing a general's cape with a red lining, and he must have had his uniform made ...	60
53	...takže třeba lepší koňak je o dva kilometry od hranic koňaku, už se to nesmí jmenovat koňak, ale brandy		... and even though the best cognac comes from two kilometres outside the border of Cognac it still has to be called brandy...	62
54	...a pak hudebníci řekli, že už je konec a že musí jít domů ...	181	Then the musicians said that it was over, they couldn't play anymore and had to go home.	66
55	Začal tančit, a ta slečna musela přidat ...	182	... and the girl had to dance faster ..	67
56	... a tak přijeli do Prahy, muselo to být krásné, dostali jsme zprávu o tom ..	183	...and, the way we heard it later, it must have been a wonderful sight	68
57	...měli pořád dojem, že ten podomek je nejšťastnější člověk na světě, a tak se dívali zasněně na tu práci, kterou chválili, ale nikdy nedělali a kdyby ji měli dělat, tak by byli nešťastní	184	...and all this rich fellows thought the porter must be the happiest in the world, and they would gaze at him doing work they had never done, but if they had to chop wood they would be miserable ...	69
58	...musel být ohnutý, aby vyšel před domeček a já mu podal košík, tak veliký byl ten náš prezident, musel být ohnutý, zatímco já jsem stál ...	189	He had to crouch to come outside to take the basket from me. Our president was so tall he had to crouch, whereas I was standing up	76
59	... a že si toho musím vážit, zrovna tak, jako celý život z toho žil ten Zdeněkův slavný číšník, který obsluhoval Ferdinanda d Este	189	... and I had to appreciate that, like Zdenek's famous waiter who lived the rest of his life on the strength of having served the Archduke F.	76
60	...jestliže si zdfíml do rána na pohovce,	190	... even if a guest snoozed till morning	77

	musel zaplatit nahoře celé apartmá ...		downstairs, he still had to pay for a whole suite upstairs.	
61	Avšak museli moc dobře zaplatit, že je šéf sem vzal.	190	But the foreigners must have paid well if our boss took them in.	77
62	... jak když je nějaký státní pohřeb, jak zase mají na starosti, aby když je vláda na pohřbu, nikdo nepovoláný se tam nedostal ...	192	... whenever there was a state funeral that members of the government attended, they had to make sure no unauthorised persons were allowed in ...	80
63	...zastrkoval náprsní tašku do kabátu, jistě daroval značný ček jménem bolivijské vlády ...	192	... was just slipping his wallet back into his coat, so he must have donated a large check in the name of the Bolivian government..	80
64	Ale třetího dne jsme se dozvěděli, že zástupci bolivijské republiky museli zpozdít odlet letadla ..	193	Three days later we heard that the Bolivians had to delay their flight.	82
65	... a já jsem se s ním zase rozloučil a tak nějak jsem mu byl milý, hladil mě ...	195	He must have been fond of me because as I said goodbye to him again he patted me on the head ...	83
66	...chud'ato drž se, jseš malej, z malýho ať to někam chud'ato dotáhneš, já za tebou přijdu!	195	Poor little fellow, just stick to it. You are small so you've got to try hard to make something of yourself ...	83
67	... a paní spráskal provazem, že ji museli převést do nemocnice...	196	... and given her wife such trashing with a rope they had to take her to the hospital ...	84
68	... zabil svoji paní, vyřízl jí přirození a ten cestující pod hrozbou zabítí tou sekýrou musel to přirození sníst ...	196	...killed her with an axe, then cut out her vagina and told the salesman to eat it or else be killed with an axe	84
69	, ale pak ve dvě hodiny mu nesl právě ten pingl Karel tác, a na něm bylo všechno ve stříbře, a podle poklopů to byla vždycky husička nebo kuře	200	But at two Karel would bring him the tray and judging by the silver covers over the food it must have been a small goose ...	90
70	A když burziáni odešli, nikdy jsem nesměl ani nikdo jiný, vejít do chamber separé	201	When the brokers left, neither I nor anyone else was ever allowed to go into the private chambers ...	91
71	... tak ten tah jako by jej za vlasy vytáhl, až se musel prudce vztyčit, a jak si tak hlučně kýchl ..	201	... and as he inhaled it was as if the force of the intake pulled him straight up by the hair, because he suddenly rose to his feet	91
72	Ale pan Karel dal pěstí takovou podomkovi, že ten se svalil a musela přijít policie ...	203	... and the police had to be called in ...	93
73	Pan vrchní říkal, že ze mne bude dobrý vrchní, že ale musím si vypěstovat takovou schopnost, aby	203	...but that I had to train myself to fix ...	94
74	... že když chci být dobrý vrchní, tak musím poznat nejen národnost, ale co si host asi dá ..	204	.. if I wanted to be a good head waiter I had to be able to recognize not just the nationality but	96
75	... a řekl mi, to musíš hned poznat žlučníkáře, jen se na hosta podívej ...	205	,and he would say, You have to learn to recognize a gallbladder case when you see one.	96
76	... a každý věděl, že je má, že jich musí mít moc, že jistě šetří ...	205	...though everyone knew he had a lot of it and was saving up ...	96
77	...a taky se tak stalo poprvé a potom každý čtvrtek, že já jsem musel dokončit to, co staříci načali	209	I'd have to finish what the old men began	101
78	A asi jsem byl i jinak dobrý, protože všechny slečny mě zdravily	209	And I must have been good in other ways as well, because all the young women would greet me ...	101
79	A tak jsem na sebe začal držet víc než	209	And so I started setting more store by	101

	jsem měl.		myself than I should have.	
80	... a řekla, vy žertujete, vy, který si umíte tak krásně uvázat kravatu ...	211	She laughed and said: You can't be serious, you tie your necktie so beautifully.	103
82	Jediný, kdo by mohl zapůjčit přibory byl kníže Thurn-Taxis, ale ten by pro ně musel poslat do Regensburku ...	213	... but he would have had to send for them ...	106
83	... které muselo být výborné, protože všichni hosté ztichli ...	219	It must have been wonderful because all the guests fell silent ...	113
84	... ale císař byl na to asi zvyklý a jen se usmíval ..	219	... but the Emperor must have seen this kind of thing before because he just smiled ...	113
85	... a pak byla taková tma, že jsem musel pořád před sebe hmatat	222	... then it got so dark I had to grope my way forward...	117
86	... ale staré větve teď trčely tak, že jsem musel teď podlízat po čtyřech	223	... with branches so close to the ground that I had to crawl under them	118
87	... ale to byly zase samé břízy, veliké břízy, to bych musel mít žebřík, abych si vylezl na nějakou větev ...	223	... but all the trees were birch now, tall birch, and I'd have needed a ladder to reach one of the branches ...	118
88	... že už se spolu nebudeme sázet, co si který host dá, či nedá, nebo by dáti měl ...	223	.. what the different guests would or should order ..	118
89	... a ona se na mě podívala a ubrouskem mi utřela tvář a řekla mi, že od české soldatesky se nic jiného čekat nedalo a nedá	228	... and said, You can't, you mustn't expect anything else from those Czech jingoes.	123
90	A já jsem věděl, že ji musím chránit a hájit proti všem Čechům	228	I knew that I had to defend her against any Czechs ..	124
91	... se s ubohými Němci děje tohle to, co jsem viděl na vlastní oči, což potvrzovalo všechno to, proč byly zabrány Sudety		... why the Sudetenland had to be taken back ...	124
92	.. a proč asi i Praha by měla skončit zrovna tak, když životy a čest německých lidí byly ohrožovány ...	228	... and why Prague might end up the same way if the lives ...	124
93	.. ale já jsem mu řekl, že tu omluvu nepřijímám, že ještě uvidíme ...	230	... but I told him I would not accept his apology and that we would have to see.	126
94	... abych se podíval do rodokmenu, že určitě tam musí být nějaký germánský předek	230	... because she was sure I must have some German ancestry.	127
95	...asi je to u Germánů zvykem ...		...and I thought it must be the way the Teutons did it.	130
96	... to takhle stačilo obrátit se proti tomu příjemnému vání a polykat zvolna jako ryby žábami ...		All you had to do was turn And face the pleasant breeze and drink it in freely..	131
97	... do každé té budovy než jste vstoupili, mohli jste procházet, nebo museli jste projít sloupořadím ...	235	... and before you entered any building you had to walk past columns of ...	132
99	...mi budou závidět i šlechtici z Pruska, kteří ve svých jménech mají vždycky nátlak slovanského kořene tak jako já, číšník v oddělení pět, kde jsem měl na starosti pět stolů v poledne ...	237	.. so I became a waiter in section five and I had to cover five tables at noon ...	135
100	... a řekla mi, že mi nabízí ruku, o kterou ale půjdu požádat jejího otce ...	240	... that she wanted to marry me, but I would have to ask ...	139
101	A tak se neuvěřitelné stalo skutkem a já jsem se v Chebu musel podrobit	240	... in Cheb I had to undergo an examination ...	139

	prohlídce ...			
102	...a podle říšských zákonů že žádám, abych byl prozkoumán po stránce fyzické, zda jsem podle norimberských zákonů ...	240	According to the laws of Reich I also had to request a physical examination By an SS doctor	139
103	A tak zatímco v Praze popravčí čtyř popravovaly, tak jsem já stál nahý před lékařem ...musel jsem se otočit ...	240	I had to stand naked in front of a doctor who .. and then made me turn around ...	139
104	...tak nakonec musela přijít sestřička, sama mi několika pohyby, při kterých už jsem nemohl a nemusel myslet na nic, protože ruka mladé sestřičky byla tak zručná ...	241	Finally a young nurse had to come in a after a few deft strokes, during which I did not have to think about anything anymore ...	140
105	... a že naší povinností je myslet jen a jen na národně socialistickou stranu a plodit děti, které musí být vychovány taky v duchu té strany ...	242	...and to conceive children who must also be raised in the spirit of that party	141
106	... a pak starosta skoro zaslzel a řekl nám slavnostně, abychom si z toho nic nedělali, že nemůžeme oba padnout v boji za novou Evropu ..	242	... that we couldn't both die in the struggle for the New Europe ...	141
107	... že všichni důstojníci, kteří jistě byli svobodní, by se o ni ucházeli nebo mohli ucházet, ale nikdo z nich ji nedostal	243	...that all officers that must have been single, would have loved to try for her hand ...	143
108	... dívaly tak, že zkoumaly, co bych asi tak mohl vyvádět v posteli a s nima ...	244	They must have thought I was up to some rather special games ...	144
109	...zatímco teď jsem postaven před úkol jako nějaký ušlechtilý pes ...	246	... whereas now I had a job to do ...	146
110	... že jsem za měsíc musel chodit nechat si píchat injekce ...	246	.. a month later I had to go for some potency injections ..	147
112	... si koupím hotel ...hotel Dítě..anebo abych koupil něco ve Švýcarsku?	252	... or instead should I buy something in Austria or Switzerland?	154
113	... a Líza zrovna tak musela vidět a zažít neuvěřitelné věci, které se staly skutkem ..	253	Lise, like them, must have seen and lived true unbelievable things ...	154
114	... protože ta válka ji asi učinila svobodnou, pokornou ...	253	...because the war must have made her free and humble again ...	155
115	...kterou lze jedinečně vymazat to, kam jsem se dostal, když jsem si vzal Němku, že jsem stál v Chebu před nacistickými doktory ...	260	...when I married a German and had to stand before the Nazi doctor in Cheb ...	163
116	... a dotáhnout to na tajemníka všech pražských hotelů, to už by mne museli uznat – nemilovat, ale respektovat	261	... they would have to respect me – not love me, perhaps, but respect me ..	164
117	... ale nešlo mu to, musel jsem ho podírat ...	261	... and I had to help ...	165
118	A tak jsem seděl vedle šedivého mladíka, mohlo mu být ne víc než třicet let ...	262	... who had grey hair though he could not have been much over thirty	165
119	... a on řekl, že teď odtud bude vidět jeho rodiště ...	262	And he said than from here we should be able to see his native village	166
120	... a rukama vyhmatal zasypané základy stavení a budou, jistě šel slepeckým písmem posilovaným vzpomínkou. A když ohmatal... zakřičel Vy vrahové		He felt with certainty now, as if he was reading Braille and when he had felt out the whole foundation ...	167
121	...kde jsem musel počkat, protože byl hlášen nálet ...	266	... where I had to wait because ...	171
122	... a já jsem v tu chvíli věděl, že tohle tu	271	I realized at once that this sort of thing	179

	musí být každý den, a že večer to musí být se světélkujícími šaty ...		had to go on every day, and that in the evening he would have to wear a phosphorescent costume	
123	A milionáři chodili a vraceli se zahradou, a museli se vrátit a projít bránou , kterou milicionáři pokaždé otvírali ...	279	... but then they had to go round and come through the gate ...	189
124	... protože pořád museli být ve své zbroji	280	They had to carry their weapons all the time ...	191
126	...a dobré je, že když tady nemohu být hoteliérem, tak ať jde se mnou I ten hotel ...	291	... if I could not be the hotel keeper anymore then the hotel should go down with me ...	205
127	... už se nebudu muset klanět	292	... that I would not have to bow and scrape anymore ...	206
129			When I arrived in Kraslice I had to walk another ten kilometers ..	207
131	... a on jí s ohromnou laskavostí říkal, Náno blbá, já odepnu pásek a dám ti přes hubu ...	296	I'll have to take off my belt and slap your face	211
132	... a znovu jí něžně opakoval ta francouzská slovíčka ... která asi znovu vyslovovala ta slovíčka špatně ...	296	Marcela must have pronounced the words badly again ...	211
133	...zatímco tady musela pracovat a navíc musela se večer určit francouzská slovíčka ...	298	But here she had to work and on top of that spend her evenings learning French words	213
134	... myslel jsem, že ten koníček musel být někde pod zemí, protože měl takové krásné oči ...	303	... he must have underground somewhere because his eyes were so beautiful	219
135	...elektrářičky zhotovené dělnickým rukama, které tady kácely lesy, lesními dělníky, kteří tady žili a museli odejít ...museli odejít a byli odsunuti ...	303	... but then had to leave when the war was over, were forced to leave ...transported	220
137	... kteří jistě byli pokorní, protože to je naučil takový život ...	303	... who must have been humble because they were taught humility ...	220
138	...takovou cikánskou píseň, která zvyšovala asi nějakou situaci starce, že jajkal a kvičel ...	306	The music must have made something in the old mans life more intense	223
139	Cestu, kterou jsem udržoval a kterou jsem vyplňoval sám štěrkem ...	307	The road I maintained and patched with rock I had to crush myself	225
140	... co to je za cestu, kterou jsem urazil a ještě urazit musím ...	309	...but discovering the kind of road you had open up and you had yet to open up	228
141	... všichni jak odkládají to, na co se jednou musí vyptávat ...	310	...putting off the questions they would have to ask one day	228
142	A já jsem s chutí vykládal o svém hrobě, když umřu tady, že chci být pochován ...	310	... and said that if I was to die here, I wanted ...	229
143	... a lekali se, že jsem je musel chlácholit...	317	... and grew so alarmed I had to calm them down ...	237
144	A měl jsem radost, že se mě polekali, protože já musím být něco vzácného, protože já jsem opravdu žákem ...	319	... because I must be something rare	240

APPENDIX 6 – KL

Klíma I. (1990) *Má veselá jitra*, Praha: Rozmluvy.

Klíma, I. (1993) *My Merry Mornings*, Readers International. Translated by George Theiner.

1	Jestli byste se neměli o Bedříškovi poradit s psychologem.	8	That's not normal. You should consult a psychiatrist.	3
2	Chybí mu rysy profesionality, což mu slouží spíše ke cti – amatérismus má v sobě cosi zlidšťujícího.	14	He lacks some of the attributes of the true professional, which must be counted in his favour.	9
3	Prosím vás, Místře. Napíšu Lojzíkovi do Londýna, on mi pošle, co budu potřebovat.	17	Oh that! All I have to do is drop a line to old Alois in London and he will send me whatever is needed.	13
4	... že má-li člověk vystoupit z hráškové Mariny ..., musí být ten ušlechtilý výrobek British KLEYland schopn jízdy.	18	If one ..., this noble product of British Leyland has to be in working order.	13
5	Vrhla na mě zdrcující pohled jako na člověka, který se odmítá znát ke svému potomkovi ...	18	She gave me a scathing look, as if to say I should be ashamed of myself for repudiating my own blood...	13
6	A kdybyste viděl, co si dovolí ke mně ...	20	And you should see what he is up to with me ...	16
7	Netvrdím, že ho museli nasadit zrovna proti tobě, třeba jim šlo jen o to aby měli svého člověka mezi těma, co překupují.	22	I do not necessarily mean to say that he is being asked to spy on you ...	17
8	... On se teď vyčerpal z peněz a taky musí být opatrnější ...	22	... apart from which, of course, he now had to watch his steps ...	18
9	Měli byste s chlapcem vyhledat psychologa.	23	You really must take him to see a psychiatrist.	18
10	Prosím Vás , neodkládejte návštěvu, odborník Vám poradí ...	23	Now, you really have to understand that any delay is to be avoided ..	18
11	... a pravila tak tiše, aby ji Bedříšek nezaslechl ..	23	... and said in a whisper, so that Freddie should not hear ...	19
12	... Bedříšek nesmí zahynout, věřím že je předurčen pro velké činy.	23	Freddie must not be allowed to perish ...	19
13	Prosím tě, řekl jsem, abys nám už nikoho a nic neházel na terasu.	23	I must I ask you never again to throw ...	19
14	Vždyť já bych taky musela skočit z toho okna, kdyby se ti něco stalo.	24	I would have to jump out of the window too ...	20
15	... stejně vědí, že na jednom konci jsem já, nemusí ale vědět, kdo mluví na druhém konci.	27	... but they do not have to know who is at the other.	21
16	Od té doby, do jsem ji naposledy viděl, uplynula už aspoň dvě desetiletí.	28	It must be at least twenty years since I saw her last.	22
17	O čem jsme mluvili si pochopitelně nepamatuji, ale jistě jsem se ji snažil ohromit svými literárními úspěchy ...	28	... but I am sure I must have tried to impress her by ..	23
18	Měl jsem v té době také velmi vyhraněné představy o podobě ženy, kterou bych mohl milovat, a tedy i o mezích, jaké si člověk musí ukládat vůči ženám, o nichž neví, zda by je mohl milovat.	29	... definite views on what women whom I might love should be like, and what rules were to be observed when falling in love.	23
19	Za teplých nocí sem nepochybně směřovaly desítky mileneckých párů ...	30	... it was doubtless the destination of ...	24

20	Nechápal jsem, proč bych si měl přát žít v jiné zemi.	32	I could not understand why I should want to.	26
21	Tak bych si přál s ní strávit aspoň jediný večer, objímat se ve tmě a nikam nespíchat ...	33	... to embrace he in the dark without having to hurry ...	27
22	Večer, řekla, musí být přece se svým mužem.	33	Oh no, in the evening she had to be with her husband.	27
23	Nemohlo mu být víc než pět let a nepoznal jsem, jestli to je chlapec nebo děvčátko.	33	It could not have been more than five years ...	27
24	...a navíc se pomazal blátem, musel jsem ho po nocích čistit ...	34	I had to clean the mud ...	28
26	Je tu zajímavý život, řekl jsem, spisovatel je trochu jako dobrodruh.	37	And a writer has to be a bit of an adventurer.	31
27	Pohlédla na mě tázavě ale já jako vždycky, když jsem měl blíže vysvětlit podobu té absurdity, jsem cítil vzmáhající se nechuť...	37	...but as usual when I was supposed to give a more detailed description ...	32
29	Otočil jsem se a beznadějně zapátral mezi vozy za námi.	40	... trying to spot the vehicle I knew must be tailing us.	34
30	A musíš si to dát líbit ?	40	But do you have to put up with it?	35
31	Ne, to určitě ne.	40	No I should not think so.	35
32	Musela spotřebovat nesmyslné množství peněz a promrhat úctyhodné množství energie ...	41	She must have spent a fortune ...	35
33	Neměla jsi tehdy odjíždět.	42	You should not have left.	37
34	To jsem musela.	42	But I had to.	37
35	Ale stejně, vědom si žalostné nezbytnosti časného vstávání, jsem už od tří hodin nespal ..	49	The thought of having to get up so damnably early had kept me awake ...	41
36	Ale vzhledem k roční době se na nepřízeň osudu žehrat nedalo.	49	... so I should not really bewail my fate ...	41
37	To mě nikdy nenapadlo.	50	Well, I must say that is something I have never thought of doing.	42
38	Ale ty jako spisovatel bys měl zkusit všechno.	50	...you should try your hand at everything ...	42
39	Nejsem typ spisovatele, co musí všechno zkoušet.	50	I am not the kind of writer who has to try everything.	42
40	Vyložil mi, že člověk, který chce vydělat peníze, musí mít slušné ryby.	50	He said that if you wanted to make a profit you had to have decent fish.	43
41	Že oni seděli v kriminále a kdokoliv z nás ostatních dlel na svobodě ...	52	That they should be cooling their heels in prison while we others were enjoying ...	44
42	...rybu rychle sejmout, kdy je ručička v maximálním bodu výchylky, dbát však přitom na to, aby váha nikdy neukazovala	53	...making sure at the same time make sure that the scales should ever show ...	45
43	Musíme cenu samozřejmě zaokrouhlovat ...	53	Naturally, it went without saying that we had to ...	45
44	Ale jak vyslovíte cenu, to už musíte být zase seriózní.	54	However, as soon as you mention the price you have to be serious again.	46
45	Ryb v kádi bylo jistě nejméně za osm tisíc.	56	There must have been a good eight thousand crowns worth of fish in there.	49
46	Teprve teď mi došlo, jak člověk, který dělá takové řemeslo, nesmí si připustit ani špetku studu.	57	... that anyone in that line of work had to be quite shameless ...	49
47	...ale k tomu je zase třeba sehnat volné sáčky ...	58	...but for that again you had to have empty bags ...	50
48	To je jasný, že bych radši dělala u	60	I do not have to tell you I would much	52

	pumpy.		rather work in a gas station.	
49	Stejně tam budu muset – není to kolegiální nechat venku přítele mrznout a sám zatím tlachat s prodavačkou.	60	I would have to go out before too long ...	53
50	Víte, kolik bych musela předem vyklopit?	61	Do you know how much would I have to cough up?	53
51	To abych pak klopila znovu.	61	I would have to pay up all over again.	53
52	A jak šla k vařiči, musela se bokem protáhnout mezi mými zády a bednami ...	62	On her way back to the stove she again had to pass between me and the boxes ..	55
53	A teď jsem se měl otočit a bleskurychle ji políbit.	63	Now I suppose I should have turned swiftly and kissed her.	55
54	Ale oni se rozhodli, že musí mít kapra ...	64	But they decided they must have a carp ...	59
55	Pak jsme ještě museli vypláchnout kád' ...	65	Then we had to clean the tank ...	59
56	Tiše, pane Ivane, musíte strašně tiše, oni za chvíli přijdou.	66	You have to quiet as a mouse ...	59
57	Počítal jsem, jak jsem uměl, řekl jsem s náhlým vzdorem.	67	Well I did the best I could, I said, suddenly feeling that I had to stand up for myself...	60
58	...vždyť to bylo takových ryb a na každý jsme museli vydělat nejmíň dvě kačky ...	68	...and we must have made at least ...	61
59	Ale zdálo se mi, že mistr Holý musí vděčit za svou pověst jinému druhu konání ...	73	No I thought, surely Mr Holý must owe his reputation to quite a different sort of activity ..	66
60	Mistr Holý nepochybně tuto část dne trávil sháněním nesehnatelných součástek.	73	It was to be supposed that Mr Holý spent this part of the day ...	66
61	Ale jistě Vám neuniklo mé přesvědčení, že celý světový vývoj je výsledkem střetání principu mužského s ženským.	76	Yet you could have hardly failed to notice ...	68
62	Dnešní doba však přinesla, jak musíte všude pozorovat smutný triumf principu mužského.	76	...in our own time, as you must be only too painfully aware ...	69
63	Minulý měsíc jsem, mladý muži, musel spěchat za nemocným tatínkem ...	77	I had to undertake the long journey ...	69
64	Jo, ale s tím musíš na družstvo. To jedině je kompetentní.	82	...you have to talk to the cooperative ...	75
65	Anebo když jsme posledně kladli linoleum, měli jsme půl patra vyklizeného a pacienti nám leželi na chodbě ...	89	We had to move the patients out of one ward and had them lying on the floor ...	79
66	Protože ..., upozorňuje ředitelství, že je nutno sáhnout k namátkovým prohlídkám tašek zaměstnanců .	90	The management must inform you that we are forced to take preventive measures ...	80
67	Tak to by naopak měly ještě zbýt ...	90	... they should have some radiators left over ...	81
68	Ale kdepak.	91	You must be joking.	81
69	Oni jich samozřejmě objednali sto padesát ..	91	They of course had to order a hundred and fifty, but they did not get half of that because ..	81
70	Zdržovat se tu v denní dobu bylo proti předpisům.	91	During the day you were not supposed to hang around there	82
71	Měl v tom zjevně praxi.	92	...he must have had a lot of practice ...	82
72	To vám plakala.	92	You should have heard her cry!	83
73	Vždyť si musel koupit nový sako ...	93	...had to buy him a new jacket, had not I?	83

74	Takovýho bláta, co tam bude, představila si...	95	And the mud I have to wade through ...	84
75	Já nevím, abyste si nemusel zajíždět ...	96	I do not know..it must be out of your way...	87
76	Musel se vyspat nejen po minulé noční, ale ...		He had to sleep off his last night short...	87
77	Mně se muselo zdát o kundě nebo co...	97	I must have dreamed about cunts ...	87
78	Asi budu muset zavolat starý ...	98	I will have to give my old woman a ring ...	88
79	Zeptala se mě, zda mě má oslovovat křestním jménem nebo příjmením	99	She asked if she was to use my first name or my Christian name	90
80	...protože pořádek musí být ...	99	We have got to keep some kind of order	91
81	Už jsme zřejmě byli na místě, ukázala mi malý baráček ...	102	We must have reached our destination, for ...	92
82	Převlékla se do tenoučké blůzičky, musela jí v ní být pořádná zima ...	103	In which she must have been desperately cold ...	94
83	Jednou jsem vozil babičku asi dvě hodiny z vyšetření na vyšetření ...	104	On one occasion I had to push an old lady in her trolley ...	95
84	Deska už před chvílí dohrála, měl bych vstát a odejít ...	104	I ought to get up and leave ...	95
85	A mě, mě taky vyhnali ...	105	I was not allowed to stay, either ..	95
86	Tvářil jsem se zřejmě poněkud pochybovačně ...	105	I must have looked sceptical ...	96
87	Já taky nesmím tisknout, Táňo, ani řádeček.	106	I am not allowed to print so much as a line ...	97
88	Ale já Vám musím napsat o tom ...	107	But I just had to write and tell you ...	98
89	Stačilo natáhnout ruku a obejmout ji...	107	All I had to do was reach out and embrace her.	98
90	Musíte domů, spát!	109	You must go home now...	100
91	... a druhý den musel vstávat v půl šesté ...	112	...and had to get up at half past five ...	102
92	... že jeho žena se bude přece muset obléct ...	112	They would have to dress up his wife ...	103
93	Nejspíš někde v naprosté samotě ..na tu je ovšem zvyklá	113	..she must be used to that ...	103
94	...že ona tím samozřejmě také trpěla ..	113	...that she too must have suffered on that account ...	104
95	Mělo by se na chvíli otevřít okno ...		They should open a window for a while ...	104
96	Musel uvěřit tomu, co slyšel od lidí ...	115	He had had to rely on what others told him	106
97	Musí se zeptat lékaře, zda by pro to mohl něco učinit ...	116	He must ask the doctor whether ...	107
98	Napadlo ho, že by měl nebožce zatlačit oči ...	116	...that he ought to close her eyes	107
99	Možná, že by měl jít domů ...	117	Perhaps, he ought to go home ...	108
100	...že by měl ještě něco učinit ..	117	...there was something he should do before he left ...	108
101	Jedna měla snad půl druhého metráku ...	118	One of them must have weighted half a ton ...	110
102	To víte, pořádek musí být.	118	..we must keep some kind of order ...	111
103	Přece se jí to muselo nějak dotknout ...	120	Surely she must have some feelings about it ...	112
104	Neměli by tu být už tím dřevem?	125	Should not the wood have arrived by now?	115
105	Až doposud jsem se kojil nadějí, že rýhu dneska nevykopeme, betonovat se začne příští úterý ...	125	...so that we would have to leave the concrete until next week ..	116

106	Měl jsem jen padesátku, připomněl jsem, že mi šetrní inženýři větší obnos na tuzéry neschválili ...	126	...the cautious doctors having decided that I was not to spend more on tips ...	116
107	Když já se tak nerad starám o věci.	126	I hate to have to bother about things....	117
108	V kvartě propadl z latiny a fyziky a musel gymnasium opustit.	127	...and had to leave the school.	117
109	Pokračoval jsem v cestě jen s největším sebezapřením ...	127	I had to force myself to continue the journey ...	117
110	Samozřejmě jsem měl po tomto otřesném zážitku auto prodat ...	128	I should have sold the car after this drastic experience ...	118
111	...že musel ve zdravých lidech vyvolávat buď soucit nebo odpor ...	128	...- that he must evoke either compassion or revulsion	118
112	Kvůli mně by se muselo všechno přeměřovat.	128	...if I...they would have to do all their measurements again ...	118
113	...neboť tuto práci nesmím vykonávat už málem 10 let ...	128	...since I have not been allowed to do any for over ten years now ...	119
114	..a musel zrovna přijet odněkud z hor, tak byl opálený ...	129	...he must just have come back from the mountains..	120
115	...protože svěřil svůj osud do rukou možných udavačů ...	131	...as he had to entrust himself to possible stool pigeons ...	120
116	Teď dělá automechanika a občas taky dohazuje lidem poukazy na autáky.	130	...helped people to obtain cars without having to put their names o a waiting list ...	120
117	Ovšem, kdo se chtěl dostat do jeho družstva, musel si vedení družstva náležitě zavázat ...	131	...anyone wishing to join his cooperative had first to make it worthwhile ..	121
118	..varoval jsem ho před možným odposlechem, který se děje v mém bytě ...	131	I warned him that ...and he had better be careful what he said ...	122
119	Je to strašný když ji musíš odmítnout.	133	You cannot imagine how terrible it is to have to refuse.	123
120	...by se svého podílu samozřejmě vzdal, ale o bytě nerozhoduje sám.	133	...but it had to be understood he did not decide these things on his own.	123
121	Ale ta prkna se přece musí někomu zaplatit.	134	...but surely we have got to pay somebody for the wood	124
122	A co se tam vlastně mělo zjevit?	134	What was it he was supposed to see?	125
123	Já totiž trpím takovou chorobou. Tu jsem si uhnal.když jsem dělal v dole.	135	I suffer from the ailment I contracted while I was forced to work in the mines.	126
124	Ale tím Vás nebudu obtěžovat, máte svých starostí dost.	135	I am sure you have worries enough of your own.	126
125	...už mě několikrát museli odvést na kyslík ...	135	... and several times they had to take to the hospital	126
126	Já jsem se Vám stěží vydrápal k tomu prameni.	135	So I do not have to tell you I could hardly make it ..	126
127	Snad by ta prkna nebyla tak drahá.	136	I am sure, they cannot cost very much.	127
128	Ale oni by nám je skoro určitě nesměli prodat.	136	But I am sure they would not be allowed to sell them.	127
129	...Jestli tedy myslíte, tak teď by to šlo , ty děti jsou pryč..	136	If you really think we should so now is the time.	128
130	Pospěšte si, než zas někdo přijde.	136	Someone is bound to come sooner or later ...	128
131	Asi se musí pít na místě.	136	I guess you have got to drink it on the spot.	128
132	Nejspíš si říkali to, co si už musí opakovat málem celý život:	144	... what they have had to tell themselves for the best part of their lives ..	133
133	Moc logicky ta rada sice nezněla, ledaže bych tu americkou herečku stačil předtím seznámit se všemi významnými	145	While this did not sound too logical since I would have had first to acquaint my film star friend with ...	133

	osobnostmi ..			
134	...pomlouvačné články, na které se nedalo, či přesněji: nesmělo odpovědět.	146	... to which we were unable – or should I say, not allowed – to reply.	135
135	..ted' nevím, jestli mám napsat jeho jméno ...	146	I do not know if I should mention his name ...	135
136	Aspoň byste to neměl nosit takhle všechno najednou po kapsách.	148	You should not really be carrying all this stuff around in your pockets like this,	137
137	...mezi těmi, kteří naopak publikovat musí, aby bylo čím naplnit časopisy.	148	... who, on the contrary, had to publish to fill all the journals and magazines ...	137
138	...když už si najdete člověka, co je ochoten vydávat plody vašeho ducha za svoje, musíte se ještě vy snažit, aby Váš duch vyhlížel jako jeho...	150	...you then have to temper with your idea to make them look as if they were his..	138
139	Ale jak se Vám to má podařit, když oni se svého ducha už dávno zřekli.	150	But how the devil are you supposed to do that, since they have given up having ideas long ago.	138
140	..a já, kdybych se pokusil přepsnit svoje pocity, řekl bych, že jsem vnímal přítomnost řádu...	154	..if I tried to describe my feelings I would have to say I was aware of ...	142
141	... že i ten trnový věnec, co paní Němcová donesla Havlíčkovi na rakev ...	155	..that Božena Němcová was supposed to have placed on Havlíček coffin...	143
142	Kdybych já musel sázet to, co se dneska píše, tak nevím, jak bych skončil.	155	Come to think of it, if I had to set the kind of stuff that was being printed these days, who knows how I would have ended up...	144
143	, najednou jsem to začal chtít, protože někdo to musí podstoupit ...	155	I so wanted that, because someone had to suffer it.	144
144	Někdo už to zase musí podstoupit a musí to být hrozně pomalý a strašný umírání ...	155	Someone has to take it upon himself and it has to be a very slow and dreadful death...	144
145	, já se chci dát ukřižovat. To musí být strašná fyzická bolest.	157	It must be a terrible, physical pain.	144
146	...někdy si o tom opravdu budeme muset pohovořit ...	157	One of these days we will really have to discuss it.	146
147	Nikdy jsem nepochyboval o tom, že všichni proroci musili v sobě mít notně bláznovství.	159	I had always thought that every prophet must be something of a madman.	147
148	Člověk musí zemřít a chce aby po něm zůstala pyramida nebo aspoň dům ...	160	Man knows he must die and wants to leave behind a pyramid or at least a house ...	149
149	Nebylo ani zřejmé, má-li na mysli rodinu nebo soud	163	I was not sure who „they“ were...	151
150	Co měl dělat když já si motala svý v pastáku.	163	Well, what was he to do when I was doing time?	151
151	Napsal mi, že na mě myslí, ale to se nesmím zlobit, že si jako musel najít jinou.	163	...but that I must not be angry with him, that he had to find someone else.	151
152	...ale pak si řekl, že já tu určitě hořím zvědavostí, co se v Praze děje ...	164	..but then he said to himself that I must be dying to know what was going on ...	152
153	Určitě neznají...	165	I am sure, they do not ...	153

APPENDIX 7 – KU

Kundera M. (2006) *Nesnesitelná lehkost bytí*, Brno: Atlantis.

Kundera M. (1984) *The Unbearable Lightness of Being*, Harper and Row. Translated by Michael Henry Heim.

1	Má ji pozvat do Prahy natrvalo?	3	Should he call her back to Prague for good?	7
2	Anebo se jí už nemá hlásit?	3	Or should he refrain from approaching her?	7
3	Odpověděla v rozpacích, že si hotel bude teprve hledat a že má kufr v úschovně na nádraží.	18	Embarrassed she answered she still had to find she still had to find a hotel ...	9
4	Ale pokaždé, když se měl se synem sejít, matka si našla nějakou výmluvu.	20	But each time Thomas was supposed to meet him, the boys mother found an excuse to keep him away.	11
5	Proč by ostatně měl k tomuto dítěti, k němuž ho nepoutalo nic než jedna neprozřetelná noc, cítit víc, než ke komukoli jinému.	20	Why should he feel more for that child Than for any other?	11
6	Nepsaná smlouva erotického přátelství předpokládala, že Tomáš vyloučí lásku ze svého života.	22	The unwritten contract of erotic friendship stipulated that Thomas should exclude all love from his life.	13
7	Horší bylo, když ony byly u něho a on jim musil vysvětlovat, že je po půlnoci odveze domů, protože má problémy s nespavostí.	22	... when they were at his and he had to explain that come midnight he would have to drive them home because he was an insomniac ...	13
8				
9	Když se chtěl vzdálit a neprobudit ji, musel použít lsti.	22	If he wanted to move without waking her, he had to resort to artifice.	14
10	... přesvědčena ve svém snu, že jí chce odejít navždycky a že ho musí zadržet.	23	... convinced in her sleep that he meant to leave her for good and she had to stop him...	15
12	Bránila se, chtěla se mu vytrhnout a on ji tiskl čtvrt hodiny jak ve svěrací kazajce, než ji utišil.	25	..and he had to keep her in a straightjacket-like hold for a quarter of an hour before he could calm her.	17
14	Všechny jsme byly nahé a musily jsme pochodovat kolem bazénu.	26	We were naked and had to march around pool.	18
15	Musily jsme za pochodu zpívat a dělat dřepy ...	26	We had to sing as we marched.	18
17	Nikde tu tvoje ponožka není. Jistě jsi přešel bez ní.	30	You must have come without it.	22
18	Když na ni nestačím já, musíš mi pomoci.	33	Since I cannot cope with her myself, you must help me.	24
20	Ale jedno bylo už jasné: Čechy se budou muset sklonit před dobyvatelem.	35	But one thing was clear: the country would have to bow to the conqueror.	26
21	Ví, že by tu měla být Tomášovi oporou, ví ale také, že to neumí.	36	She knew she was supposed to bolster him up, but did not know how to go about it.	28
24	Kdyby byl někdo ten příběh vymyslel, nemohl by ho jinak ukončit.	38	If someone had invented the story, this is how he would have to end it.	29
25	Musil pořádně něco tajit	40	..he had constantly had to hide things from her	30
26	Oznámil řediteli nemocnice, že se musí okamžitě vrátit.	40	He informed the director that he had to return at once.	31
27	Musil zastavit auto před křižovatkou a počkat půl hodiny než přejedou.	40	He had to stop his car and wait a half hour before they passed.	33

29	....domníváme se, že naše láska je co muselo být, že bez ní by náš život nebyl naším životem ..	44	...we presume that our love is what must be ...	35
31	A má-li Tereza sama nervózní pohyby, nedostatečnou vláčnost gest, nemůžeme se tomu divit ...	57	...if her gestures lack a certain easy grace, we must not be surprised...	46
32	Má-li být láska nezapomenutelná, musí se k ní od první chvíle slétat náhody jako ptáci na ramena Františka z Assisi.	61	If a love is to be unforgettable, fortunes must immediately start fluttering down to it like birds ...	49
33				
36	Křičela tolik, že Tomáš oddaloval hlavu od její tváře.	66	She screamed so hard that Tomas had to turn his head away ...	54
37	Dívka, která místo aby spěla za něčím vyšším, musí nosit opilcům pivo ...	67	A young woman forced to keep drunks supplied with beer ... - instead of being allowed to pursue something higher ..	55
38	...všechny ženy musily zpívat.	69	All the women had to sing.	57
39	Ten , kdo chce stále někam výš, musí počítat s tím, že se mu jednoho dne dostaví závrať.	72	...must expect some day to suffer vertigo ...	59
42	Sabina jí to musila sama připomenout.	77	Sabina had to remind her .	64
45	...říkala si, že musí vydržet kvůli němu ..	88	..she would remind herself she had to hold on because of him ...	74
46	Má tedy prožít celý svůj život ve strachu, že ho ztratí?	89	Would she have to live her whole life in fear of losing him?	75
47	Nezlob se Karenine. Ještě jednou budeš musít změnit byt.	89	It looks at though you are going to have to move again.	75
48	Ale když přijela do prahy, musila tam přece nějaký čas zůstat...	90	But once in Prague, she found out she had to spend some time taking care of various practical matters...	76
49	Karenin mu dlouho vyskakoval k tváři, takže na dlouhou dobu zbavil nutnosti něco říct.	90	..so it was a while before they had to make any overtures to each other ..	76
52	Ten, kdo se vzdá tomu druhému jako voják do zajetí, musí předem odhodit jakoukoli zbraň.	96	He who gives himself up like a prisoner of war must give up his weapons as well.	83
53	Znovu se musil usmát tomu, jak nerozumí své milence.	98	Again he had to smile at how poorly he understood his mistress.	85
54	...to by přece i on musel být v prádle a v buřince ..	100	...he, too, would have to strip and don a bowler hat ...	87
56	Sabina se domnívá, že je třeba mít k přidělenému osudu korektní vztah.	103	Sabina believed that she had to assume the correct attitude to her unchosen fate.	89
57	...zůstal hluboko v něm živý imperativ: nesmí jí nikdy ublížit a musí si v ní vážit ženy ...	103	..with the thought that he must never hurt her and always respect their woman in her...	90
58	Je-li však Marie-Claude sama ženou, kdo je ta druhá žena, která se v ní skrývá a které si má vážit?	104	...the one he must always respect ?	90
60	Ale protože hluchnou, nezbyvá jim, než si ji pouštět hlasitěji.	106	But because they are going deaf it has to be played louder still.	93
61	Zase diskutovali o tom zda se proti Rusům mělo či nemělo bojovat se zbraní v ruce.	109	As usual they were hashing over whether they should or should not have taken up arms against the Russians.	95
62				
63	Má-li mít malíř povolenu výstavu, má-li občan dostat víza ..., musí být shromážděny nejprve všechny posudky a zprávy o něm ...	109	If a painter is to have an exhibition ...then a vast array of recommendations must be arranged ...	96
64				
65	Vzápětí za tím opojením se však ozvala úzkost: někde ta cesta přece musí končit! Jednou přece musí přestat zrazovat! Jednou se musí zastavit!	111	...:The road had to end somewhere! Sooner or later she would have to put end to her betrayals! Sooner or later she would have to stop herself!	98
66				

67	Stačilo natáhnout ruku.	111	All we had to do was to stretch out a hand.	98
69	ale pak o tom začal pochybovat: musilo to opravdu tak být? –	112	Did it really have to be?	99

APPENDIX 8 - VI

Viewegh, M. (1997) *Výchova dívek v Čechách*, Brno: Petrov

Viewegh, M. (1997) *Bringing up Girls in Bohemia*, Readers International. Translated by A. G. Brian.

1	...dovtípil jsem se, že jsem byl patrně kýmisi za tmavými okny vily již vyhlížen ...	9	I assumed that I must have been spotted already by someone from behind the villa ..	7
2	- a obvykle se mi to dařilo tím lépe, čím plastičtěji jsem si představil, jak asi vypadají dny a týdny v tom jeho baráčku	17	...depended on how well I was able to conjure up what it must be like for him to spend days and weeks on ...	13
3	Nutno říci, že se pohybovala velice rychle.	18	It must be said that she moved with great alacrity.	14
4	Chci-li ji dostat celou, musím postupovat opatrně.	19	If I wanted to get it out whole, I will have to proceed with utmost caution.	15
5	Řeknu-li nyní že ... - raději proto budu v plném znění citovat článek ...	19	Were I now to say that ... - so I had better quote in full an article ...	15
6	Poprvé v životě jsem pochopil, jak se cítí sekretářka, kterou zve na oběd šéf.	23	For the first time in my life I realise how a secretary must feel when her boss invites her out to lunch.	18
7	... ale protože to dotyčný nebral, musel se spokojit s pouhým zavoláním manželce, kterou informoval ...	24	...but since there was no reply, he had to make do with calling his wife to let her know he was bringing on a guest ...	19
8	Dva aperitivy mě sice dostatečně uvolnily, ale přesto ...	24	It must be admitted that the two aperitifs did a lot to relax me, but ...	19
10	Vyřídíte jí, že trvám na tom, abyste teď ze začátku zůstávali doma ...	30	Tell her I insist you have to stay at home for the first sessions ...	25
11	Už jsem měl dávno být na kurtu.	31	I should have been on the court long ago.	25
12	Aktivnost básnického slova nesmí být ovšem vykládána tak, že ...	31	One ought not, however, interpret the active nature of the poet ...	25
13	Je jí skoro dvacet. Měla by chodit do práce. A za druhý by se potřebovala vdát.	32	She ought to be at work. And for another thing, she ought to get married.	26
14	Případným dalším úvahám, co potřebují dvacetileté, vzápětí zamezil příchod třináctileté Agáty.	32	Any further opinions what twenty-year-old girls ought to do were ..	26
15	Jak s ní asi tak můžu vycházet, když se mnou už tejdén nemluví.	33	How I am supposed to get on with her when she's not been talking to me for the past week?	27
16	Evidentně chtěla něco říct, ale nakonec se jenom ušklíbla ...	33	She obviously wanted to say something	27
17	Už jen konvička s kávou a dva šálky – a tichý hovor o literatuře může začít.	34	All it needs is a coffee pot and two cups-and ..	27
18	Musím přiznat, že Beátin náhlý výbuch mne na dlouhé minuty ochromil ...	38	I must admit, that Beata's ...	31
19	Nesmíš si je tolik pouštět k tělu.	41	You mustn't let them become too familiar.	34
20	Je třeba říci, že byla pro tento úkol mimořádně dobře disponována ...	42	It must be said that ...	35
21	Proč musíme na výchovný koncert čtyřikrát za měsíc?	43	Why do we have to go to ...	35
22	Nebylo mi bohužel přáno vyslechnout své kolegy až do konce ..	43	Sadly I was not to be allowed to hear the remainder of the conversation ...	35
23	Nezáleželo ani zbla na to, že mne sám	43	...that he had summoned me and should	36

	povolá, a musel tudíž nejlépe vědět, proč přicházím ...		therefore be the better informed why I was there	
24	...chodí už do čtvrté třídy a od září by měla pokračovat dole, ale přestože tam už neučím, bude muset kvůli tatínkovu psaní dojíždět do Chuchle.	46	... and by rights ought to continue down there... but she will be obliged on account of Dad's writing, to travel ...	39
25	...je obraz z literárního hlediska hodně problematický, ale bohužel na něm musím trvat, protože mi občas připadá ...	47	... but I have to keep it in	39
26	Nemusíš se snažit – stejně vím, že doopravdy tě zajímají jenom známky ...	48	You don't have to try	40
27	Přestože v mém hlasu byla až do konce přítomna ona známá křečovitá důstojnost řečníků, kteří musí dokončit svůj proslov I když ...	51	... of the speaker who is obliged to finish	42
28	Tak mi aspoň poskytněte nějaké přijatelné vysvětlení ... vždyť to hergot nemusí být pravda	52	It does not even have to be true ...	43
29	Také pro Zváru jsem sice měl jisté porozumění, neboť ..., ale ...	60	I must admit I had a certain sympathy for ...	51
30	Jenomže: jde to vůbec, psát o sebevraždě? – Musí to jít!	61	It has to be!	51
31	Tak si dej ještě jednu.	61	You had better have another one, then.	51
32	Musíte být na dědečka hodní, když má ten nádor.	62	You have to be nice to Granddad now he has got that tumour.	52
33	V jejich smíchu jsem pro sebe vyčetl nadějný příslib, že možná nebudu muset trávit vyučovací hodiny zavěšen u stropu tělocvičny.	65	I read in their laughter that I might not be obliged to spend several ...	54
34	Řekl jsem, že silné opalovací krémy jsou dnes nezbytné, protože v obloze je díra.	66	I said that powerful suntan lotions were now a must unfortunately on account of the hole in the sky.	55
35	Zkoumavě na mě pohlédl a řekl cosi v tom smyslu, že holky by nás nikdy neměly překvapit – jestli prý vím, jak to myslí.	66	... girls should never surprise us ...	55
35	Král se nedoplatí.	69	Kral will have to sell out for that.	58
36	Musím s vámi mluvit.	71	I need to speak to you.	59
37	Chce mlčet, tak ať mlčí. Chce opíchat, tak ji opíchej.	71	If she doesn't want to talk, why should she? If she wants a screw, then screw her.	60
38	Já jsem humanisticky orientovaný spisovatel. Měl bych domy lásky pranýřovat, ne je navštěvovat.	74	I should pillory houses of pleasure, not patronise them.	62
39	Vůbec mě neposlouchal ... takže jsem ho chtěl nechtěl musel následovat.	74	I was obliged to follow him willy nilly.	62
40	Král s úsměvem pozdvihl skleničku – musel jsem si s ním připít na úspěch kurzu.	76	Kral raised his glass with a smile – I was to drink a toast with him to the success of ...	63
41	Petřík zřejmě zůstal natolik střízlivý, že nás oba mohl odvést domů – usuzuji tak ovšem jen ze slov své ženy ...	80	Petrik must have remained sober enough ...	66
42	Umělec musí pít, protože vidí hlouběji než jiní.	82	The artist has to drink, because ...	68
43	Uvědomil jsem si, že nyní bych ji měl – na zpečetění našeho obnoveného - přátelství hodit laškovně do vody., ale ...	87	I realised I ought to shove her playfully into the pool	73

44	Zítřka bys svou averzi možná měl na hodinu překonat. Jsou třídní schůzky.	91	Maybe you ought to overcome your aversion for an hour tomorrow.	76
45	A proč šeptáte? My musíme.	93	We have to ...	78
46	Jinak měly třídní schůzky zcela standardní průběh: rodiče přinucení nejprve uklízečkou k vyzutí bot, stáli dlouhé fronty ...	94	...followed their usual pattern: the parents, obliged by the cleaner to remove their shoes ...	79
47	...snažil jsem se jí vysvětlit, jak už jen pouhá představa, že bych ono poděkování učitelům musel I letos psát já, je odpudivá	94	...that I myself would once more have to draft the thanks to teachers made me feel ...	79
48	Musím říct, že pro toto prvenství dělal opravdu všechno.	95	And I have to say, he did his very utmost to retain his prominence.	80
49	Není to únavné – muset pořád hrát tu zkaženou cyničku?	97	Don't you find it tiring - having to play the demoralized cynic all the time<	81
50	Není tudíž divu, že musí volit šokující postupy, jako je zapalování ohně na vlastním těle ...	99	It is not surprising that it has to choose techniques that shock.	82
51	Rozhodně bych se totiž nechtěl dočkat autogramiády, kde budu muset na hromadě uhlí spálit svou propisovačku ...	100	Book-signing session at which I'll have to burn my pen on a pile of coal ...	83
52	Šetřit se musí. Ať to stojí, co to stojí.	106	We must save, whatever the cost.	88
53	Opravdu se za každou musím omlouvat?	106	Do I really have to apologize each time?	88
54	Hele Doubku, bylo by dobré, aby jim někdo poděkoval. –Ne, že ne, ale vocud' pocud'. Řekněme, že mě teda naučili číst a psát ...	107	I don't say we shouldn't, but there's no need to go overboard.	89
55	A vůbec jsem nevěděl, co bych do té řeči jako měl psát, protože mi bylo jasné, že když napíšu, že nám učitelé dali na cestu životem křídla ...	108	A I had not the foggiest idea what I was supposed to put in that speech, because it was obvious to me that if	90
56	Byla mi jasná jediná věc – že to musím napsat tak, aby nikdo nemával rukama.	108	I'd have to write in such a way than no one waves ...	91
57	A za tohle volání bysme jim možná poděkovat měli.	109	And maybe its that calling that we ought to thank them for.	91
58	Tlumočil mé ženě Královu upřímnou lítost, že jí na zbylé čtyři dny dovolené musí připravit o manžela, ale ...	112	...sincere regret that he was obliged to deprive her ...	93
59	Musel jsem trochu křičet.	112	I had to shout slightly.	94
60	Co by se dělo?	112	What should have happened?	94
61	Nazdar, řve táta, proč vždycky řve tak nahlas?	120	Dad yells – why does he always have to yell so loud?	100
62	Tímhle mám řadit?	121	I am supposed to change the gear with that?	101
63	..zase už se musím usmívat když nechci	121	Again I am having to smile when I do not feel like it.	101
64	Přiměl jsem ji sice abychom pokoj aspoň změřili a nakreslili si pláněk, ale veškeré mé ...	122	Admittedly I did manage to persuade her that we should at least measure the room, but	102
65	Napadá mě, zda bych neměl zdůraznit, že ani jedna s firem ...	123	It occurs to me that I ought to point out that none...	103
66	Beáta rozhodla, že čas, který budeme muset strávit venku, využijeme ...	125	...that the time we had to spend outside would be used ..	104
67	Možná. Možná by se to tak dalo říct.	129	I suppose so. I suppose that might be the slang expression for it.	107
68	Předpokládám, že stejně někam odjízďte stopem.		Besides, I suppose you'll be hitch-hiking off somewhere ...	107
69	Možná jsem měl taky psát.	130	Perhaps I ought to have gone for	108

			writing, too.	
70	Musel jsem jet dřív kvůli nějaké práci.	131	I had to leave earlier because of a job.	109
71	Musím říct, že ...	131	I must say, that	109
72	Není snad nutný všechno chápat, poznamenal jsem v souladu se svým přesvědčením ...	133	Surely one need not understand everything.	111
73	Mám doma ještě nějakou práci.	136	There's a job I still have to do at home.	113
74	Vzhledem k větru jsem musel trochu křičet.	138	Because of the wind I had to shout slightly.	115
75	Chápu sice, že v době ... bych se nemusel trápit nějakými přílišnými skrupulemi, ale ...	138	Admittedly, in the era .. I shouldn't need to get too worked out ...	115
76	... až jsem – s předstíraným mrzoutstvím leoparda – musel svou těžkou prackou zatlačit její hlavičku pod hladinu ...	139	- I was obliged to hold her under the water ...	116
77	..ale musím ještě alespoň přiznat, že se cosi změnilo...	146	...but I still must at least admit that something had changed ...	122
78	Když jsem zatoužil vidět aspoň její fotografii, musel jsem odtáhnout příborník po babičce.	147	If I had a yearning to see at least a photo of her I would have pull out ..	123
79	Pokud někdo cosi tuší, musel to být pes, jehož jsem nyní venčil nezvykle často.	148	If anyone suspected anything it must have been our dog ...	123
80	Od Petřika jsem navíc věděl, že mu nejdou kšefty, a tak jsem musel mluvit obzvlášť opatrně.	149	... so I had to be very careful ..	124
81	Kde by sehnal angličtináře? To by je museli dávat jako dealerskou provizi.	153	They would have to be supplied as dealer's commission.	128
82	To by ho musel vyhrát ve Vlož a vyhráj.	153	He'd have to win one in ..	128
83	Musel jsem v duchu konstatovat, že naše nova kolegyně je opravdu pěkná.	155	I could not help remarking that our new colleague was really good-looking.	129
84	Zástupkyně Konopná v této souvislosti připomněla, že nesmíme zapomínat na vlastní výuku.	155	Vice-Principal Konopna reminded us that we mustn't neglect our own teaching work.	130
85	Zdá se, že letos ještě budeme muset učit.	155	It looks as if we will still have to teach this year.	130
86	Sama musela být v práci v průměru padesát hodin týdně.	160	He herself had to spend ...	133
87	Chtěl-li jsem se rozloučit, musel jsem narušit její hodinu.	161	... I had to interrupt her lesson.	135
88	...abych ji aspoň trochu připravil na zklamání, které nutně muselo následovat ...	164	...for the disappointment that must inevitably follow ...	138
89	Musela si to prožít sama	164	She had to experience it herself.	138
90	Proč musím uklízet třídu kvůli uklízečce?	165	Why must I tidy the classroom to prepare it for ...	138
91	Proč musím potvrdit podpisem, že jsem podepsala třídní výkaz?	165	Why do I have sign a book to say I have signed ...	138
92	Proč musej moje děti zpívat ve sboru, když ve sboru zpívat nechťej?	165	Why do my kids have to sing in the choir ..	138
93	Ptám se Vás proč musí moji kluci zpívat, když se jim očividně nechce.	165	... why the boys in my class have to sing ...	138
94	...neboť zrovna přivezli mikrovlnné trouby a on musel převzít zboží.	166	... as he had to go and sign for the microwave ovens ...	139
96	Potom se rozpovídal o jakýchsi lodích, které museli v noci hlídat.	178	... about some boats or other that they had to guard at night.	149
97	Asi jsem něco zkazil, protože Steve tomu nerozuměl.	178	...I must have said it wrong because Steve did not understand.	149
98	Myslím, že člověk si musí vždycky	181	I believe people should always fix	152

	vytyčit nějaký nejbližší mezník.		themselves a nearer milestone ...	
99	Jenom proboha neprozradit, že nejsem in.	181	Heaven forbid that I should betray I was not in.	152
100	Je úplně jedno, jak to nazveš. Prostě něco, co je třeba překonat.	181	Simply something you have to achieve.	152
101	Poněvadž McMurphy ví, že člověk se musí vysmát všemu, co ho bolí ...	182.	..knows you have to laugh at things that hurt you ..	152
102	Posléze ji patrně napadlo, že by mi měla spíš dokázat, že už opravdu není dítě...	183	... occurred to her that she should instead make a effort to prove to me ...	153
103	..naštěstí jsem právě v té době musel do Německa ...	183	(it fortunately coincided with a visit to Germany)	153
104	...má jednak autostylizace do role rozvedeného světáka musí po tom všem, co jsem zde o sobě a o svém manželství řekl, nutně působit komicky	186	The casting of myself to the role of divorced playboy must have a comic effect after ...	156
105	...že vás na vysokou školu přijali, zatímco jeho ne, musíte dokonce vynaložit jisté malé úsilí abyste si zachovali zdravý rozum ...	187	... then you will need to make considerable efforts ...	156
106	Jestliže se však s tímto člověkem musíte ke všemu dělit nejen o ..., ale i o jedinou dceru ..	187	But if, to cap it all, you are obliged to share ...	156
107	...buďto svému kolegovi ve spánku prostřelíte hlavu, nebo se s ním budete muset spřátelit...	187	...than you have no alternative but to blow the head off your companion or to make friends with him ...	156
108	Naštěstí v den, kdy se naše cesty měly rozejít, vypil Oskar v restauraci ... přece jen nějakou tu sklenku navíc a v nezvratném přesvědčení, že nastupuje do ...	187	Unhappily on the day that our paths were supposed to diverge for good, Oskar had to have a glass or two too many... and in the unshakable conviction ...	157
109	Potom pravil, že bychom už měli jet, protože večer s Beátkou	195	Then he said we ought to be going because ...	163
110	Cítil však potřebu objasnit mi účel svého výstředního nákupu a učinil mi malou přednášku	195	...he felt he had to explain to me the purpose of his rather outlandish purchase ...	164
111	Když jsme tam vstoupili, sledoval jsem dívčinu tvář přece jen s jistými obavami.	196	The first time we entered it, I must admit I was a bit concerned how she would react ...	164
112	Beáta se hned po mém vstupu demonstrativně zamkla v koupelně, takže Oskar se musel oholit v pokoji.	197	... so Oskar was obliged to shave in bedroom ...	166
113	Asi jsem impotentní, řekl Oskar po chvíli ochraptěle ...	198	I must be impotent ...	166
114	Jestli mu stačí čtvrt hodiny, aby udělal z člověka kance, pak je opravdu nejlepší.	199	...then he really must be the best.	167
115	Bylo třeba opravit vůz a vyjet do světa, jenž se stále vzpírá zjednodušeným výkladům ...	202	He had to repair the car and set off for ...	170
116	Intelektuálka sice ví, že by měla být spontánně nabídnutým subjektem, ale když hraje bezmocnou ...	203	....knows that she ought to be ...	171
117	Na Beátu jsem si – po pravdě řečeno-mnohokrát nevzpomněl.	208	Beata-I must admit-seldom entered my mind.	174
118	Beátu patrně napadlo totéž, neboť nám okamžitě začala vyprávět, jak s organizací ...	210	It must have registered with Beata too, because she immediately started to tell us ...	176
119	Nechápali ... , křenila se Beáta. Museli byste je vidět.	210	You should have seen them.	176
120-	Jakuba jsem osobně nepotkal. Měl to	210	Logically it must have been one of the	177

121	logicky být některý z těch kluků před K-martem, ale dodnes netuším který. Musel to ale být citlivý, obětavý člověk, který neváhal přinášet osobní oběti ..		fellows in front of K-market, but I still do not have a clue.... He must have been a sensitive sort thought ...	
122	...ale údajně ji odradilo, že celý den pracují na poli a ráno musí brzy vstávat ...	212	And they had to get up early ...	178
123	...patřím zjevně k oné početné skupině ignorantů nepochybujících snad jen o tom, že jet u něco, co nás přesahuje, přičemž oním něčím nemusí být hned Bůh ...	212	...though it does not necessarily have to be God ...	178
124	Nesmíš to prostě lektorovat, zasmála se.	217	You must not read it like a pupil composition.	182
125	Proč bych měl ctít svého otce a matku svou.	217	Why should I honour my father ...	182
126	Podivný výsledek vzrůstu historického vědomí je ten, že lidé pokládají vysvětlení za nezbytné pro přežití.	217	...is that people think explanation is a necessity of survival ...	183
163	Možná žes měl tu práci přece jen vzít.	221	Maybe you ought to have taken that job instead.	185
164	Jdi ty, nesmíš tu literaturu brát tak vážně.	221	You must not take literature so seriously.	185